

# The First War of Independence (1857)

The Revolt of 1857 was widely considered as the beginning of the country's struggle for independence. By 1856, people's dissatisfaction against the East India Company's economic exploitation and unjust administrative policy gained strength. This dissatisfaction burst into a revolution which is known in history as the Revolt of 1857. Some Indian nationalists, like VD Savarkar described it 'a planned war of National Independence' and 'as the First War of Indian Independence'.

## Causes of the First War of Independence

Some Anglo-Indian writers gave great emphasis on the military grievances and greased cartridge affair as the most important causes of Revolt of 1857. But modern historians think that these are not the most important causes. The causes of the revolt are to be found in the last 100 years of British rule, from the Battle of Plassey (June, 1757) to the rebellion of Mangal Pandey (March, 1857). British policies of economic exploitation and administrative control severely affected the Indian society.

### Political Causes

The political causes were as follows:

#### Policy of Annexation

After the Battle of Plassey (1757), the East India Company tried to expand its territorial power. By applying the **Doctrine of Lapse**, Lord Dalhousie dishonestly annexed the states of Satara, Jhansi and Nagpur. According to this doctrine, if a ruler died without an heir to succeed him, his adopted son could neither inherit the throne nor the title. Then, the state was to be annexed to the British Empire in India.

#### The Annexation of Awadh

Lord Dalhousie annexed Awadh to the British territory under the pretext that the state of Awadh was not properly governed. This **annexation**<sup>1</sup> left many nobles, officers and soldiers unemployed. The British also confiscated the estates of the *zamindars* and *talukdars*. This created dissatisfaction among the people of Awadh and they began to hate British rule.

<sup>1</sup> Annexation Taking control of a country, region by force.

### Disrespect Shown to Bahadur Shah

Lord Dalhousie announced in 1849 that successors of Bahadur Shah Zafar would not be permitted to use the Red Fort as their palace. In 1856, Lord Canning announced that after the death of Bahadur Shah, his successors would not be allowed to attach imperial titles to their names. Bahadur Shah would receive a pension, but the Britishers decided to put an end to the **titular<sup>2</sup>** (nominal) sovereignty of the Mughal Emperor after the death of Bahadur Shah. Dissatisfied with the British policy, Zeenat Mahal, wife of Bahadur Shah began plotting against the British. These decisions of the Britishers grievously hurt the feelings of Muslims.

### Disrespect Shown to Nana Sahib and Rani Laxmibai

Nana Sahib was the adopted son of Baji Rao II, the last Peshwa. After the death of Baji Rao, the British refused to recognise Nana Sahib as the ruler of Marathas and did not grant the pension to Nana Sahib. Nana Sahib was forced to live at Kanpur. This resented the Marathas greatly. Nana Sahib travelled between Delhi and Lucknow to gather support for the movement.

It was a common legitimate practice of Indian kings to adopt an heir if the king had no son. But the Rani of Jhansi, Laxmibai was not allowed to adopt a son after the death of her husband, Raja Gangadhar Rao Newalkar. Because of these reasons, both Nana Sahib and Rani Laxmibai became bitter enemies of the British.

### Disbanding the Armies of the Annexed States

All the states which were annexed by the British had their troops disbanded. The soldiers of such disbanded armies lost their jobs and means of livelihood. They together with their families blamed the company for their misfortune and were determined to take revenge.

### Corrupt and Inefficient Administration

The British administration was corrupt and inefficient. The Britishers had a feeling of superiority, they treated Indians badly and always tried to humiliate them. The main aim of the Britishers was to enrich themselves at the cost of native people. This created bitterness among the Indians. The policy of the British and their administration created political unrest and the people wanted to get rid of them.

### Economic Causes

Popular discontent against the British rule also arose due to the policy of economic exploitation adopted by the colonial power in India. These were as follows:

#### Exploitation of Economic Resources of India

The East India Company exploited the economic resources of India at the expense of the people of India. The Company purchased textiles, indigo, spices and foodgrains from India and sold them abroad at exorbitant prices. All trade and commerce had gone into the hands of the British which led to a set back for the Indian industries. The conditions of Indian artisans became miserable. They blamed the British for their misery.

#### Subordination of Indian Industry

India gradually became an economic colony of industrial England. The Company encouraged unrestricted entry of British manufactured goods into India. On the other hand, they imposed heavy duties on goods manufactured in India. As a result these, goods could not compete in the foreign market. Soon, India became a country that supplied only raw materials to England. While the raw materials were supplied to England at a very cheap rate, the finished goods were supplied to India at a very high rate.

#### Collapse of Handicrafts and Cottage Industries

As a result of the British policy, Indian handicrafts and cottage industries died out. Thousands of craftsmen and artisans became jobless. By the middle of the 19th century, export of cotton and silk goods from India completely stopped. So, the manufacturers of silk and cotton goods began to look for other means of livelihood.

#### Draining of the Economy of India

After the Battle of Plassey, the Britishers started to purchase raw materials from India with the surplus revenue of Bengal. In comparison to Indian workers, the British officials were paid huge salaries and allowances, which were sent back to England. This transfer of wealth from India to Britain was known as 'Drain of Wealth'.

#### Economic Decline of Peasantry

The peasants were dissatisfied with the revenue policy of the British, as they had to bear the heavy burden of taxes to provide money for the trade of the Company, for the administrative and war expenditure of the Company.

<sup>2</sup> **Titular** Having a particular title or status but no real power of authority.

The increased tax burden forced many peasants into indebtedness and sometimes they sold their lands and became unemployed. The traditional zamindars who were sympathetic to the peasant class were replaced by merchants and moneylenders. They forcefully collected rent from the peasants and often evicted their tenants in case of non-payment.

### Decline of Landed Aristocracy

Lord William Bentinck attached several *jagirs* in Bengal region and resumed tax-free lands. Lord Dalhousie confiscated *jagirs* belonging to the *jagirdars* of the Deccan region. This resumption of tax-free land and confiscation of *jagirs* caused great discontent among the *jagirdars* and *zamindars*. This policy not only caused resentment among the landed aristocracy, it also caused severe problem for the large section of people who were dependent on the landed aristocracy.

### Unemployment, Poverty and Famine

Due to Dalhousie's policy of annexation of the native states, many civil and military officers and other employees of the states lost their jobs. Again the British took the policy to appoint only their countrymen to high posts and deprived the educated Indians. Indians then turned into bitter enemies of the foreign rule in India and waited for the right moment to revolt.

### CHECK POINT 01

- 1 Which states were annexed by Lord Dalhousie by applying Doctrine of Lapse?
- 2 How did the British disrespected Nana Sahib?
- 3 Why the peasants were dissatisfied with the revenue policy of the British?

### Social and Religious Causes

#### Social and Religious Reforms

The British brought about several social changes which affected the religious traditions of the Indians. The practice of *Sati* was made illegal and punishable by law (1829), infanticide and polygamy were prohibited and remarriage of widow was allowed. Such reforms were strongly advocated by Indian reformers like Raja Rammohan Roy, Swami Dayanand Saraswati and others. But some people thought that the British introduced these reforms to fulfil their own interest.

### Activities of Missionaries

The British Government indirectly supported some activities of the **missionaries**<sup>3</sup> by not objecting to their activities. From the early 19th century, there was an increase in both the numbers and activities of the Christian missionaries. Thus, Indians thought that with government's support, the missionaries would convert them to Christianity.

### Introduction of Railways and Telegraphs

The introduction of railways and telegraphs by the British had also created suspicion and fear in the minds of Indians. **Orthodox**<sup>4</sup> Indians felt humiliated to share seats in railway compartments with other backward classes. Even, rumour spread at that time that telegraph pole were made to hang people who would oppose British rule in India. These modern innovations threatened the old social order and produced unrest in society.

### Fears Generated by Western Education

In the 19th century, the British introduced Western education in India. They established different schools and the Christian missionaries which played a significant role in it. This Western education reduced the importance of education taught by the *Pandits* and *Maulvis* who were responsible for the traditional education of our country. Common people started thinking that the aim of Western education was not to promote Science and Literature, but to encourage the students to become Christians.

### Introduction of New Laws

The British Government introduced tax on Temples and Mosques. It hurt the religious sentiments of the people. Further, the Religious Disabilities Act of 1850 changed the Hindu Law of Property. According to this act, a convert from Hinduism to other religion could inherit his father's property. The orthodox Indians began to feel that this law was encouraging conversion to Christianity.

### Military Causes

The military causes that led to the revolt of 1857 are as follows:

#### Unjust Treatment to Indian Soldiers

The East India Company established the British Empire with the help of Indian soldiers. But the British and Indian soldiers were not treated equally. The British soldiers were paid eight times the salary than the Indian soldiers.

<sup>3</sup> Missionary A person who is sent to a foreign country to teach people about Christianity.

<sup>4</sup> Orthodox Following closely the traditional beliefs and practices of religion.

The Indian soldiers did not get the opportunity to get higher posts, as these were reserved for people of British origin.

### General Service Enlistment Act

The General Service Enlistment Act was passed in 1856, by the British Government. According to this Act, Indian soldiers could be sent overseas on duty. This act hurt the religious sentiments of the Indian soldiers as crossing the sea was a religious taboo<sup>5</sup> for Indians.

### Numerical Strength of Indian Soldiers

In 1857, there were approximately 40,000 British and 2 lakh Indian soldiers in the army. The numerical strength of the Indian soldiers gave them courage to revolt against the British.

### Poor Performance of British Troops

The British army suffered a major set back in the First Afghan War (1838-42), in the Punjab Wars (1845-49) and in the Crimean War (1854-56). These convinced the Indian soldiers that British could also be defeated. These incidents inspired them to declare war against the British.

### The Immediate Cause

The introduction of the Enfield Rifle was regarded as the immediate cause of the revolt of 1857. Both the Hindu and Muslim soldiers refused to use these cartridges as it was believed that these greased cartridges had fat of cows and pigs. When the British used force against them, they became infuriated and staged an uprising which was known as the 'First War of Independence'.

#### CHECK POINT 02

- 1 Mention any one social change brought about by the British.
- 2 What was the General Service Enlistment Act?
- 3 In which year Religious Disabilities Act was passed?

### Beginning of the Uprising

The revolt first began at Barrackpore, when most of the Indian soldiers refused to use the grease cartridges as a rumour spread out that the cartridges were greased with the fat of pigs and cows. As a result, a Brahmin soldier of the 34th Native Infantry at Barrackpore, named Mangal Pandey led an attack on the Military Officer of 34th

Native Infantry on 29th March, 1857. After this incident, Mangal Pandey was arrested and hanged on 8th April, 1857.

After the hanging of Mangal Pandey on 8th April, 1857, the uprising began in Meerut and spread in other parts of country like Delhi, Kanpur, Lucknow, Jhansi, etc.<sup>6</sup>

### Meerut

- On 8th May, 1857 new cartridges were given to the Indian sepoys in Meerut. Some sepoys refused to touch the cartridge.
- On 10th May, the sepoys broke out in open rebellion, shot their officers, released their fellow sepoys from the prison.

### Delhi

- Delhi was seized by the rebels on 12th May, 1857. The rebels killed thousands of British soldiers and captured Delhi.
- The loss of Delhi was serious loss of prestige to the English. Sir John Nicholson, with the help of the loyal Sikh soldiers captured Delhi.
- The old emperor was imprisoned with his two sons. His two sons were shot dead in front of him and he was given life imprisonment.

### Lucknow

- The rebellion broke out at Lucknow on 4th June, 1857. Which was led by Begum Hazrat Mahal, the wife of Nawab of Awadh.
- Sir Henry Lawrence and many other British soldiers took refuge in the residency<sup>6</sup>. Later, the residency was besieged by the Indian rebels and Sir Henry Lawrence and many other British soldiers were killed.
- In November, 1857, Sir Colin Campbell reached Lucknow and expelled Europeans. He defeated the Indian soldiers and recaptured Lucknow in March, 1858, but guerilla activity<sup>7</sup> continued till September of the same year.

### Kanpur

- Kanpur was lost to the British on 5th June, 1857. Here the war was led by Nana Sahib, the adopted son of Peshwa Baji Rao II.

<sup>5</sup> Taboo A cultural or religious custom that does not allow people to do, use or talk about a particular thing as people find it offensive or embarrassing.

<sup>6</sup> Residency The official house of somebody.

<sup>7</sup> Guerilla activity The fight organised in an informal way and without official permission or approval.

- General Sir Hugh Wheeler surrendered on 27th June, 1857. Some Europeans, men, women and children were murdered.
- Nana Sahib was joined by his able and experienced Lieutenant **Tantia Tope**. But the British defeated Nana Sahib in December, 1857.
- Nana Sahib fled to Nepal and nothing was heard about him. Tantia Tope escaped and joined the Rani of Jhansi.

### Central India (Jhansi and Gwalior)

- In Central India, Indian soldiers had two great leaders Rani Laxmibai of Jhansi and Tantia Tope. In the beginning of June, 1857, the British troops at Jhansi revolted against Rani Laxmibai, the widow of the late Raja Gangadhar Rao.
- Sir Hugh Rose captured Jhansi by assault on 3rd April, 1858. Rani and Tantia Tope marched towards Gwalior and occupied Gwalior.
- Sir Hugh Rose advanced towards Gwalior and defeated the Indian troops. Rani died on 17th June, 1858 at Gwalior after a horrible battle.
- Tantia Tope managed to escape, but in 1859, betrayed by Gwalior Chief Man Singh, he fell in the hands of the British. He was tied and hanged on 18th April, 1859.

### Other Important Centres

#### Bareilly

At Bareilly, **Khan Bahadur Khan**, a descendant of the former ruler of Rohilkhand had proclaimed himself the Nawab Nazim. He took command of the movement.

#### Bihar

In Bihar, the movement was led by **Kunwar Singh**, a *zamindar* of Jagdishpur, who fought against the British.

#### Faizabad

In Faizabad, the revolt was led by **Maulvi Ahmadullah Shah**, a native of Madras. He aroused the Muslim community against the British rule. Later, he was captured and put to death by the British.

Moreover Bengal, Rohilkhand, Bundelkhand, Central India and East Punjab rose against the colonial power. By July, 1858, the rebellion<sup>8</sup> had been almost completely suppressed.

#### CHECK POINT 03

- When was Delhi seized by the rebels?
- When did Rani Laxmibai die?
- Who led the rebellion at Bareilly?

### Consequences of the War

Though the uprising of 1857 was suppressed completely but this incident shook the very foundation of the British rule in India. It produced deep and far reaching effects on the socio-political life of India.

### End of the Company's Rule

The most significant result of the uprising of 1857 was that the hundred years old Company's rule in India came to an end. Now, India was directly ruled by the Queen and the British Parliament. This was done by the Government of India Act of 1858. This act abolished the Board of Directors of the Company and the responsibility of the Government of India was passed on to a separate minister, who was known as the Secretary of State for India. He would be advised by a council consisting of 15 members. The Governor General was made the Viceroy, who dealt with the Nawabs, the Rajas and other native Princes.

### Queen Victoria's Proclamation

The Queen's proclamation<sup>9</sup> regarding the transfer of governance from the East India Company to the British Crown was announced on 1st November, 1858. Lord Canning, the first Viceroy of India announced it at Allahabad. The proclamation promised the following:

- Treat all subjects i.e., Indians and Europeans as equal (education and ability would be the basis of all appointments).
- Follow a policy of non-intervention in social and religious matters of Indians.
- A general pardon was granted to all those who laid down arms by 2nd January, 1859 except those who were found guilty of murder of British subjects.
- It promised that it would do its best to advance the industries in India and to promote works of public utility in the country for the material as well as the moral progress of the people.

<sup>8</sup> Rebellion An attempt by some of the people in a country to change their government.

<sup>9</sup> Proclamation An official statement about something important that is made to the public.

## Religious Freedom

In 1858, after the revolt of 1857, India was directly ruled by British Crown. The British ruler declared their policy of non-interference in the religious affairs, customs and traditions of Indians in the proclamation of 1858.

## Abolition of Peshwaship and the Mughal Line

The war ended the Peshwaship and the Mughal rule. Nana Sahib, the last Peshwa who had taken part in the war had fled to Nepal. After that he could not be traced. So, the office of the Peshwa was abolished. After the revolt, Bahadur Shah was deported to Rangoon, where he died in 1862. Thus, the Mughal dynasty came to an end.

## Policy of Divide and Rule

The British followed the policy of 'Divide and Rule'. After 1858, they continued to follow their rules. During the war, the Hindus and the Muslims fought together. The British first victimised the Muslims and favoured the Hindus. After sometime, they reversed the policy of treatment.

The Divide and Rule policy also alienated people from their rulers for the special protections and concessions given to the rulers. This policy of 'Divide and Rule' ultimately encouraged the partition of India.

## Reorganisation of the Army

The army was reorganised. The proportion of the Europeans to Indians in the army was raised. Artillery and other effective weapons of war were placed exclusively under the charge of the Europeans. The curb nationalism, Indian soldiers of different communities, castes and religions were all mixed up and they were kept away in secluded places. They were not provided newspapers, journals and nationalist publications to keep them separated from the life of the rest of the population.

## Economic Exploitation

After the war, the economic exploitation of India by the British became more prominent. India became 'dumping ground of British manufacturers'. The colonial power now

started to misuse their political power for their economic interests.

## Rise of Nationalism

Apparently the war was a failure. But in its apparent failure, the success story of it was inbuilt. It roused national feelings and paved the way for the national movement and remained as a shining example of nationalism to the people. It served as the source of inspiration and also became a symbol of challenge for the Indians.

### CHECK POINT 04

- 1 By which act the company rule in India came to an end?
- 2 Where was the Queen Victoria's Proclamation announced?
- 3 During the 1857 Revolt Nana Sahib fled to which country?

## TIMELINE

Year	Important Events
23rd June, 1757	The Battle of Plassey
1856	General Service Enlistment Act
13th February, 1858	Lord Dalhousie annexed Awadh
29th March, 1857	Mangal Pandey refused to use cartridge of the Enfield Rifle
8th April, 1857	Mangal Pandey was hanged
10th May, 1857	The Indian sepoys at Meerut broke into war
12th May, 1857	Delhi was seized by the rebels
21st September, 1857	Sir John Nicholson recaptured Delhi with the help of loyal Sikh soldiers
17th June, 1858	Rani Laxmibai died at the battle field
1st November, 1858	Queen Victoria's proclamation was announced by Lord Canning
18th April, 1859	Tantia Tope was hanged
7th November, 1862	Bahadur Shah Zafar died

## SUMMARY

- The Revolt of 1857 was widely considered as the beginning of the country's struggle for independence. Leader like, **VD Savarkar** thought that it was the 'First War of India's Independence'.
- In 1857, a new Enfield Rifle was introduced in the army. A rumour spread that the cartridges were greased with fat of cows and pigs. The trouble first began at **Barrackpore** when a soldier named **Mangal Pandey** refused to use this cartridge.
- Within a month of Barrackpore incident, the revolt spread in Meerut, Delhi, Kanpur, Lucknow, Jhansi and other places.
- The main causes of the First War of Independence were political causes, economic causes, religious causes and military causes.
- Political causes were policy of annexation, the annexation of Awadh, disrespect shown to Bahadur Shah, disrespect shown to Nana Sahib and Rani Laxmibai, disbanding the armies of the annexed states, corrupt and inefficient administration and spreading of a rumour.
- Economic causes were exploitation of economic resources of India, subordination of Indian industry, collapse of handicrafts and cottage industries, economic decline of peasantry, decline of landed aristocracy, unemployment, poverty and famine.
- Religious causes were social and religious reforms, activities of missionaries, introduction of railways and telegraphs, fears generated by Western education, introduction of new laws.
- Military causes were unjust treatment to Indian soldiers, General Services Enlistment Act, numerical strength of Indian soldiers in the army, effect of annexation of Awadh, poor performance of British Troops.
- The introduction of new Enfield Rifle were regarded as the immediate cause of the uprising.
- Other important centers of the revolt were Bareilly, Bihar, Faizabad, etc. Moreover, it spread in Bengal, Rohilkhand, Bundelkhand, Central India and East Punjab.
- In some states, common men participated in this revolt. They fought with bows and arrows, axes and spears etc.
- By June, 1858, the revolt had been almost completely suppressed.
- The consequences of the war were end of the Company's rule, Queen Victoria's proclamation, religious freedom, abolition of Peshwaship and Mughal Line, policy of Divide and Rule, reorganisation of the army, economic exploitation and rise of nationalism.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a Short Questions

[2 Marks each]

1. Who was Mangal Pandey?

**Ans.** Mangal Pandey was a Brahmin sepoy in Barrackpore regiment of Bengal. He first protested against the greased cartridge, which was believed to have fat of cows and pigs. He was arrested and hanged on 8th April, 1857.

2. Which common belief united the Indians against the British?

**Ans.** There was a common belief among Indians that the rulers in India changed after every 100 years. The British started ruling India after the Battle of Plassey in 1757. Common men believed that the British rule would come to an end in 1857. This belief united them against the British.

3. State any two political causes responsible for the First War of Independence. [2014]

**Ans.** There were many political causes responsible for the First War of Independence. Two of them were as follows:

- (i) Lord Dalhousie's, 'Policy of Annexation' and 'Doctrine of Lapse'.
- (ii) British disrespect shown to Bahadur Shah II, the last Mughal Emperor.

4. Why did the Doctrine of Lapse become a political cause for the Revolt of 1857? [2010]

**Ans.** According to the Doctrine of Lapse, heirs adopted without the consent of the Company, could inherit only the private property of the deceased ruler and not his territory, which would come under the Company's rule. The prominent states, which became victims to the doctrine were Jhansi, Satara, Jaipur, Sambalpur, Udaipur and Nagpur.

5. Name the three states annexed by the British using the Doctrine of Lapse.

**Ans.** The three states annexed by the British using the Doctrine of Lapse were Jhansi, Satara and Nagpur. This policy was resented by the local rulers and people.

6. Under which pretext and when was Awadh annexed to the Company's dominions?

**Ans.** Lord Dalhousie annexed Awadh to the Company's dominions on the pretext of alleged misrule on 13th February, 1856.

7. Which announcement of the British hurt the Mughals?

**Ans.** In 1856, Lord Canning announced that after the death of Bahadur Shah Zafar, his successors would not be allowed to attach imperial titles and dignities to their names. The successor of the emperor would not be allowed to use the Red Fort as their place. This announcement hurt the Mughals and the Muslim community.

8. Who was Nana Sahib? Why he was not acknowledged as the rightful heir to throne?

**Ans.** Nana Sahib was the adopted son of Peshwa Baji Rao II. After the death of Maratha Peshwa, the British refused to recognise Nana Sahib as the ruler of Maratha according to the 'Doctrine of Lapse'. Nana Sahib led the Revolt of 1857 from Kanpur.

9. What was Nana Sahib's grievance against the British? [2012]

**Ans.** Nana Sahib was the adopted son of the last Peshwa Baji Rao II. The British refused to grant him pension, which they were paying to Peshwa Baji Rao II.

10. Mention two economic factors, which became the causes of the First War of Independence, 1857.

**Ans.** The two economic factors were as follows:

- (i) Heavy taxation, forced evictions, discriminatory tariff policy against Indian products and destruction of traditional handicrafts that hit peasants and artisans.
- (ii) India was forced to export raw materials like raw cotton and raw silk at cheaper rates than the British industries needed urgently and also plantation products like indigo, tea and foodgrains which were in short supply in Britain.

11. Mention any two social reforms advocated by the British, which affected the religious traditions of the Indian people.

**Ans.** Widow Remarriage Act and Abolition of Sati were the two major social reforms advocated by the British, which affected the religious traditions of the Indian people.

12. Mention any one reason for the unhappiness of the Indian soldiers in the British Army before 1857.

**Ans.** The British Parliament passed the General Service Enlistment Act in 1856, according to which, Indian soldiers could be sent overseas on duty.

This act did not take into account the sentiments of the Indian soldiers, who dreaded such voyages, as crossing the sea was a religious taboo.

- 13.** What was the General Service Enlistment Act? *(2013)*

**Ans.** The British Parliament passed the General Service Enlistment Act in 1856. According to this Act, the Indian Soldiers in the East India Company could be sent overseas on duty. Indian soldiers dreaded sea voyage and considered it against their customs.

- 14.** Name some important wars where the British troops were defeated.

**Ans.** The British troops were defeated in the First Afghan War (1832-42), the Punjab War (1845-49) and the Crimean War (1854-56).

- 15.** What was the immediate cause of the war of 1857? Where did the war have its beginning?

**Ans.** The immediate cause of the War of 1857 was the introduction of greased cartridge for the Enfield Rifle of the soldiers. The rumour spread that these cartridges had fat of cows and pigs. The soldiers refused to use it and rose in revolt. Revolt started in Meerut on 10th May, 1857.

- 16.** What was the impact of the defeat of the British in the First Afghan War on the Indian soldiers?

**Ans.** The defeat of the British in the First Afghan War increased the self-confidence of the Indian soldiers. After the war they started believing that they could challenge the British in India also.

- 17.** Mention any two reasons which encouraged the Indian soldiers to revolt.

**Ans.** The two reasons which encouraged the Indian soldiers to revolt were following:

- (i) Numerical strength of Indian soldiers was approximately 2 lakhs against the 40,000 British soldiers.
- (ii) The defeat of British Army in the Afghan war, Punjab war and the crimean war inspired the Indian soldiers that they could also win against the mighty Britishers.

- 18.** How did the Indian sepoy protest in Meerut?

**Ans.** On 8th May, 1857, 85 Indian sepoy in Meerut refused to bite off cartridges of new Enfield Rifle. They were sentenced for 10 years imprisonment. On 10th May, the other Indian sepoy broke into open war, killed the officers, attacked jail and released the prisoners. On the same day these sepoy along with thousands of civilians marched towards Delhi.

- 19.** Name the British official who recaptured Delhi from the hands of revolutionaries in 1857.

**Ans.** Sir John Nicholson was the British officer, who with the help of loyal Sikh soldiers recaptured Delhi. After 4 months of fighting, the British succeeded in recapturing Delhi.

- 20.** Name the British official who recaptured Lucknow from the hands of rebels in 1857.

**Ans.** Sir Colin Campbell defeated the rebels and recaptured Lucknow in March, 1858.

- 21.** Why Begum Hazrat Mahal was famous in history?

**Ans.** Begum Hazrat Mahal was the wife of Nawab of Awadh. She took the leadership of the uprising in Lucknow, in 1857.

- 22.** Name the British officer, who captured Jhansi from the hands of the rebellion.

**Ans.** Sir Hugh Rose captured Jhansi on 3rd April, 1858. He defeated Rani Laxmibai and Tantia Tope and after that both of them marched towards Gwalior and captured Gwalior.

- 23.** Who was Khan Bahadur Khan?

**Ans.** Khan Bahadur Khan was a descendant of the ruler of Rohilkhand. He proclaimed himself the Nawab Nazim. He took the leadership of 1857 uprising at Bareilly.

- 24.** How did Bihar join in the First War of Independence?

**Ans.** Kunwar Singh, a zamindar of Jagdishpur in Bihar fought against the British in 1857. His estates were captured by the British. Later he joined in Nana Sahib's army and fought against the British.

- 25.** What was the immediate impact of the Revolt of 1857 on the East India Company?

**Ans.** The immediate impact of the Revolt of 1857 on the East India Company was the end of the Company's rule and India was put directly under the British crown. This was done by the Government of India Act of 1858.

- 26.** The Act of 1858 ended the East India Company's rule and the Government of India was transferred to the British Queen. Who became the first Viceroy under this act?

**Ans.** The Act of 1858 ended the rule of the East India Company and the Government of India was transferred to the British Queen by the proclamation of Queen Victoria. Lord Canning became the first Viceroy under this Act on 1st November, 1858.

**27.** Mention any two administrative changes that the British Government brought about regarding the East India Company's rule in India. *[2015]*

**Ans.** Two administrative changes that were brought by the British Government under the Government of India Act of 1858. were following:

- After the revolt of 1857, the governance of India was transferred from the East India company to the British Crown.
- By the act of 1858, the crown was made directly responsible for the management of Indian affairs.

**28.** How was the army reorganised after the First War of Independence?

**Ans.** After the uprising of 1857, the Britishers reorganised the army. The proportion of British soldiers was increased. Even different castes and creeds were mixed to avoid any other further revolt.

**29.** When, where and by whom was Queen Victoria's proclamation made public in India?

**Ans.** Queen Victoria's proclamation was made public on 1st November, 1858 at Allahabad. It was made public by Lord Canning, the first Viceroy of India.

**30.** Mention any two assurances that were given to the Indian people by Queen Victoria in her proclamation of 1858.

**Ans.** The proclamation of 1858 promised that:

- the British Government would follow a policy of non-intervention in social and religious matters of Indians.
- the Government would treat all subjects—Indians and Europeans as equal. Education and ability would be the basis of all appointments.

**31.** Name the leader of Faizabad at the time of Revolt of 1857, who inspired the Muslim community against the British.

**Ans.** Maulvi Ahmadullah Shah was the leader of Faizabad at the time of Revolt of 1857. He was jailed and later killed by the British. Thousands of Muslims followed him and many Muslims began seeing him as an inspired prophet.

**32.** What steps were taken by the proclamation of Queen Victoria regarding the Princely States?

**Ans.** According to the proclamation of Queen Victoria following steps were taken regarding the princely states:

- The policy of Annexation and the Doctrine of Lapse were abandoned. The Indian princes were allowed the right of adoption.

(ii) The Indian princes were assured that henceforward their territories would not be annexed to the British Empire and they would continue as rulers of their states.

**33.** Name the sections of the Indian society who were hostile to this revolt.

**Ans.** Some sections of Indian society, like, big merchants and moneylender classes whose main profits came from the British merchant class were hostile to this revolt.

**34.** Mention any two causes of the failure of the Revolt of 1857.

**Ans.** Two causes of the failure of the Revolt of 1857 were as follows:

- There was lack of planning and co-ordination among the rebels.
- The resources of the British were far superior to those of the revolutionaries.

**35.** What impact did the uprising of 1857 have on the Mughal rule? *[2016]*

**Ans.** The uprising of 1857 ended the Mughal rule and the title of Mughal emperor was also abolished with the death of Bahadur Shah II in 1862.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

**1.** Explain the causes of the Great Revolt of 1857, with reference to the following. *[2016]*

- Any three political causes *[3]*
- Any three military causes *[3]*
- Any four economic causes *[4]*

**Ans.** (i) **Political Causes**

- The British Policy of effective control and gradual extinction of the native Indian states was one of the major grievances of the Indian rulers.
- The policy of 'Doctrine of Lapse' and 'Policy of Annexation'.
- The Annexation of Awadh on the pretext of alleged misgovernance.

(ii) **Military Causes**

- Ill treatment of the Indian soldiers and low salaries.
- General Service Enlistment Act, as per which, Indian soldiers could be sent overseas on duty.
- Larger proportion of Indian soldier in the Army.

(iii) **Economic Causes**

- Heavy taxation, forcibly evictions, discriminatory tariff policy against the Indian products and destruction of traditional handicrafts that hit peasants and artisans.

- (b) The transfer of wealth from India to England for which India got no proportionate economic returns.
- (c) Decline of landed aristocracy and growing unemployment.
- (d) Inhuman treatment of Indigo cultivators.
- 2.** “Numerous causes were at work in causing the great upsurge of 1857” with reference to this, explain the following.
- (i) The introduction of the railways and telegraphs. /3/
  - (ii) The introduction of the Enfield Rifles. /3/
  - (iii) The laws that interfered with the religious customs of the people. /4/
- Ans.**
- (i) **The Introduction of the Railways and Telegraphs**
    - The rapid spread of modern civilisation made people afraid and suspicious.
    - People spread the rumours that the telegraph poles were erected for the purpose of hanging people, who opposed the British Rule in India.
    - The orthodox Indians felt humiliated to know that in the railway compartments, Brahmins and people from the backward classes were made to sit side by side.
    - Modern innovations threatened the old social rules and produced unrest among many common people in India.
  - (ii) **The Introduction of the Enfield Rifles**

The introduction of Enfield Rifles was the immediate cause of the revolt. In 1856, the British authorities decided to replace the old fashioned musket by the new ‘Enfield Rifles’. There was a rumour that the cartridges of these rifles were greased with the fat of cows and pigs.

The loading process of the Enfield Rifles involved bringing the cartridge to the mouth and biting off the top greased paper with the mouth. Both the Hindu and Muslim sepoys refused to use the cartridges, as they felt that the English were defiling their religion.
  - (iii) **The Laws that Interfered with the Religious Customs of the People**

The British introduced some laws which interfered with the religious custom of the people. These were as follows:

    - The laws allowing conversion from Hinduism to Christianity to inherit their ancestral property.
    - Religious sentiments of the Indian were hurt by the official policy of taxing lands belonging to temples and mosques.
- Laws to abolish the Sati System in 1829.
- The introduction of the Widow Remarriage Act, 1856 and the opening of Western education to girls were not welcomed by the masses.
- 3.** Several factors led to the Revolt of 1857. With reference to this, explain each of the following.
- (i) Discontentment of the sepoys. /3/
  - (ii) Resentment of the rulers of the native states against the British. /3/
  - (iii) Unhappiness of the Indian artisans and craftsmen. /4/
- Ans.**
- (i) **Discontentment of the Sepoys**

Several factors were responsible for the discontentment of Indian soldiers. These are as follows:

    - Indian and British soldiers were not treated equally. Indian soldiers were poorly paid, ill-fed and provided poor accommodation. British military authorities forbade the sepoys from wearing caste or sectarian marks, beards or turbans and they showed disregard for the sentiments of the sepoys.
    - The General Service Enlistment Act of 1856, made it compulsory for Indian soldiers to go overseas on duty. This was strictly objected, by Indians on religious grounds.
    - The wages of the Indian soldiers were inadequate to support their families. On the other hand, the British soldiers received more than eight times the salary of the Indian soldiers.
  - (ii) **Resentment of the Rulers of the Native States against the British**

A tricky method was adopted by the British to gain control over the rulers of the native states. They struck at the very root of their existence by the Doctrine of Lapse. According to this policy, if a ruler died without his heir, his adopted son could neither inherit the throne nor the title and the state would be annexed to the British Empire using the doctrine. By applying this policy, Lord Dalhousie annexed Satara, Jhansi and Nagpur and also Jaipur, Udaipur and Sambalpur.

And where this policy could not be applied, the pretext of mismanagement in the government of the state was used like in the case of Awadh. These discriminating actions of the British caused widespread resentment among the native rulers.
  - (iii) **Unhappiness of the Indian Artisans and Craftsmen**

Heavy duties on the Indian silk and cotton textiles in Britain destroyed the Indian industries.

On the other hand, British goods were imported into India at a nominal duty. As a result of the British Policy of making India a raw material producing country. Indian handicrafts and cottage industries were ruined. Thousands of craftsmen and artisans were thrown out of employment. The manufacturers of silk and cotton goods got no profits from their work and began to look for other means of livelihood. The miserable condition of the workmen became a main cause of resentment against the British rule.

**4. Explain the important causes of the Revolt of 1857.**

- (i) Economic exploitation by the British. [3]
- (ii) The British policy of territorial expansion. [3]
- (iii) Interference in the social and religious life of Indians. [4]

**Ans. (i) Economic exploitation by the British**

Popular discontent against the British rule arose due to the policy of economic exploitation adopted by the colonial power. The company exploited the economic resources of India at the expense of the people of India. The company purchased textiles, indigo, spices and foodgrains from India at a cheap rate and sold them abroad at exorbitant prices. India became an economic colony of industrial England. While the raw materials were supplied to England at a very cheap rate, the finished goods were supplied to India at a very high rate. As a result, Indian handicrafts and cottage industries died out.

**(ii) The British Policy of Territorial Expansion**

The British policy of territorial expansion was one of the main factors responsible for the Revolt of 1857. Under the Doctrine of Lapse, Jhansi, Satara and Nagpur were annexed. Under Direct Annexation Policy, Sind and Punjab were captured. Under the policy of Subsidiary Alliance, a part of the ruler's territory was captured by the British if the ruler failed to pay for the maintenance of the British force. Again states like Awadh was captured on the pretext of misgovernance.

**(iii) Interference in the Social and Religious Life of Indians**

In the 19th century, the Britishers introduced some reforms like the abolition of Sati, child marriage, female infanticide and polygamy. Some Indian social reformers like Ram Mohan Roy and Swami Dayanand Saraswati played a significant role in abolishing these social evils also.

But these reforms were not welcomed by all. The activity of Christian missionaries also generated fear and suspicion among the common men. The number of Christian missionaries were increasing and sometimes they influenced poor section of people to adopt Christianity. This had a great social impact.

**5. Describe the contribution of the following leaders to the Revolt of 1857.**

- (i) Rani Laxmibai [3]
- (ii) Nana Sahib [3]
- (iii) Bahadur Shah Zafar [4]

**Ans. (i) Rani Laxmibai**

She was the queen of Jhansi. After the annexation of Jhansi, she became a rebel and joined in the uprising of 1857. She was considered the bravest and best military leader of the rebels. She with the help of Tantia Tope occupied Gwalior. Sir Hugh Rose advanced towards Gwalior and defeated the Indian troops.

Rani fought like a true hero and died in the battlefield. Her courage and military skill inspired her countrymen. She is still remembered by Indians for her great sacrifice.

**(ii) Nana Sahib**

He was the adopted son of Bazi Rao II. Being a brave and determined general, he declared himself as the Peshwa. He led the revolt in Kanpur and captured Kanpur fort. On 17th June, 1857 General Havelock recaptured Kanpur after defeating Nana Sahib. Nana Sahib fled to Nepal and nothing was heard of him after that.

**(iii) Bahadur Shah Zafar**

He was the last Mughal Emperor. He was forced to lead the revolt in Delhi. When Delhi was captured by the revolutionaries, he was declared the Emperor of India. But Sir John Nicholson with the help of Sikh soldiers from Punjab, besieged Delhi. Bahadur Shah was captured and was found guilty of helping the rebels. As a punishment he was deported to Rangoon where he died in 1862. With him the mighty Mughal Empire came to an end.

**6. The Events of the Revolt of 1857 were of great importance. In the context of the course of the revolt explain the following.**

- (i) Events at Meerut [3]
- (ii) Events at Lucknow [3]
- (iii) Events at Kanpur [4]

**Ans. (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 6.**

**(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 6.**

**(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 6 and 7.**

**7.** The First War of Independence led to several changes. With reference to this answer the following.

- (i) The rights granted to the Indian Princes and Chiefs. [3]
- (ii) The reorganisation of the army. [3]
- (iii) The changes introduced in the administrative setup of the British territories. [4]

**Ans.** (i) **The Rights Granted to the Indian Princes and Chiefs**

The Policy of Annexation and the Doctrine of Lapse were abandoned. Some of the Indian princes had remained loyal to the British and had helped them in suppressing the uprisings. All the treaties between the princes and the company were decided to the respected. The British promised not to annex any territory and gave the Indian rulers the right to adopt heirs. The Indian princes became junior partners of the British crown because they were promised that they would continue as rulers of their states.

(ii) **The Reorganisation of the Army**

The strength of the European troops in India was increased, and the number of Indian troops was reduced. The strength of European troops in India was increased from 45,000 to 65,000 and the number of Indian troops reduced from 2,38,000 to 1,40,000. All Indian artillery units (with the exception of a few mountain batteries) were disbanded. Practically the same ratio was maintained till the First World War. The general principle adopted was the number of Indian sepoys should not exceed twice that of the European troops. The earlier policy of excluding Indians from the officer corps was strictly maintained.

(iii) **The Changes Introduced in the Administrative Set-up of the British Territories in India**

The end of the rule of the East India Company was an important consequence of the war. In 1858, the British Parliament passed the Government of India Act.

Due to this act, the responsibility to govern India was transferred to Queen and the British Parliament. This act abolished the Board of Directors of the Company and the responsibility of the Government of India was passed on to a separate Minister in the British Parliament. This minister was known as the Secretary of State for India. He was to be helped by a council of 15 members, of which 9 should have worked in India for 10 years. The Governor-General was designated as the Viceroy.

**8.** The First War of Independence, 1857 led to several changes. With reference to this, explain the following.

- (i) Religious Freedom [3]
- (ii) Rise of Nationalism in India [3]
- (iii) Economic Exploitation [4]

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 8.

(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 8.

(iii) **The Economic Exploitation**

- Agricultural India was made an economic colony to serve the interests of Industrial England.
- India was made to accept ready made British goods either duty free or at nominal duty rates, while Indian products were subjected to high import duties in England.
- The British capital invested in Indian markets especially in railway, shipping, oil exploration, tea and coffee plantations etc., was used to get huge profits and were sent to England.
- The export of raw materials and foodgrains deprived the country of its agricultural surplus and raised the prices of raw materials.

**9.** State the impact of Revolt of 1857 on

- (i) The Mughal Empire [3]
- (ii) The East India Company [3]
- (iii) Hindu-Muslim Unity [4]

**Ans.** (i) **The Mughal Empire**

Bahadur Shah Zafar was found guilty of helping the rebellious soldiers. As a punishment, he was sentenced to life imprisonment and deported to 'Rangoon' where he died in 1862. His two sons were shot dead in front of him. Thus, the mighty Mughal Empire came to an end as Lord Canning announced that after the death of Bahadur Shah, his successors would not be allowed to use the imperial titles and status. Rather they would be known as mere Princes.

(ii) **The East India Company**

The most significant result of the Revolt of 1857 was the end of the rule of the East India Company. In 1858, the British Parliament passed the Government of India Act, by which the responsibility to govern India was transferred to the British crown and the British Parliament. This act abolished the Board of Directors of the Company and the responsibility of the Government of India was passed into a separate minister in the British Parliament, who was known as the Secretary of State for India.

(iii) **Hindu-Muslim Unity**

Use of grease in newly introduced Royal Enfield Rifle hurt the sentiments of both Hindus and Muslims equally. It was believed that its grease was made of cow's and pig's fat. Both Muslims and Hindus united to protect their religious faith.

The main leaders of the Revolt of 1857, like Nana Sahib, Tantia Tope, Rani Laxmibai etc. recognised Bahadur Shah Zafar as their emperor. This had a great impact on the Hindu-Muslim unity in our country. This was the first time that both the Hindu-Muslim community fought for a common cause i.e., to end the British rule.

- 10.** Numerous causes gave rise to the First War of Independence and its consequences led to several changes in the British Government in India. In this context, answer the following. *[2018]*

- (i) Explain any three political causes of the Revolt of 1857. *(3)*
- (ii) Briefly explain the immediate cause of the Great Revolt. *(3)*
- (iii) State any four changes in the administration of the British Government as a consequence of the Revolt. *(4)*

**Ans.** (i) Political causes of the Revolt of 1857 were:

- The British policy of effective control and gradual extinction of the Native Indian State was one of major grievances of the Indian rulers.
- The policy of 'Doctrine of Lapse' and 'Policy of Annexation' lead to extreme resentment among the successors of rulers who died without a natural heir.
- The Annexation of Awadh on the pretext of alleged misgovernance led to a lot of resentment among the ruling elite of Awadh and the Indian sepoys working under the East India Company.

(ii) Immediate cause of the Great Revolt of 1857 is the introduction of new 'Enfield Rifle' in the army. This rifle needed a cartridge which had a greased paper cover. This paper cover had to be bitten off before loading the cartridge into the rifle. Rumours were spread that the greased paper was made of beef and pork. The soldiers felt that it was a move by the British to defame their religion. Mangal Pandey urged his fellow soldiers to not use the rifle. On 29th March 1857, he attacked his officers in Barrackpore. He was later hanged and this marked the beginning of the sepoy revolt in Meerut which later spread to other Parts of Northern India.

(iii) The changes introduced in the administrative set-up of the British Territories in India were:

- The end of the rule of East India Company was an important changes due to the revolt.
- The Governor-General of India now came to be known as the Viceroy of India.
- Government of India Act was passed by British Parliament. Due to this Act, the responsibility to govern India was transferred to Queen and the British Parliament.
- This Act abolished the Board of Directors of the Company and the responsibility of the Government of India was passed on to a separate Minister in the British Parliament known as Secretary of State.

- 11.** Describe briefly the results of the great uprising of 1857 in the political and constitutional fields pertaining to

- (i) End of the Company's rule. *[3]*
- (ii) Abolition of Peshwaship and the Mughal Line. *[3]*
- (iii) Policy of 'Divide and Rule'. *[4]*

- Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 7.  
(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 8.  
(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 8.

### C Picture Based Questions [10 Marks each]

- 1.** Answer the following questions based on the picture given below.



- (i) Identify the personality shown in the picture. *[3]*
- (ii) When did he ascend the throne? *[3]*
- (iii) Explain his association within the Revolt of 1857. *[4]*

- Ans.** (i) The person shown in the picture is Bahadur Shah Zafar, the last Mughal Emperor. He was the second son of Akbar II. He was a nominal Emperor, as the Mughal Empire enlisted in name only and his authority was limited only in the city of Delhi.

- (ii) Bahadur Shah ascended the throne in 1837 after death of his father Akbar II. He was not his father's preferred choice as his successor. One of Akbar Shah's queens, Mumtaz Begum pressurised him to declare her son, Mirza Jahangir, as his successor. However, the East India Company led Jahangir after he attacked their resident in the Red Fort paving the way for Zafar to assume the throne.
- (iii) The revolutionaries of 1857 captured Delhi on 12th May, 1857. They proclaimed the Mughal Emperor Bahadur Shah II as the ruler of India. He was forced to write letters to all chiefs and rulers of India urging them to organise a confederacy of Indian states to fight against the British regime. The rebel soldiers from other stations poured into Delhi.

The loss of Delhi lowered the prestige of the British. So, in order to restore prestige, Sir John Nicholson, with the help of the loyal Sikh soldiers from Punjab besieged Delhi. After 4 months of fighting, the British succeeded in recapturing Delhi.

Bahadur Shah was found guilty of helping the rebellions. As a punishment, he was sentenced to life imprisonment and deported to Rangoon (Yangon) where he died in 1862. His support inspired the Indian soldiers and he was accepted as their Supreme Commander. His presence united the revolutionaries of 1857.

- 2.** Answer the following questions based on the picture given below.



- (i) Identify the lady shown in the picture. [3]  
 (ii) When and by whom her proclamation was read? [3]  
 (iii) What did she promise to the Princes of India? [4]

**Ans.** (i) The lady shown in the picture is Queen Victoria. She is associated with Britain's great age of industrial expansion and economic progress and especially expansion of the British Empire.

- (ii) After the Revolt of 1857, the rule of the East India Company ended. The transfer of the Government of India to the British crown was made public in India by Queen Victoria's proclamation. This proclamation was read by Lord Canning in a grand Durbar at Allahabad on 1st November, 1858.
- (iii) There was a significant change in the policy of the new British Government towards Indian princes in order to make them loyal to the British. The important changes were as follows:
- It assured the princes that all treaties entered into with the company would be honoured.
  - The territories of the princes would not be annexed to the British crown.
  - The princes were given the right to adopt sons and successors.
  - Finally, the proclamation assured them that the British would not interfere in their internal matters except in case of 'misconduct' and 'anarchy'. However, they were asked to restrict their armies.

- 3.** Answer the following questions based on the picture given below.



- (i) Identify the person in the picture. [3]  
 (ii) Why he was not considered as the rightful heir to the throne? [3]  
 (iii) Mention the role played by him in the Revolt of 1857. [4]

- Ans.** (i) Nana Sahib is shown in the above picture. He was the adopted son of Peshwa Baji Rao II. Before his death in 1851, Baji Rao II gave all his property to Nana Sahib and declared him as his heir.  
 (ii) After the death of Baji Rao II, the East India Company stopped the pension of Baji Rao. They declared that this pension would not be given to Nana Sahib, as he was not a natural born heir, so the kingdom would no longer belong to him. Nana Sahib was greatly offended by both the termination of the pension and by the suspension of various titles and grants enjoyed by Baji Rao II.

(iii) To get the justice from the British, Nana Sahib represented his case to the authorities in London through Azimullah Khan. But the Court of Directors rejected his claims. It made Nana Sahib the enemy of the British Raj. He was forced to live at Kanpur.

When the Revolt of 1857 started, he led the revolt at Kanpur. Under him the rebels fought, so bravely that the British troops were compelled to surrender on 26th June, 1857. On 17th July, 1857, General Havelock succeeded in recapturing Kanpur after defeating Nana Sahib. But Nana Sahib was not the man to give in so easily. He fought back with the help of Tantia Tope.

Though they succeeded in recapturing Kanpur but could-not hold it for long. They were defeated by General Campbell. Nana Sahib fled to Nepal and nothing was heard about him again.

**4.** Answer the following questions based on the picture given below.



- (i) Identify the lady shown in the picture. [3]
- (ii) Name the state of which she was the ruler. [3]
- (iii) Why is she still remembered today? [4]

**Ans.** (i) The lady shown in the picture is Rani Laxmibai. Laxmibai was born on 19th November, 1828 in the holy town of Varanasi into a Marathi Brahmin family. She was married in 1842.

- (ii) Rani Laxmibai became the ruler of Jhansi, after the death of her husband. Jhansi is situated in the North Central Part of India. She was married to Maharaja of Jhansi, Raja Gangadhar Rao Newalkar.
- (iii) The Revolt of 1857 began at Jhansi in June, 1857. Sir Hugh Rose laid siege to the fortress of Jhansi in March, 1858. Rani Laxmibai resisted, but Jhansi was captured by the British.

Rani escaped from the fortress on the night of 4th April, 1858 to join Tantia Tope. Under the leadership of the Rani, soldiers of Tantia Tope and her own soldiers occupied Gwalior.

The ruler of Gwalior, **Scindia** fled and took refugee with the British at Agra. Sir Hugh Rose advanced towards Gwalior and defeated Indian troops.

Rani Laxmibai died like a brave soldier, after putting up a tough fight on 17th June, 1858. For her sheer bravery she is still remembered by every Indian.

# **CHAPTER TEST**

## **Short Questions**

**[2 Marks each]**

1. When did the First War of Independence takes place?
2. Which were the two Indian states brought under the British control using the Subsidiary Alliance?
3. Why did Rani Laxmibai become a bitter enemy of the British?
4. Explain how the British exploited resources of India with an example.
5. Which announcement of Lord Dalhousie of 1849, hurt the Mughals?
6. Name the soldier who first refused to use the cartridge used in the Enfield Rifle. How was he punished?
7. ‘Trade with England did not benefit Indian economy’. Explain it by giving two examples.
8. Mention two causes of discontent among the Indian soldiers of the British army which culminated into the uprising of 1857.

## **Structured Questions**

**[10 Marks each]**

1. Lord Dalhousie greatly extended the territories of the British India by introducing the ‘Doctrine of Lapse’. In this context, answer the following questions.
  - (i) What is meant by ‘Doctrine of Lapse’?
  - (ii) Mention why he annexed various states on the basis of this doctrine?
  - (iii) What were the consequences of the application of this doctrine?
2. During the 19th century, the Britishers began to interfere with the local religious and social customs. In this context, briefly describe
  - (i) Interference in social custom, like ‘Sati’.
  - (ii) Resentment among the Hindu and Muslim priests.
  - (iii) Introduction of new laws.
3. After the Revolt of 1857.
  - (i) What were the promises made by the British crown?
  - (ii) State two administrative changes.
  - (iii) What would be the relation between the British Government and the Indian princes?

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

1. Numerous causes gave rise to the First War of Independence and its consequences led to several changes in the British Government in India. In this context, answer the following.
  - (i) Explain any three political causes of the Revolt of 1857.
  - (ii) Briefly explain the immediate cause of the Great Revolt.
  - (iii) State any four changes in the administration of the British Government as a consequence of the Revolt.

## 2016

2. What impact did the uprising of 1857 have on the Mughal rule?
3. Explain the causes of the Great Revolt of 1857, with reference to the following:
  - (i) Any three Political causes
  - (ii) Any three Military causes
  - (iii) Any four Economic causes

## 2015

4. Mention two administrative changes that the British Government brought about regarding the East India Company's rule in India.

## 2014

5. State any two political causes responsible for the First War of Independence.

## 2013

6. What was the General Service Enlistment Act?

## 2012

7. What was Nana Sahib's grievance against the British?

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

# The Rise of Nationalism and the Indian National Congress

From the second half of the 19th century the idea of **nationalism** started to originate in India. Nationalism in India was inspired by the French Revolution of 1789. The ideas of liberty and democratic rights given by the French Revolution inspired people. The memory of the revolt of 1857 also inspired Indians to go ahead with their struggle for freedom.

## Meaning of Nationalism

Nationalism is a feeling of togetherness and common consciousness based on political, historical, religious, cultural, psychological and other factors in a state. It is a strong sentiment, a feeling of love and pride for one's own country. For a nation to emerge and survive, this feeling is very important. But, it was not an easy task of forging nationalism in a diverse country like India.

## Factors Leading to the Growth of Nationalism

Various factors were responsible for the rise and growth of the national movement in India. These are:

### British Policy of Economic Exploitation

The British followed the exploitative economic policies in India. They collected land revenue but never cared for the welfare of the peasants. Many of them were forced to grow jute and cotton for the supply of raw materials to the factories in England.

The British changed the land law. Before the British Raj, a moneylender could not charge very high interest for money. No land could be transferred to him, if the peasant failed to pay back his loan. But under the new land law, a moneylender could demand high interest rate and could also get the land transferred to his name if the peasant failed to pay back. As people at that time were largely illiterate, moneylender took undue advantage of this law. As a result, the peasant class suffered immensely.

The British economic policy brought about industrial stagnation of India. Goods manufactured in England were dumped into India and sold at higher prices. Heavy duties were imposed on goods exported to England from India. The policy ruined the cottage industries of our country, **artisans**<sup>1</sup>, handcraftsmen were deprived of their livelihood.

All the sections of society realised that their sufferings were the result of British rule. This forced the people to unite and join the national movement.

### Repressive Colonial Policies

The British colonial power followed a repressive policy against Indians. Viceroys like **Lord Lytton** (1876-1880) and **Lord Curzon** (1899-1905) took many repressive policies. These are as follows:

- **Vernacular Press Act** Lord Lytton passed the Vernacular Press Act on 14th March, 1878 to suppress the freedom of the native press. This act provided the government with extensive rights to censor reports published in **vernacular**<sup>2</sup> papers, which would arouse dissatisfaction against the government. This law was not applicable to English newspapers. This law was repealed by Lord Ripon in 1882.
- **The Indian Arms Act, 1878** Lord Lytton passed the Indian Arms Act in 1878 which compelled the Indians to acquire a licence to keep, sell or purchase arms. The offenders were to be punished both with punishment and a fine. But, this law was not applicable for the English, Anglo-Indians and government servants of certain categories.
- **New Law for Civil Service Examination** The maximum age limit for the Indian Civil Service Examination was reduced from 21 to 19 years, thus, making it difficult for the Indians.
- **Ilbert Bill** The Ilbert Bill of 1883 abolished judicial disqualification on the basis of racial distinction. Earlier Indian judges were racially discriminated for sentencing Europeans. This bill allowed the trial Europeans by Indian Judges for criminal offences. The law provoked a storm of energy criticism among the Anglo-Indians. Ultimately, the government had to bow before this hostile opinion and the bill was amended.

### Development of Transport and the Means of Communications

The British built a network of roads and railways in order to promote their own commercial interest.

The means of communication connected the vast country and gave Indians a sense of oneness. This proved a blessing in disguise as it brought close, even the far flung areas. Regional feelings began to disappear and people started to believe that they belonged to one country.

Thus, the means of transport made it possible to mobilise public opinion on a national scale. The development of modern postal and telegraph system brought a radical change in social, intellectual and political life.

### Influence of Western Education

The British introduced Western education in India to serve their own administrative and political ends. They wanted trained clerks for their administration. However, Western education had broadened the views of Indians. It gave them the opportunity to study the work of Voltaire, Rousseau, Locke, Bentham, Marx, Engels, Thomas Paine, etc. Indians became aware of the ideals of French Revolution and American War of Independence.

The English language played a role of **lingua franca**<sup>3</sup> in India. In all parts of India, educated Indians could communicate with one another through English language. Further, Western education encouraged Vernacular languages and literary works in them.

### Socio-Religious Reform Movement

The second half of the 19th century witnessed the rise of many religious and social reformers in India. Reformers like Raja Rammohan Roy, Swami Dayanand Saraswati, Swami Vivekananda and Jyotiba Phule prepared the ground for the national movement.

#### Raja Rammohan Roy

The **Father of Indian Renaissance**, Raja Rammohan Roy was the first great socio-religious reformer of the 19th century. He wanted to remove the religious and social evils which were popular in India at that period.

In 1828, he founded the Brahmo Sabha, which was later renamed **Brahmo Samaj**. It condemned idol worship and supported Monotheism or the worship of one Supreme God. He also condemned blind faith and superstition,

<sup>1</sup> Artisans A person who does skilled works.

<sup>2</sup> Vernacular The language spoken in a particular area or by a particular group.

<sup>3</sup> Lingua franca a language that is adopted as a common language between speakers whose native languages are different.

untouchability, polygamy<sup>4</sup>, child marriage, female infanticide<sup>5</sup> and rigid caste system.

It was his constant effort that abolition of Sati became a law in 1829 and was passed by Lord Bentinck. He also favoured widow remarriage (which was legalised in 1856) and inter-caste marriage. Raja Rammohan Roy laid the foundation of an English school, the Hindu college and the Vedanta college.

### Jyotiba Phule

He was an activist, thinker, social reformer who belonged to a low caste family from Maharashtra. He waged a long struggle life against caste discrimination and Brahmanical supremacy. Jyotiba Phule and his wife established the first girls school at Poona in 1851. He also started a private orphanage for the widows. In 1873, he founded the **Satya Shodhak Samaj** to fight against the caste system. He was the first leader who started the widow remarriage movement in Maharashtra.

### Other Social Reformers

Social reformers not only fought against the social evils but also instilled national pride in people. Reformers like Swami Vivekananda and Swami Dayanand Saraswati proclaimed the superiority of Indian culture and civilisation.

The **Ramkrishna Mission** was established by Swami Vivekananda in 1897 at Belur, West Bengal for serving human beings irrespective of caste, creed and religion. Swami Dayanand Saraswati raised the slogan 'India for the Indians' and he founded Arya Samaj at Bombay in 1875.

### Role of the Press and Literature

The emergence of the modern press both English and Vernacular was very significant during early 19th century. The second half of the 19th century saw an unprecedented growth of Indian-owned English and Vernacular newspapers. In 1877, there were about 169 newspapers published in Vernacular languages and their circulation was widely spread.

The Indian press has played a notable role in mobilising public opinion, organising political movements and promoting nationalism. Many newspapers like, The Amrit Bazar Patrika, The Hindu, The Patriot, The Maharatta, The Kesari, The Indian Mirror, etc were published from different parts of the country. They criticised the unjust policies of the colonial government and played a significant role to reuse patriotic sentiments among masses.

Literature in Indian language also played an important role. Writers like Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay, Rabindranath Tagore, Bharatendu Harishchandra, etc played an important role in promoting consciousness among people. Bankim Chandra's famous novel 'Anandamath' (1882) was considered as the 'Bible of Modern Patriotism'.

'Vande Matram' was written by Bankim Chandra for his novel 'Anandamath'. Many other patriotic songs written by Rabindranath Tagore, Dwijendralal Roy, Muhammad Iqbal also inspired Indians and prepared them for the national struggle. Indian press became the primary medium of popular public education and also the mirror of Indian nationalism.

### CHECK POINT 01

- 1 Who passed the Vernacular Press Act?
- 2 In which year the Indian Arms Act was passed?
- 3 Who is known as the 'Father of Indian Renaissance'?
- 4 Where was the first girls school established in colonial India?
- 5 Who is the author of the popular novel 'Anandamath'?

## The Growth of Political Associations

The second half of the 19th century witnessed the formation of various political associations which were the result of growing nationalism and political consciousness.

The earliest political organisation formed in India was the Landholder's Society founded in 1838 by Dwarakanath Tagore of Bengal. Its aim was to safeguard the interests of the landlords of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. The Bengal British India Society was formed in 1843 to protect the interests of general public. Later in 1851, these two organisations were merged to form the British India Association of Bengal. Other organisations like Bombay Presidency Association (1871), Madras Native Association, Poona Sarvajanik Sabha (1870) and Indian League (1875) were formed by the initiative of different persons.

### East India Association (1866)

The 'East India Association' was founded by **Dadabhai Naoroji** in London in 1866. Dadabhai thought that India's poverty was due to the faulty economic policies of the British.

<sup>4</sup> Polygamy The practice or custom of having more than one wife or husband.

<sup>5</sup> Female infanticide The crime of killing a baby girl.

The association voiced the grievances of Indians and suggested remedial measures. He thought that the British were basically just and fair. Through this association, he wanted to inform the British about the grievances of Indian people, so that they could solve it. The association demanded the withdrawal of the Vernacular Press Act and abolition of cotton duties. The association had its branches in Bombay, Calcutta and Madras.

### **Indian Association of Calcutta (1876)**

The Indian Association of Calcutta was founded in 1876 by **Surendranath Banerjee**. This was the first organised political association, comprised of lawyers, professionals and educated middle class as its members. The association had also branches outside Bengal. The main objectives of this association were to create public opinion on political matters and to promote friendly relations between Hindus and Muslims. This association tried to evolve a common political programme.

Further, it demanded reform in the Indian Civil Service Examination, cancel the Arms Act, the Vernacular Press Act and protection of the rights of tenants against landlords and British planters. Surendranath Banerjee made an extensive tour of the country and received with a grand welcome.

Encouraged by the response, Surendranath conceived the idea of an all Indian organisation. In 1883, he convened the All India National Conference at Calcutta. This was the first political organisation of an All-India character and its conference was attended by representatives from all over India.

## **Formation of the Indian National Congress**

Educated Indians felt the need for an all India party to fight for their rights. Even some liberal Britshers were also sympathetic for their aspirations and demands.

**Allan Octavian Hume**, a retired civil servant wanted to set up an organisation that would draw the government's attention to the administrative drawbacks and it would suggest the remedial measures. In 1884, Hume laid the foundation of the Indian National Congress.

The first session was to be held in Pune on 25th December, 1885. But plague broke out in Pune. So, the conference was shifted to Bombay. The session was held at Gokuldas Tejpal Sanskrit College from 28th to 31st December, 1885. This session was presided by WC Bonnerjee and 72 delegates attended this session.

The name of the association was Indian National Congress. The All India National Conference was merged with the Indian National Congress in 1886 as these two had the same objectives. The Congress was founded as an organisation of educated persons such as teachers, professors, lawyers, medical men and businessmen.

First it was a non-political association which tried to get some concessions from the British ruler. But gradually, the Congress attracted wide membership and became the main organisation to launch the freedom movement in India.

### **Immediate Objectives of the Indian National Congress**

The main objectives of the Congress as enumerated by the President of inaugural session were as follows:

- Promotion of close relations between nationalist workers from different parts of the country.
- Development and consolidation of a feeling of national unity, irrespective of caste, religion or province.
- Formulation of popular demands and their presentation before the government.
- To train and organise the public opinion in the country.

In the initial stage, the relation between the British Government and Congress was friendly as the aim of the Congress was to achieve self-government within the British Empire. Viceroy Lord Dufferin thought that the foundation of the Congress would act as a **safety valve** for popular discontent. But gradually the British Government started to distrust the Congress for its growing popularity and changing demands.

### **Sessions of the Congress**

The Congress held its sessions annually in different cities to rouse public opinion in favour of its aim. The first session of the Congress was held at Bombay in 1885 which was presided by WC Bonnerjee. The second session of the Congress was held at calcutta in 1886 which was presided by Dadabhai Naoroji.

#### **CHECK POINT 02**

- 1 In which year the landholder's society was founded?
- 2 Where was the East India Association founded?
- 3 Who was the founder of the Indian Association?
- 4 Where was the first session of Indian National Congress held?

# TIMELINE

Year	Important Events		
1838	The Landholder's Society	1875	The Indian League
1843	The Bengal British Indian Society	1876	Indian Association of Calcutta
1852	Madras Native Association	1878	Vernacular Press Act, the Indian Arms Act
1866	East India Association,	1882	Vernacular Press Act was repealed by Lord Ripon
1870	Poona Sarvajanik Sabha	1883	Ilbert Bill
		1885	Foundation of Indian National Congress
		1943	Bengal Famine

## SUMMARY

- From the second half of the 19th century, the ideal of nationalism started.
- Nationalism is a feeling of love and pride for one's own country.
- Different factors were responsible for the rise and growth of national movement. These were British policy of economic exploitation, repressive colonial policies, development of Transport and the means of communication and influence of Western education, etc.
- The Britishers applied repressive policies by introducing Vernacular Press Act, Indian Arms Act, New Law for Civil Service Examination, Ilbert Bill, etc. But they were compelled by the agitation of Indians to amend some bills.
- Development of transport and communication connected the Indian masses.
- Western education influenced the thinking of people.
- The second half of the 19th century witnessed the rise of many socio-religious reformers like Raja Rammohan Roy, Jyotiba Phule, Swami Vivekananda, Swami Dayanand Saraswati, etc in India.
- Due to British administrative and economic policies, new urban middle class grew.
- The emergence of Indian press was very significant during early 19th century. Different newspapers and writings of Indian authors helped to change the minds of Indians and made them realise the repressive role of the colonial power.
- Different political association grew at that time. Of them, East India Association and Indian Association of Calcutta were important.
- In 1885, AO Hume founded Indian National Congress.
- The first session of the Indian National Congress was held in Bombay in 1885 and it was presided by WC Bonnerjee.
- The second session was held in Calcutta under the Presidentship of Dadabhai Naoroji.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a) Short Questions [2 Marks each]

1. There were various factors that promoted the growth of nationalism in India in the 19th century. Give the meaning of 'nationalism' in this context. [2011]

**Ans.** Nationalism was the most successful political force of the 19th century. Nationalism is a feeling of oneness which the people feel about their nation. It was a result of a new social and economic force, which had put an end to feudalism.

2. Explain the reason of industrial stagnation in British India.

**Ans.** The British economic policy of exploitation brought about industrial stagnation in India. They hardly made any attempt to revive or promote Indian industries. But the government assisted the British industries. The Britishers established their monopoly in jute, tea, coffee industries with the help of cheap Indian labour.

3. Name the Act of Lord Lytton's regime which aimed at limiting the freedom of the press.

**Ans.** Lord Lytton passed the Vernacular Press Act in 1878 to suppress the freedom of the native press. According to this act. Government could censor the reports of the Vernacular papers, which they thought as anti-British.

4. Mention any two Repressive Colonial Policies of Lord Lytton. [2017]

**Or** Mention two acts against which Surendranath Banerjee protested. [2008]

**Ans.** The Surendranath Banerjee protested against the following acts:

- (i) The Indian Arms Act (ii) The Vernacular Press Act

5. What do you mean by Gagging Act? When was it passed?

**Ans.** Vernacular Press Act is known as Gagging Act. This act provided the government with extensive rights to censor reports and editorials in the Vernacular newspapers which might incite feelings of dissatisfaction against the British Government. This law was passed in 1878.

6. What was the Indian Arms Act?

**Ans.** Lord Lytton passed the Indian Arms Act in 1878 which compelled the Indian to acquire a license to keep, sell or purchase arms. But this law was not applicable to English, Anglo-Indians and Government servants of some particular categories.

7. Mention any two economic factors responsible for the growth of nationalism in India. [2018]

**Ans.** (a) Two economic factors responsible for the growth of nationalism in India were:

- (i) Educated Indians were not appointed to high posts. High posts in civil and military services were only reserved for the British. As a result the Indian began to feel alienated by the British.  
(ii) The government levied high taxes on land. Revenues were generally not reduced even during droughts, floods etc. This led to growth of nationalism among Indian Peasantry.

8. What was Ilbert Bill?

**Ans.** Ilbert Bill was the Criminal Procedure Amendment Bill. This bill tried to put Indian judges on the same footing as Europeans in dealing with all cases in the Bengal Presidency. The Indian judges were to be given permission to trials of Europeans who were accused of crimes. This provoked a storm of angry criticism among the Anglo-Indians.

9. What was the influence of Western education on the minds of the educated Indians in the 19th century? [2013]

**Ans.** The influences of Western education on the minds of the educated Indians in the 19th century were as follows:

- (i) Through the study of European history, political thought and economic ideas, educated Indians had an access to the ideas of liberty, nationality, equality, rules of law and self-government.  
(ii) Social awareness and national consciousness among Indians were brought by the revolutionary ideas of the liberal thinkers like Rousseau, Mazzini and Thomas Paine.

10. How did English language play a leading role in the growth of Nationalism in India?

**Ans.** The spread and popularity of English language gave the educated Indians a common language, i.e. a lingua franca through which they could communicate and exchange their views. In this way, English language played a leading role in the growth of Nationalism in India.

- 11.** Mention any two social reforms suggested to the British by Raja Rammohan Roy.

**Ans.** Raja Rammohan Roy was the 'Father of Indian Renaissance'. His efforts to abolition of Sati and support of Western education made him immortal as a social reformer.

- 12.** Name the first newspaper in India. Which were the two papers published by Raja Rammohan Roy?

**Ans.** The first newspaper in India was the 'Bengal Gazette'. It was published in 1780 by James Augustus Hickey. The real development of the press came early in the 19th century. Raja Rammohan Roy started two papers. i.e. 'Sambad Kaumudi in Bengali' and 'Miratul Akhbar' in Persian. These two papers were devoted of propagating the case for social reforms.

- 13.** Name the personality who set-up:

- (i) Brahmo Samaj                           (ii) Arya Samaj
- (iii) Ramkrishna Mission

**Ans.** (i) Brahmo Samaj was set-up by Raja Rammohan Roy in 1828.  
(ii) Arya Samaj was set-up by Swami Dayanand Saraswati in 1875 in Bombay.  
(iii) Ramkrishna Mission was set-up by Swami Vivekananda in 1897 at Belur, West Bengal.

- 14.** Mention any two contributions of Jyotiba Phule in preparing the ground for the national movement. *(2015)*

**Ans.** In 1873, Jyotiba Phule founded Satya Shodhak Samaj to fight against the caste system. Further, he pioneered the widow remarriage movement in Maharashtra and worked for the education of women. These are the two great contribution of Jyotiba Phule.

- 15.** Name some important books written by Jyotiba Phule.

**Ans.** Some famous books written by Jyotiba Phule were Brahmananche Kasab, Gulamgiri, Shetkaryacha Asud, Sarvajanik Satya Dharm Pustak, etc.

- 16.** Who raised the slogan, "India for the Indians"? Name the institution founded by him.

**Ans.** Social reformer Swami Dayanand Saraswati raised the slogan "India for the Indians". He founded the Arya Samaj at Bombay in AD 1875 to spread his ideas and reforms. The Arya Samaj helped in the revival of the Vedas and the Vedic values.

- 17.** State two factors responsible for the growth of nationalism in India. *(2011)*

**Ans.** Two important factors responsible for the growth of Nationalism in India were as follows:

- (i) The British introduced Western education in India which inspired Indians and made them politically conscious and disillusioned with the British policies.
- (ii) Indian National Congress was founded in 1885 which helped in uniting the people of India.

- 18.** What was the role of the press in promoting nationalistic sentiments among the Indians? *(2014)*

**Ans.** The introduction of printing press was a significant event for promoting nationalistic sentiments amongst Indians. The press and newspaper enabled people to be informed and educated. During the later half of the 19th century, a large number of newspapers like. The Amrit Bazar Patrika, The Hindu, The Patriot, The Maharatta, The Kesari, The Azad, The Indian Mirror etc, were started. These papers fostered patriotism and ideas of liberty and justice in our country. They criticised the unjust policies of the government.

- 19.** Name the two newspapers used by Tilak to spread his ideas.

**Ans.** Bal Gangadhar Tilak started two papers 'Kesari' and 'The Maharatta', in order to spread the idea of nationalism, courage and self-defence for the freedom of the country. These papers played an important part in rousing the national consciousness of the people.

- 20.** Which book is known as the 'Bible of modern patriotism'.

**Ans.** The famous Bengali novel 'Anandamath' is known as the 'Bible of modern patriotism'. This was written by Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay in 1882. This novel was set in the background of Sannyasi Rebellion in the late 1700s.

- 21.** Who founded the 'landholders' society and when?

**Ans.** Landholder's Society was founded by Dwarkanath Tagore in 1838.

- 22.** Name the two organisations which were merged to form the 'British Indian Association of Bengal'.

**Ans.** The Landholder's Society (1838) and the Bengal British India Society (1843) were merged to form the British India Association of Bengal.

**23.** What was the main objective of the East India Association?

**Ans.** The East India Association was founded by Dadabhai Naoroji at London in 1866. Dadabhai thought, that the British were basically just and fair. Through this association he provided information about the grievances of Indian people to the British Parliament and also suggested remedial measures, e.g. the association recommended the abolition of cotton duties and withdrawal of the Vernacular Press Act.

**24.** Name the two main associations that were the precursors of the Indian National Congress?

(2017)

Or Name two forerunners of the Indian National Congress.

**Ans.** East India Association (1866) was founded by Dadabhai Naoroji and Indian Association of Calcutta (1876) founded by Surendranath Banerjee were two forerunners of the Indian National Congress.

**25.** Mention the regional association that Surendranath Banerjee was associated with.

**Ans.** The Indian Association of Calcutta was founded in 1876 by Surendranath Banerjee. This was the first organised political party to express people's disillusionment with British administration.

**26.** When and by whom was the Indian National Congress founded?

Or

When was the Indian National Congress established? Who presided over its first session?

(2014)

**Ans.** The Indian National Congress was established in 1885 by AO Hume. WC Bonnerjee was the President of its first session. The first session of the Congress was attended by 72 delegates from all parts of India, including some eminent persons like—Dadabhai Naoroji, Pherozeshah Mehta, Badruddin Tyabji etc.

**27.** Mention any two objectives of the Congress as enumerated by WC Bonnerjee.

(2011)

**Ans.** The objectives of Indian National Congress, which were declared by the WC Bonnerjee in December, 1885, were as follows:

- To promote friendly relations between nationalist political workers from various parts of the country.
- To develop and consolidate the feelings of national unity, irrespective of caste, religion or province.

**28.** Mention any two objectives for the formation of the Indian National Congress in 1885.

**Ans.** The main objectives of the congress as enumerated by WC Bonnerjee were as follows:

- Promotion of close relations between nationalistic workers from different parts of the country.
- Development and consolidation of a feeling of national unity, irrespective of caste, religions or province.

**29.** Name the Presidents who Presided over the first two sessions of the Indian National Congress. (2018)

**Ans.** WC Bonnerjee presided over the first session of the Indian National Congress at Mumbai in 1885. Dadabhai Naoroji presided over the second session of the Indian National Congress at Kolkata in 1886.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

**1.** In the context of the rise of nationalism, explain the following.

- The Vernacular Press Act, 1878. (3)
- The Indian Arms Act, 1878. (3)
- The Economic Exploitation of India. (4)

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 22.

(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 22.

(iii) The economic exploitation of India was as follows:

- Agricultural India was made an economic colony to serve the interests of industrial England.
- India was made to accept readymade British goods either duty free or at nominal duty rates, while Indian products were subjected to high import duties in England.
- The British capital invested in Indian markets especially in railway, shipping, oil exploration, tea and coffee plantations etc was used to get huge profits and were sent to England.
- The export of raw materials and foodgrains deprived the country of her agricultural surplus and raised the prices of raw materials.

**2.** With reference to nationalism, explain each of the following.

- Impact of socio-religious reform movement in nationalism. (3)
- Role of the Press. (3)
- How did the British react when the Indian National Congress was founded? Why did their attitude change later? (4)

**Ans.** (i) Sati system, polygamy, female infanticide, child marriage and untouchability were some of the major evils in Indian society. Some leaders raised such issues and worked hard to bring reforms. This socio-religious reform movement influenced the growth of nationalism in following ways:

- (a) It showed the ways of reform to Indian masses.
- (b) People started to believe in Indian leadership.
- (c) It infused the sense of belongingness among Indian masses.

(ii) A large number of newspapers were started in the later half of the 18th century. Some of the prominent newspapers were The Amrit Bazar Patrika, The Bengali, The Tribune, The Pioneer, The Times of India, The Hindu and The Statesman in English. The press played an enormous role in fostering national unity and creating consciousness among the Indians.

(iii) The Indian National Congress was founded by Allan Octavian Hume. He was supported by the Indian Nationalists. The aim of the organisation was to work for the material, moral and political advancement of the people in India. This organisation wanted to provide legitimate outlets to the grievances of the educated Indians and try to satisfy their ambition. Many Britishers, including Viceroy Lord Dufferin encouraged Hume to form such an organisation. In the initial stage, the British Government was friendly with the Congress as the goal of the Congress was self-government within the British Empire. Further Lord Dufferin felt that the foundation of the Congress would act as a 'safety valve' for popular discontent. But gradually, the British government began to distrust the congress as the popularity of the Congress increased year by year.

3. After 1858, various factors led to the rise of Indian nationalism. In this context, describe the impact of the following.

- (i) Other social reformers [3]
- (ii) Ilbert Bill Controversy [3]
- (iii) Literature [4]

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 23.**

(ii) **Ilbert Bill Controversy** The Ilbert Bill was a measure to put Indian judges on the same footing as Europeans in dealing with all cases in the Bengal Presidency. It suggested the trials of Europeans by Indian judges for criminal offences. This provoked a strong criticism among the Britishers.

A systematic campaign to criticise Indian character and culture was launched through press and public meetings. The purpose of the bill was to remove judicial inequalities in the powers of the Indian and the British Magistrates. It was hailed as a liberal and reasonable measures taken by Lord Ripon. Ultimately the government had to bow before the hostile propaganda made by the Britishers and amended the bill. After amendment the very purpose of the bill was defeated.

(iii) **Literature** Literature became an important instrument for promoting social reforms, awareness of social problems and patriotism and nationalism. During this period, prose writing became important and new forms of literary writings such as novel, short story, drama and essay began to develop. Writers like Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay, Rabindranath Tagore, Bharatendu Harishchandra etc, played an important role in promoting consciousness among people. Bankim Chandra's famous novel 'Anandamath' (1882) was considered as the 'Bible of modern patriotism'. 'Vande Mataram' written by Bankim Chandra and many patriotic songs written by Rabindranath Tagore, Dwijendralal Roy, Muhammad Iqbal inspired Indians and prepared them for the national struggle.

4. With reference to the rise of National Consciousness in India, explain the following.

[2017]

- (i) The Influence of Western education. [3]
- (ii) Any three contributions of Raja Rammohan Roy. [3]
- (iii) Development of the means of communication and transportation. [4]

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 22.**

(ii) Raja Rammohan Roy was the greatest social and religious reformer of the 19th century. His contributions are as follows:

- (a) With the help of Lord William Bentinck, Raja Rammohan Roy abolished the custom of Sati in 1829.
- (b) He advocated the cause of women education. He wanted women to be given the right to inherit property.
- (c) He established Brahmo Sabha, which later became Brahmo Samaj and it began a struggle against the caste discrimination, prevailing in the society including the evil of untouchability.

(iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 22.**

- 5.** In the latter part of the 19th century nationalism in India found an organisation of its own the Indian National Congress. In this context, explain the following.
- The Indian Association of Calcutta. [3]
  - East India Association. [3]
  - The reasons behind the gradual changes in the objectives of the Congress. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 24.

(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 23 and 24.

- (iii) The Congress was founded as an organisation of educated persons such as teachers, professors, lawyers, medical men and businessmen. First it was a non-political association which tried to get some concession from the British ruler. But gradually the Congress attracted wide membership. Then the aim of the Congress was to achieve self-government within the British Empire.

The Britishers thought that the Congress would act as a safety valve for popular discontent. But with the arrival of new leadership within the Congress changed the demands of the Congress. The Early Nationalist believed in petition, appeals and memorandum because they had faith in the goodness of the British. But the leaders of the Assertive nationalists started to demand total independence for India.

- 6.** With reference to the growth of National Consciousness in India. Explain each of the following. [2015]
- The immediate objectives of the Indian National Congress. [2012] [3]
  - Two contributions of Dadabhai Naoroji. [3]
  - Why did the relationship between the British and the Congress become bitter? [4]

**Ans.** (i) Objectives of the Congress were as follows:

- To develop the friendly relations between nationalist political workers from different parts of the country.
- To promote and consolidate the feelings of national unity irrespective of caste, religion or province.
- To formulate popular demands and present them before the government.
- To train and organise the public opinion in the country.

- (ii) Sir Syed Ahmad Khan founded Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental College at Aligarh in 1817 to spread scientific and liberal education in English language among Muslim community. It was later developed into Aligarh Muslim University. In order to counter the growing influence of the Congress. The British encouraged the formation of Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental Defence Association in the year 1893.

The aim of the association was to keep the muslims away from the Congress to promote loyalty towards the rulers and to prevent muslims from participating any national movement. He is identified by the historians as one of the earliest advocates of the 'Two Nation Theory'. His philosophy guided the creation of All India Muslim League in 1906.

- (iii) In the initial stage the relationship between the British and the Congress was friendly as the aim of the Congress was to achieve self-government within in the British Empire. But gradually the British Government started to distrust the Congress for its growing popularity and changing demands. The Congress started to hold its sessions annually in different cities to rouse public opinion in favour of them. Their increasing popularity worried the British Government and the relationship between the Congress and the British became bitter.

### C Picture Based Questions

[10 Marks each]

- 1.** Study the picture and answer the questions that follow.



- Identify the personality in the given picture.
- Name the institution founded by him and write about it.
- What was his contribution in the field of social reforms?

- Ans.** (i) The above picture is of Raja Rammohan Roy, a great social reformer of the 19th century. He is known as 'Father of Indian Renaissance'. He wanted to remove the religious and social evils which were prevalent in India at that time.
- (ii) In 1828, he founded the Brahmo Sabha, which was later renamed Brahmo Samaj. It condemned idol worship and advocated Monotheism or the worship of one Supreme God.

(iii) **Refer to structured question 4 (ii) page no. 29.**

2. Study the picture and answer the questions that follow.



- (i) Identify the personality in the given picture.  
(ii) His new law for Civil Service Examination.

- (iii) Write about his policies which heightened the resentment against the British rule.

- Ans.** (i) The above picture belongs to Viceroy Lord Lytton (1876-80). During his tenure the suppressive policies of the British encouraged the growth of nationalist movement in India.

(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 22.**

- (iii) Lord Lytton took several important steps to repress British India which are as follows:

- He abolished import duties which crippled the local textile industry. It created a wave of anger throughout India.
- He organised a Grand Delhi Durbar in 1877 to proclaim Queen Victoria as the Empress of India. Lakhs of rupees were spent on the event but nothing was done for the people of South India who were suffering from the effects of a severe famine.
- In order to suppress public opinion, Lytton passed the Vernacular Press Act in 1878.

# CHAPTER TEST

## Short Questions

[2 Marks each]

1. Give any two examples to indicate that the British followed the policy of economic exploitation in India.
2. What was Kuka Movement?
3. In what way did the land revenue charge by the British affect the Indian peasants?
4. When and by whom the Indian Association of Calcutta was organised?
5. Mention two important ways in which the press aroused nationalism.
6. Mention any two demands of the Congress at the beginning.
7. Define the term industrial stagnation during the British period.
8. Name the social evils that were condemned by Raja Rammohan Roy.

## Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

1. The second half of the 19th century witnessed the rise of the national movement. In this context, explain the following.  
(i) Reform movements  
(ii) The British policy of economic exploitation  
(iii) English language and Western education
2. Explain the role of the following in the growth of nationalism in India.  
(i) Divide and rule policy of the British rulers  
(ii) Rise of middle class  
(iii) Modern means of communication and transport
3. Many factors were responsible for the growth of nationalism in India. In this context explain the followings.  
(i) Repressive colonial policies  
(ii) Contribution of Raja Rammohan Roy  
(iii) Contribution of Jyotiba Phule
4. The establishment of the Indian National Congress led to the development of the national movement in India. In this context, explain the following.  
(i) When was the Indian National Congress established? Who presided over its first session?  
(ii) What are the main aims of the Congress?  
(iii) How the standpoint of the British about the National Congress was changed?
5. Explain these factors that promoted the growth of nationalism.  
(i) Industrial stagnation  
(ii) Influence of Western education  
(iii) British apathy to famines

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

1. Mention any two economic factors responsible for the growth of nationalism in India.
2. Name the Presidents who Presided over the first two sessions of the Indian National Congress.

## 2017

3. Mention any two Repressive Colonial Policies of Lord Lytton.
4. Name the two main associations that were the precursors of the Indian National Congress.
5. With reference to the rise of 'National Consciousness' in India, explain the following.
  - (i) The Influence of Western Education.
  - (ii) Any three contributions of Raja Rammohan Roy.
  - (iii) The development of Modern means of Transport and Communication.

## 2016

6. Name the Presidents who presided over the first two sessions of the Indian National Congress.

## 2015

7. Mention any two contribution of Jyotiba Phule in preparing the ground for the national movement.
8. With reference to the growth of national consciousness in India, explain each of the following.
  - (i) The immediate objectives of the Indian National Congress.
  - (ii) Two contributions of Dadabhai Naoroji
  - (iii) Why did the relationship between the British and the Congress become bitter?

## 2014

9. What was the role of the press in promoting nationalistic sentiments amongst the Indians?

## 2013

10. What was the influence of Western education on the minds of the educated Indians in the 19th century?

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

# First Phase of the Indian National Movement (1885-1907)

## The Early Nationalists (or the Moderates)

In the year from 1885 to 1905, the Congress was led by a group of leaders, who were called early nationalists<sup>1</sup> or moderates. The moderates were drawn from the educated middle class consisting of professionals like lawyers, barristers, teachers and officials.

The moderates or the early nationalists were included from all parts of the country. It included Womesh Chandra Bonnerjee, Rashbihari Ghosh, Surendranath Banerjee from Bengal, Pandit Madan Mohan Malviya from Uttar Pradesh and some other moderates were from Maharashtra and Gujarat like Dadabhai Naoroji, Gopal Krishna Gokhale, Justice Ranade, Pherozeshah Mehta, etc.

### Belief of the Early Nationalists

The early nationalist leaders believed in moderate politics and in loyalty to the British crown. They asked for any constitutional and other reforms within the framework of the British rule as they had faith in the British sense of justice and fair play. Their demands were moderate in nature. They thought that Englishmen are willing to put India on the path of democracy and self-governance. They relied on constitutional and peaceful methods to achieve their aims. They believed in patience and reconciliation rather than in violence and protest.

### Objectives/Demands of the Early Nationalists

The main objective/demand of the Early Nationalists was to achieve self-government within the British Empire. In order to achieve this, they made several demands for reforms.

<sup>1</sup> Nationalist A person who wants his country to become independent.

## Constitutional Reforms

The early nationalists demanded for the following constitutional reforms:

- The Early Nationalists demanded the expansion and reformation of the Legislative Council and Legislative Assemblies both at the Centre and in the Provinces.
- The moderates wanted a larger share in the Government of their country. They believed that eventually India should go more towards democratic self-government.
- The Early Nationalists demanded for complete separation between the executive and judicial branches of administration.

## Administrative Reforms

The Congress leaders urged for some important administrative reforms which were:

- They demanded that more educated Indians should be appointed to the higher posts which were completely occupied by the British officials.
- They said that there should be simultaneous examinations in England and India for recruitment to the Civil Service.
- They demanded **repeal<sup>2</sup>** of the Arms Act and Licence Act.
- They wanted to spread primary education among the maximum population of India.

## Economic Reforms

The Early Nationalists blamed the colonial powers for all economic ills of India. They demanded the following:

- Reduction in land-revenue and protection of the rights of peasants against the unjust demands of the zamindars.
- Eradication of poverty by increasing industrial production and by giving protection and encouragement to Indian industries. The Indian leaders protested against the exemption of duty for British goods.
- Abolition of salt tax and the duty on sugar which was a burden on the poor and lower middle classes.
- Development of banking, irrigation, medical and health facilities for Indians. Peasants should get cheap credit through agricultural banks.

- The industrial growth through trade protection. It means that a heavy tax should be imposed on imported goods and the government should give out loans for the development of iron, coal, paper and sugar industries in India.

## Defence of Civil Rights and Liberties

The Early Nationalists demanded the following Civil Rights and liberties:

- Right to Freedom of Speech and Expression.
- Right to assemble and to form association and to organise meeting to educate the people.
- Repeal of the Preventive Detention Acts and the **restoration<sup>3</sup>** of Civil Liberties.
- Right to circulate leaflets, pamphlets and the repeal of the laws imposing censor on the press i.e. the Vernacular Press Act.

## Methods of the Early Nationalists

The Early Nationalists relied on constitutional and peaceful methods in order to achieve their aim. They believed that if the demands of Indians were just, the British would grant them their demands. Their methods were:

- As the Congress was in its early phase, they had to educate people, arouse political consciousness and create public opinions which could change the destiny of the Indians. For this, they arranged meetings and discussions. They also organised annual sessions. In these sessions, delegates from all over India participated. After prolonged discussions, resolutions were adopted and these resolutions were forwarded to the government, so that the government could take proper actions.
- They made use of three P's i.e., Petitions, Prayers and Protests. They sent petitions, requests and letters of protest to the British Government to look into the problems of the Indians.
- The Early Nationalists adopted the method of sending **deputation<sup>4</sup>** for the fulfilment of its programme and to divert the attention of the British Government towards Indians. Moreover, nationalist like Dadabhai Naoroji raised many issues in the British Parliament.

### CHECK POINT 01

- 1 Write the name of two moderate leaders.
- 2 What are the two administrative reforms of Early Nationalists?
- 3 Write any one demand of the Early Nationalists which was associated with civil rights and liberties.

<sup>2</sup> Repeal To stop or abolish something by a government or a person with authority.

<sup>3</sup> Restoration To bring back a situation that existed before.

<sup>4</sup> Deputation A small group of people who are asked to act or speak for others.

## Some Prominent Early Nationalist Leaders

The contribution of few early Nationalist leaders are as follows:

### Dadabhai Naoroji and his Achievements

He is popularly known as the **Grand Old Man of India**. He was a Parsi intellectual, educator and a prominent Early Nationalist. He was born on 4th September, 1825 in a Parsi family of Bombay.

Dadabhai was elected to the British House of Common in 1892 as Liberal Party candidate. In 1906, Dadabhai was elected as the President of Indian National Congress. The resolutions of Swaraj, Swadeshi, Boycott and National Education were passed in the annual session of the Congress in 1906.

#### Contributions of Dadabhai

He started the East India Association in 1866 in order to win the sympathies of the British for Indians in England and in India. The main aim of this association was to develop closer relations between the Indians and the British on a social level. Later, he opened the branches of this association in Calcutta, Bombay and Madras.

Through his association, Dadabhai opposed Vernacular Press Act, criticised atrocities committed by zamindars on the poor peasants and took an active part in the formation of the Indian National Congress in 1885.

Dadabhai's greatest contribution was the economic theory given by him. In his book, **Poverty and Un-British Rule in India**, he exposed the economic exploitation of India by the British. It explained the fact that India could not progress because the British drained off its wealth. This was known as the famous 'Drain of Wealth' theory.

### Surendranath Banerjee and his Achievements

He is popularly known as 'Rashtraguru' or the **Father of the Nationalist Movement in India**. He was born in 1848 in Bengal in a Brahmin family. He was among the first few Indians to get through Civil Service Examination. He was appointed as the District Magistrate of Sylhet district. He was elected as the President of the Congress twice. He was elected to the reformed Legislative Council of Bengal in 1921 and held office as

minister for local self-government from 1921 to 1924. He died in Bengal in 1925.

### Contributions of Surendranath Banerjee

Encouraged by the response he received in different parts of the country, Surendranath established an All India National Conference in 1883. This was the first political organisation of an all-India character. He advocated constitutional means for attaining his political goals. He advocated for the establishment of self-government in India. However, the partition of Bengal made him a **vehement<sup>5</sup>** critic of the British Government. He advocated the idea of boycotting foreign goods and using Swadeshi as methods of anti-colonial protest.

### Gopal Krishna Gokhale

He was one of the most honoured and respected leaders of the Early Nationalists. He was born at Kolhapur in Maharashtra in 1866. Gokhale started his career as a Professor of History and Economics at Fergusson College and rose to the post of principal.

In his autobiography, Gandhiji called Gokhale his mentor and guide. That is why, he is best known as **the Political Guru of Gandhi**. Gokhale became a member of the Congress in 1889. He became General-Secretary of the Congress in 1897 and was elected President of the Congress in 1905.

### Contributions of Gopal Krishna Gokhale

In 1905, Gokhale founded the 'Servants of India Society'. The aim of the society was to train national missionaries dedicated to the service of India. Some important members were Shrinivas Shastri, Pandit Hridaynath Kunzru, etc. He edited the quarterly journal, 'Sudharak'. The society organised many campaigns to promote education, especially women education, sanitation, healthcare and fought against the social evils like untouchability, discrimination, alcoholism, poverty, oppression of women, etc.

### Main Achievements of Gokhale

At the time of partition, Gokhale condemned the British Government's action and gave full support to the Boycott movement. In 1906, he was sent to England as the Congress representative to make Britishers aware about the deep concern of Indians over the partition of Bengal. Gokhale was an idealist and at the same time he was a practical thinker. He favoured the use of constitutional means.

<sup>5</sup> Vehement Showing very strong feelings, especially anger.

He opposed the policies of British regime whenever he found it faulty. Gokhale criticised the British Government for:

- adopting a policy of racial discrimination for the appointment at higher administrative posts.
- imposing an exploitative economic policy.

He requested the British Government to reduce the land revenue and repeal the production tax on cotton. These both taxes greatly affected the farming community. Gokhale died on 15th February, 1915.

1866	Gopal Krishna Gokhale was born
1876	Indian Association of Calcutta was founded by SN Banerjee
1879	Newspaper 'The Bengalee' was founded
1885-1905	The Indian National Congress was led by the Early Nationalists
1886	Public Service Commission established
1889	Gopal Krishna Gokhale became a member of the Congress
1892	The Indian Council Act
1895	Introduction of the Welby Commission on Indian Expenditure
1897	Gokhale became the General-Secretary of the Congress
1905	Gokhale became the President of the Congress and founded the 'Servants of India Society'
1906	Dadabhai Naoroji became the President of India
1915	Gopal Krishna Gokhale died
1921-1924	Surendranath Banerjee held office as Minister for local self-government.
1925	Surendranath Banerjee died

## TIME LINE

### Year

### Important Events

1825	Dadabhai Naoroji was born
1848	Surendranath Banerjee was born

## Summary

- The Early Nationalists class comprised of mainly the educated middle class, they trusted the British for their sense of justice, honesty and integrity.
- They demanded self-government within the British Empire and asked for constitutional and other reforms within the framework of the British rule.
- In order to achieve self-government, the Early Nationalists demanded some constitutional reforms, administrative reforms and economic reforms.
- They also demanded some civil rights and liberties, like Right to Freedom of Speech and Expression, right to assemble and form association, etc.
- To fulfil their aim, the Early Nationalists relied on constitutional and peaceful methods.
- The Early Nationalists tried to convince the British through petitions, prayers and protests.
- Dadabhai Naoroji established the East India Association in 1866.
- The famous 'Drain of Wealth' theory was given by Dadabhai Naoroji.
- In 1906, Dadabhai was elected as the President of Indian National Congress.
- Rashtraguru Surendranath Banerjee with the help of other leaders founded the Indian Association of Calcutta in 1876.

- The association strongly protested against the government decision of reducing the age limit in Civil Service Examination. The other demands were repeal of the Arms Act and Vernacular Act, etc.
- In 1883, Surendranath first established a political organisation 'All India National Conference'.
- He advocated the idea of boycotting foreign goods and swadeshi as methods of anti-colonial protest.
- Gopal Krishna Gokhale is best known as 'The Political Guru of Gandhi.' He believed in harmonious co-operation of India with England.
- In 1905, Gokhale founded the 'Servants of India Society'. The society promoted women education, sanitation health care and fought against the social evils like untouchability, discrimination, alcoholism, poverty, oppression of women, etc.
- Gokhale criticised the policy of racial discrimination, exploitative economic policy of the British.
- Gokhale strongly opposed the Partition of Bengal and government's control over universities.
- Gokhale forced the British Government to recognise the capabilities of the educated new generations and include them in governing process.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a Short Questions [2 Marks each]

1. Mention the period of India's freedom struggle which is known as Moderate phase.

**Ans.** The period between 1885 to 1905 is known as Moderate phase in India's freedom struggle. This period was dominated by the Early Nationalists or Moderates.

2. Why were the Early Congressmen called Moderates? *(2013)*

**Ans.** The Early Congressmen were called Moderates because:

- Early Moderates believed in loyalty to the British Crown.
- They had faith in the British sense of justice and fair play. Their attitude was not anti-British.
- They believed that the British rule had many benefits, for example it aided in cleaning social ills like sati, untouchability and child marriage.

3. Name some prominent leaders of the Early Nationalists.

**Ans.** Some prominent leaders of the Early Nationalists were, Dadabhai Naoroji, Surendranath Banerjee, WC Bonnerjee, Pherozeshah Mehta, Madan Mohan Malaviya, Gopal Krishna Gokhale, MG Ranade etc.

4. What did the Early Nationalists class think about the British?

**Ans.** The Early Nationalists class mainly comprised of the educated middle class. They trusted the British for their sense of justice, honesty and integrity. They believed that if the British would know the grievances of Indians, they would do what was right for Indians.

5. How did the Early Nationalists try to convince the British?

**Ans.** To convince the British, the Early Nationalists used petitions, prayers and protests. They thought that the British Government could be persuaded by arguments and they would respond to Indian public opinion.

6. What kind of self-government did the Early Nationalists demand?

**Ans.** The Early Nationalists demanded self-government within the British Empire and hoped that the British Government would guide them. So, they asked for constitutional and other reforms within the framework of the British rule along with the self-government.

7. Write two methods of the Early Nationalists to influence the people in Britain.

**Ans.** The two methods adopted by the Early Nationalists to influence the people in Britain were:

- (i) They arranged lectures in different parts of England to create public opinion in favour of Indians.
- (ii) A British committee of the Indian National Congress was set-up in 1889.

8. Explain the method of struggle of the Early Nationalists.

**Ans.** The method of struggle of the Early Nationalists was known as constitutional agitation. It included discussions, processions, speeches, peaceful propaganda through press, memorandum, sending delegations, holding annual sessions and passing resolutions.

9. Mention any two constitutional demands made by the Early Nationalists.

**Ans.** Two constitutional demands made by the Early Nationalists were:

- (i) They demanded the expansion and reformation of the Legislative Councils and an increase in membership and powers of these councils.
- (ii) They demanded for complete separation between the executive and judicial branches of administration.

10. Mention any two economic issue raised by the Early Nationalists.

**Ans.** The Early Nationalists blamed the colonial powers for all economic ills of India. They demanded:

- (i) reduction in land-revenue and protection of the rights of peasants against the unjust demands of the zamindars.
- (ii) the abolition of salt tax and the duty on sugar.

11. Mention two administrative reforms wanted by the Early Nationalists.

**Ans.** The two administrative reforms demanded by the Early Nationalists were:

- (i) More educated Indians should be appointed to the higher posts.
- (ii) There should be simultaneous examinations in England and in India for recruitment to the Civil Service.

**12.** Name the civil rights and liberties demanded by the Early Nationalists.

**Ans.** The Early Nationalists demanded the following civil rights and liberties:

- (i) Right of freedom of speech and expression.
- (ii) Right to assemble and to form association and to organise meeting to educate the people.
- (iii) Repeal of the Preventive Detention Acts.
- (iv) Right to circulate leaflets, pamphlets and the repeal to the Vernacular Press Act.

**13.** Mention any two achievements of the Moderates.

*[2012, 11]*

**Ans.** The two achievements of the Moderates were as follows:

- (i) They trained people in politics by popularising the ideas of democracy, civil liberties, secularism and nationalism.
- (ii) They created national awakening among the people that they belonged to one common country. This made Indians conscious of the bonds of common political, economic and cultural interests that unite them.

**14.** Mention any two methods used by the Moderates.

**Ans.** Two important methods adopted by the moderates were:

- (i) Passing resolution                   (ii) Sending petitions

**15.** Mention two reasons for the faith of the Moderates in the British sense of justice. *[2012]*

**Ans.** Two reasons for the faith of the Moderates in the British sense of justice were as follows:

- (i) The Moderates thought that the Englishmen thought about progressing India and putting it on the path of democracy and self-governance.
- (ii) The Moderates thought that English rule had conferred benefits upon them, especially the English language and the modern means of communication and transport.

**16.** Name the weekly journal which was published in England to create public opinion in favour of Indians at the period of the Early Nationalism.

**Ans.** A weekly journal called 'India' was published in England for circulation among the Britishers. It wanted to create public opinion in favour of Indians at the period of the Early Nationalism.

**17.** Why the Indian Council Act, 1892 failed to satisfy the Indians?

**Ans.** The Indian Council Act, 1892 failed to satisfy the Indians because the majority of the members of the council were the Britishers and the real power was not given to the Indians.

**18.** Mention the regional association that each nationalist was associated with:

*[2010]*

- (i) Surendranath Banerjee
- (ii) Dadabhai Naoroji

**Ans.** (i) **Surendranath Banerjee** The Indian Association of Calcutta (1876).

- (ii) **Dadabhai Naoroji** The East India Association (1866).

**19.** Who was called 'The Grand Old Man of India'?

**Ans.** Dadabhai Naoroji was called 'The Grand Old Man of India'.

**20.** What did Dadabhai Naoroji do through his East India Association?

**Ans.** Through his association Dadabhai Naoroji opposed Vernacular Press Act, condemned atrocities committed by zamindars on the poor peasants and took an active part in the formation of the Indian National Congress in 1885.

**21.** Who exposed the economic exploitation of India through his book 'Poverty and Un-British Rule in India'? *[2013]*

**Ans.** Dadabhai Naoroji exposed the economic exploitation of India through his book 'Poverty and Un-British Rule in India.'

**22.** Name the Moderate leader who explained the economic 'Drain Theory' during the colonial times.

**Ans.** Dadabhai Naoroji explained the economic 'Drain Theory' during the colonial times.

**23.** Mention any two contributions of Dadabhai Naoroji to the Indian Movement. *[2006]*

**Ans.** Two contributions of Dadabhai Naoroji were as follows:

- (i) He established the East India Association in 1866 in order to win the sympathies of the British for Indians.

- (ii) He presented the economic theory, 'Drain Theory' in his book 'Poverty and Un-British Rule' in India.

**24.** Which session of the Indian National Congress was presided over by Dadabhai Naoroji? Which important resolutions were passed in this session?

**Ans.** Dadabhai Naoroji presided over the annual session of the Indian National Congress in 1906. The resolutions of Swaraj, Swadeshi, Boycott and National Education were passed in this session.

**25.** Mention two acts against which Surendranath Banerjee protested.

**Ans.** Surendranath Banerjee protested against the Arms Act and the Vernacular Press Act.

**26.** The ideas of Surendranath Banerjee was influenced by which person?

**Ans.** The liberal progressive thinking of Surendranath Banerjee was deeply influenced by his father Durga Charan Banerjee.

**27.** Why was Surendranath Banerjee dismissed from the post of District Megistrate?

**Ans.** Surendranath Banerjee was dismissed from the post of District Megistrate because he opposed the racial discrimination policy of the British.

**28.** Who said these words, “Opposition where necessary, co-operation where possible”?

**Ans.** Early Nationalist leader Surendranath Banerjee said, “Opposition where necessary, co-operation where possible”. He advocated for the establishment of self-government in India.

**29.** Who is regarded as the political Guru of Mahatma Gandhi? Give a reason for him being considered as Mahatma’s Guru.

**Ans.** Gopal Krishna Gokhale is regarded as the political Guru of Mahatma Gandhi. Gandhiji considered him as Guru because Gokhale believed that politics could be a means of service to the people of India and that political work should be done in the spirit of religion.

**30.** Name some important members of the ‘Servants of India Society’.

**Ans.** The ‘Servants of India Society’ was founded by Gopal Krishna Gokhale in 1905. Other important members of this association were Shrinivas Shastri, Pandit Hridaynath Kunzru etc.

**31.** What was the aim of ‘Servants of India Society’?

**Ans.** In 1905, Gopal Krishna Gokhale founded the ‘Servants of India Society.’ The aim of the society was to train national missionaries dedicated to the service of India. The society worked for women education, sanitation, healthcare, untouchability etc.

### b Structured Questions [10 Marks each]

**1.** The period of National Movement from 1885-1905 is known as the Moderate phase. In this context, explain the following questions.

(i) Why was this period called as the period of the Moderates? [3]

(ii) Methods of the Moderates. [3]

(iii) Main demands of the Moderates. [4]

**Ans.** (i) The Indian National Congress was founded in 1885. In the early years, the Congress was dominated by moderate leaders. The popular leaders of that time were – Dadabhai Naoroji, Gopal Krishna Gokhale, Justice Ranade and Pherozeshah Mehta etc. Between 1885-1905 the moderates adopted the path of prayer and petition i.e., pleading with the British to fulfil their demands. That is why this phase is known as the period of Moderates.

(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 35.**

(iii) The main aim of the Moderates was to achieve self-government within the British Empire. In order to achieve this aim, they made several demands for reform. These were constitutional reforms, administrative reforms, economic reforms and defence of certain civil rights and liberties.

For constitutional reform they demanded expansion and reformation of the Legislative Council and an increase in membership and powers of the councils. The Moderates demanded administrative reforms like wider employment for Indians in the higher services, simultaneous Civil Service Examinations in England and India, repeal of the Arms Act etc.

They demanded some economic reforms like abolition of salt tax and duty on sugar, protection and encouragement for Indian industry, development of banking, irrigation and health facilities etc. The Early Nationalists demanded some civil rights and liberties like right to freedom of speech and expression, right to assemble and to form association, repeal of the Preventive Detention Acts etc.

**2.** With reference to the Early Nationalists or the Moderates answer the following questions.

(i) Criticism of the Early Nationalists. [3]

(ii) Give any four achievements of the Moderates. [3]

(iii) Mention any four basic beliefs of the Early Nationalists. [4]

**Ans.** (i) The moderates or the Early Nationalists failed to draw the maximum people into the mainstream of the National Movement. Their field of influence was very limited to the urban educated Indians. Their leadership was confined by the particular professional groups like lawyers, doctors, journalists and teachers, etc.

The Early Nationalists wanted self-government within the British Empire and hoped that the British would grant them and guide them. They asked for constitutional and other reforms within the framework of the British rule. They even used the press for highlighting the grievances of Indians. But they maintained a certain standard of dignity and respect while criticising the wrong policies adopted by the British Government.

- (ii) The achievements of the Early Nationalists were important in the political history of India. These were:

- The Early Nationalists criticised the economic policy of the colonial powers. They exposed the true nature of British imperialism in India. Early Nationalists, like Dadabhai Naoroji wrote in his book, 'Poverty and Un-British Rule in India' about how the British were draining India's resources.
- The Early Nationalists like Govind Ranade and Gopal Krishna Gokhale raised their voice against social evils such as child marriage, sati system, etc. 'The Servants of India Society' established by Gokhale worked for the upliftment of the depressed classes.
- The efforts of Early Nationalists resulted in the appointment of a Public Service Commission in 1886 which pass a **resolution** (1893) in the House of Commons for simultaneous Civil Service Examination in India and London. It also resulted in introduction of the Welby Commission on Indian Expenditure (1895).
- The Britishers passed the **Indian Council Act** of 1892. It was regarded as one of the achievements of the Early Nationalists. According to this law, association of Indians in law-making bodies was accepted.

- (iii) The basic beliefs of the Early Nationalists were:

- The Early Nationalists believed that the Britishers were just and reasonable. They thought the British Government could be persuaded by arguments and they would do justice to Indians.
- They expressed loyalty to the British Crown and believed that the British presence in India was a blessing to India.
- They thought that the British rule had done much good to Indian society by cleansing the Indian society evils, like custom of sati, untouchability, child marriage etc.
- They also recognised the benefits of the English rule, especially the English language and modern means of transport and communication.

- 3.** With reference to the role of the Moderates in arousing National awakening in India, answer the following questions.

- (i) Name some Moderate leaders. Why were they called so? [3]
- (ii) Who was known as 'India's Unofficial Ambassador in England'? [3]
- (iii) What were his views on the cause of poverty in India? [4]

**Ans.** (i) Dadabhai Naoroji, WC Bonnerjee, Madan Mohan Malviya, Gopal Krishna Gokhale, Justice Ranade and Pherozeshah Mehta were some major moderate leaders. They were called moderate leaders because the nature of their demands were moderate along with their methods, which were constitutional as well.

(ii) Dadabhai Naoroji, the 'Grand Old Man of India,' was known as 'India's Unofficial Ambassador in England' and can be viewed as the architect who laid the foundation of the Indian Freedom Struggle. He sacrificed his career and his family for the country. In 1866, he founded the East India Association in London. The main aim of the association was to inform the British about the grievances of Indians. In 1892, Dadabhai was elected to the British Parliament. Here, he delivered speeches about the sufferings of Indians and also about the cause of the people of Indian origin living in South Africa.

(iii) Dadabhai Naoroji's views on why poverty occurred in India and how the wealth of the Indians was gradually drained to Britain was published in his book, 'Poverty and Un-British Rule in India.' He presented his famous 'Drain Theory'. He explained that the drain of wealth was possible through:

- salaries payable to the members of the Indian Council.
- dispatch of savings to England by British officials posted in India.
- pensions to British officers.
- maintenance of British troops in India etc.

As the year passed, Dadabhai grew more and more disillusioned with the 'fair minded' British. After spending years on collecting statistics, Dadabhai propounded the 'Drain Theory'. He concluded that the inevitable consequence of foreign domination is the drain of wealth of the subject nation to the country of the rulers.

- 4.** The moderates relied on constitutional and peaceful methods in order to achieve their aim. In this context, explain the following questions.
- The administrative reforms demanded by the Early Nationalists. [3]
  - The constitutional reforms demanded by the Moderates. [3]
  - The economic reforms demanded by the Moderates. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 35  
(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 35  
(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 35

### C Picture Based Questions

[10 Marks each]

- 1.** Answer the following questions based on the picture given below.
- Identify the personality in the picture. By which name he is popularly known? 
  - Name the organisations he founded. How did the organisation work for the nation?
  - Write about his contribution in the field of economics.

**Ans.** (i) The picture belongs to Dadabhai Naoroji. Dadabhai is popularly known as the 'Grand Old Man of India.'

(ii) Dadabhai Naoroji founded the East India Association in 1866 in order to win the sympathies of the British for Indians in England and in India. The main aim of this association was to foster closer relations between the Indians and the British on a social level. Dadabhai thought that the Britishers were basically just and reasonable. Through his association he wanted to make them conscious about the grievances of Indian people, so that they could find a remedy for their problem.

- (iii) Dadabhai's greatest contribution was the economic theory given by him. In his book, 'Poverty and Un-British Rule in India,' he exposed the economic exploitation of India by the British. It explained the fact that India could not progress because the British drained off its wealth. This was known as the famous 'Drain of Wealth' theory. Dadabhai was the person who first brought into limelight the drain of India's wealth into Britain.

- 2.** Answer the following questions, based on the picture given below.

- Identify the personality in the picture.
- Name the organisations founded by him.
- Explain his two notable contributions.



**Ans.** (i) The picture belongs to Surendranath Banerjee. He was regarded as 'Rashtrapati' or the 'Father of the National Movement in India'. He was born in 1848 in Bengal. He was among the first few Indians to get through 'Civil Service Examination'.

- (ii) In 1876, Surendranath Banerjee founded the Indian Association of Calcutta with the co-operation of Ananda Mohan Bose and other leaders. The main aim of this association was to agitate against the British in a constitutional way. In 1883, Surendranath Banerjee established an All-India National Conference. This was the first political organisation of an all-India character.
- (iii) Two notable contributions of Surendranath Banerjee were as follows:

- He protested against the repressive measures of the British rule like Vernacular Press Act, the Arms Act etc through Indian Association. His association also protested against the inhuman treatment got by the Indian workers in tea and indigo plantations owned by the British.
- Surendranath Banerjee realised the need to have an organisation of an all-India character which could solve all sorts of political problems. In 1883, he founded the Indian National Conference. It was the first all-India political organisation. It was the direct precursor of the Indian National Congress. Later, this organisation merged into Indian National Congress in 1886.

- 3.** Read the extract based on the pictures given below and answer the questions that follow. [2007]



(1) (2)

"... the Indians who actively worked for the creation of an all-India political organisation represented new social forces that were increasingly opposed to the exploitation of India for British interests. They needed an organisation that would fight for India's political and economic advancement."

—From 'Freedom Struggle'

- (i) (a) In the context of the above, identify the two individuals in Pictures 1 and 2, who were the early leaders of the organisation to be formed?
- (b) How did the person in Picture 1 explain the economic exploitation of India for British interests?
- (ii) Name the organisation which was to be formed. What were the objectives behind the formation of this political body?
- (iii) Explain the major ideological differences which emerged amongst the leaders within the first 20 years of the foundation of this organisation.

**Ans.** (i) (a) In the context of the above, Dadabhai Naoroji is in Picture 1 and Gopal Krishna Gokhale is in Picture 2.

- (b) In his book, 'Poverty and Un-British Rule in India' Dadabhai Naoroji exposed the economic exploitation of India by the British. In this book, he pointed out the various ways India was being exploited and, explained robbed of its resources by the British. Dadabhai elaborated the 'Drain Theory' and explained how it was adversely affecting India's economic development and resulting in economic impoverishment of the Indian masses.
- (ii) In 1885, Indian National Congress was established by AO Hume. The objectives of Indian National Congress were as follows:
  - Promotion of close relations between nationalistic workers from different parts of the country.
  - Development and consolidation of a feeling of national unity, irrespective of caste, religion or province.
  - Formulation of popular demands and their presentation before the government.
  - To train and organise the public opinion in the country.
- (iii) The views of Moderates were different from the views of the Radicals and this difference emerged within the first 20 years of the foundation of this organisation.
  - The Moderates expressed their faith in the British rule and thought it as a blessing for India, but the Radicals had no faith in the British.
  - The Moderates believed in the supremacy of European culture, but the Radicals highlighted the supremacy of Indian culture.
  - The Moderates thought that people of India could not rule themselves, so they demanded for self-government within the British Empire. But the Radicals thought that Indians could rule themselves. So, they demanded complete independence from the British.

- The Moderates believed in petitions, prayers and protests in a mild way, but the radicals adopted the revolutionary methods.

4. Answer the following questions based on the picture given below.



- (i) Identify the personality in the picture. To which section of the Congress did he belong?
- (ii) What was the ultimate objectives of the Congress of this section?
- (iii) State his contribution in the freedom struggle.

**Ans.** (i) The personality in the above picture belongs to Gopal Krishna Gokhale. He belongs to Moderate section of the Indian National Congress. He had deep faith in British liberalism. He is a Moderate leader believed in harmonious co-operation of India with England.

- (ii) The Moderates believed in the sense of justice, honesty and integrity of the British. They wanted self-government within the British Empire. They asked for constitutional, administrative, economic reforms and also some civil rights and liberties within the British Empire.

(iii) The contributions of Gokhale were as follows:

- Gokhale became a member of the Indian National Congress in 1889. He became General-Secretary of the Congress in 1897 and was elected President of the Congress in 1905.
- He believed in harmonious co-operation of India with England. He declared that the goal of the Congress was to attain self-government like other British colonies.
- In 1905, Gokhale founded the 'Servants of India Society' for the upliftment of poor in our society. The members of the society served the country with a strong devotion.
- At the time of Bengal Partition (1905), he strongly condemned the action of the British Government and gave full support to Boycott Movement.
- He played a significant role in the Morley-Minto Reforms introduced in 1909.

# **CHAPTER TEST**

## **Short Questions**

**[2 Marks each]**

1. Mention the period in which the Early Nationalists dominate the Indian National Congress.
2. List out any three important leaders of the Moderates.
3. Name the person who started the East India Association in 1866.
4. What method did the Moderates use to achieve their objectives?
5. Describe the attitude of the Moderates towards the British ruler.
6. What did the Moderates advocate in the field of Civil Rights?
7. What was the main aim of the East India Association?
8. Who was responsible to establish the first political organisation of an all-India character?

## **Structured Questions**

**[10 Marks each]**

1. The Early Nationalists dominated the Congress from 1885-1905. In this context, explain the following questions:
  - (i) The reasons for the Early Nationalists being called the Moderates.
  - (ii) Describe the attitude of the British towards them.
  - (iii) State the methods of working of the Early Nationalists.
2. The Early Nationalists were liberal in their views and outlook. In this context, explain the following questions:
  - (i) Mention four basic beliefs of the Early Nationalists.
  - (ii) Demands of the Early Nationalists.
  - (iii) Any two achievements of the Early Nationalists.
3. State the role played by Surendranath Banerjee in National Movement and explain the following:
  - (i) His political ambition.
  - (ii) His opposition to the repressive methods adopted by the British.
  - (iii) Establishment of new organisation.

## **Picture Based Question**

**[10 Marks each]**

1. Answer the following questions based on the picture given below.



- (i) Identify the person in the given picture.
- (ii) By which name he was fondly called? What were his views on the cause of poverty in India?
- (iii) Mention his achievements in strengthening India's nationalism.

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2015

1. Who was known as the political Guru of Mahatma Gandhi?
2. Give a reason for him being considered as the Mahatma's Guru?
3. With reference to the growth of national consciousness in India, explain each of the following.
  - (i) The immediate objectives of the Indian National Congress.
  - (ii) Two contributions of Dadabhai Naoroji.
  - (iii) The impact of the Swadeshi and the Boycott Movement.

## 2014

4. The establishment of the Indian National Congress led to the development of the National Movement in India. In this context, answer the following.
  - (i) When was the Indian National Congress established? Who presided over its first session?
  - (ii) What were the four aims of the Congress?
  - (iii) Mention four basic beliefs of the Early Nationalists.

## 2013

5. Who exposed the economic exploitation of India through his book 'Poverty and Un-British Rule in India'?
6. Why are the Early Congressmen called Moderates?

## 2012

7. Mention any two reasons for Moderate's faith in the British sense of justice.

## 2011

8. Mention any two achievements of the Moderates.

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

# Second Phase of the Indian National Movement (1905-1916)

The second phase of the Indian National Movement (1905-1916) witnessed Swadeshi Movement, rise of militant nationalism (**extremism**<sup>1</sup>) and the Home Rule Movement. The most important event during the tenure of Viceroy Lord Curzon (1899-1905) was the Partition of Bengal. The Presidency of Bengal was the largest and the most populous state of British India. At that time, it included Bihar, Orissa, Chotanagpur, Assam and some other remote areas. Lord Curzon wanted to divide Bengal into two **provinces**<sup>2</sup>. The two provinces were as follows:

- (i) **Bengal** included the Western districts of Bengal proper, Bihar and Orissa. Calcutta was made its capital.
- (ii) **Eastern Bengal** and Assam consisted of the Eastern districts of Bengal proper and Assam. Dhaka was the capital of the new province of Eastern Bengal and Assam.

Western Bengal was dominated by Non-Bengali population and Eastern Bengal was dominated by Bengali Muslims. In both the provinces, Hindus Bengali became a minority. It was a severe blow to Bengali culture and literature.

## Curzon's Scheme of Partition

Partition was made public in 1903 and was announced on 20th July, 1905. Curzon's proposal for the division of Bengal received royal assent on 1st September, 1905. Then, it was implemented on 16th October, 1905.

## Causes/Reasons of the Partition of Bengal

According to the British administration, the main reason behind the Partition of Bengal was administrative necessity. They explained that the province was very large, hence it was to be divided.

<sup>1</sup> Extremism Any political theory favoring immoderate uncompromising policies.

<sup>2</sup> Provinces Areas into which country is divided with its own local government.

Behind this apparent motive of administrative convenience, there were however much deeper motives for partitioning Bengal. These were:

- At that period, Bengal had become the main centre of Indian politics and Indian nationalism. So, the British expected to regulate the rising tide of nationalism by the division of Bengal.
- Another reason of the Partition of Bengal was to destroy the political influence of the educated middle class, among whom the Bengali intelligentsia<sup>3</sup> was the most prominent.
- With this division Curzon hoped to achieve double advantage. First was to split up and thus weaken the Nationalist Movement. Second to create a Mohammedan province where Islam could be pre-dominant and its followers in ascendancy.
- The new province of Eastern Bengal and Assam were specially set-up, so that Muslims would be a majority in that area with Dacca as a parallel political centre to Calcutta.
- Hindu-Muslim unity demonstrated during the uprising of 1857 was a threat to British rule, so it had to be broken. The British played the mischievous game of counterbalancing<sup>4</sup> Hindus with Muslims to suppress Indian middle class nationalists, who were high in number in Bengal.

### Perspectives of Nationalists for Partition of Bengal

- Nationalist leaders realised that the Partition of Bengal was an attempt to divide the Bengalis. Bengalis from East and West Bengal shared a common culture, language and tradition. Their family members and friends lived in both territories. The partition means separation from family and friends. All Indians sympathised with them.
- The Indian National Congress and all national leaders opposed and condemned the partition. All sections of people, even zamindars and merchants also protested. Protest meetings and campaigns<sup>5</sup> against the partition were organised all over the Bengal.
- Eminent leaders like Surendranath Banerjee, Krishna Kumar Mitra, PC Ray, Bipin Chandra Pal, Ananda Mohan Bose and many others took part in this protest. Some Bengali newspapers like **Bengali**, **Hitabadi** and **Sanjibani** played an important role.

### CHECK POINT 01

- 1 When did the Curzon's proposal for the division of Bengal received royal assent?
- 2 When was the partition of Bengal implemented?
- 3 Name some leaders who protested against Partition of Bengal.

### Surat Split of Indian National Congress (1907)

In the year 1907, the Annual Session of the Congress was held in Surat. Assertive nationalists wanted to adopt revolutionary methods as announced by them, but the Moderates were not in favour of such methods. The Indian National Congress split into two groups at the Surat Session.

The extremists were led by Bal Gangadhar Tilak, Lala Lajpat Rai and Bipin Chandra Pal and the Moderates were led by Gopal Krishna Gokhale. The Extremist Nationalists proposed the name of Lala Lajpat Rai as the President of the Surat Session, whereas the Early Nationalists proposed the name of Rash Bihari Ghosh. Finally, the Extremist Nationalists were expelled from the Congress. Next 9 years, they were remained out of the Congress and finally at the Lucknow Session in 1916, the Congress regained its unity.

### Programmes and Methods of Struggle of the Radicals

The Radicals aimed to broaden the base of the National Movement. National freedom was the sole programme and objective of the Radicals. They mobilised the support of the masses, particularly the youth in the Indian National Movement. For the first time, people from all sections participated in anti-British agitation providing a social base to the struggle for freedom.

The programme and methods of struggle of the Radicals included the following:

#### Promotion of Swadeshi and Boycott of Foreign Goods

The Radicals asked the people to use only Swadeshi goods, i.e. goods produced in India. Use of Swadeshi goods was promoted to encourage Indian industries and provide the people with more opportunities for work and employment.

<sup>3</sup> Intelligentsia The people in a country or society who are well educated and are interested in culture, politics, literature, etc.

<sup>4</sup> Counterbalance To have an equal but opposite effect to something.

<sup>5</sup> Campaign A series of planned activities that are intended to achieve a particular, social, commercial or political aim.

As a result of the Swadeshi Movement, a number of Indian textile, mills, national banks, hosiery units, soap factories, tanneries and Swadeshi stores were established throughout the country.

The Radicals appealed for the total boycott of foreign goods. They also suggested to boycott government services, honours, titles and social boycott of persons trading in foreign goods. They realised that economic boycott might prove a powerful weapon against economic exploitation by the Britishers.

### National Education

The Radicals called upon students to boycott schools and colleges run by the government. Special schools and colleges were established, Bengal National College was established in Kolkata and large number of national schools were established in East Bengal. In Chennai, a National College was established. In Punjab, DAV (Dayanand Anglo Vedic) Movement started. Many famous revolutionaries like Bhagat Singh, Rajguru and Batukeshwar Dutt were the products of such institutions.

### Co-operative Organisations

The Radicals encouraged co-operative organisations. Voluntary associations were set-up for rural sanitation, preventive police duties, regulation of fairs and pilgrim gatherings for providing relief during famines and other natural calamities.

### Involvement of the Masses

The Radicals involved the masses by organising festivals, boycott, Swadeshi and national education. They spoke and wrote in the vernacular language and were easily able to reach the masses. They suggested that self-dependence and sacrifices of the patriots could help the welfare of the country. They announced that Indians should be ready to face sorrows and difficulties for the achievement of 'Swaraj'.

### Contributions of Prominent Radical Leaders

#### Bal Gangadhar Tilak

He was born in 1856 in a Brahmin family of Maharashtra. He started his career as lawyer, but soon dedicated himself to serving the country. In 1880, he started the Poona New English School with a view to impact education to Indians by charging small fees. He was one of the founder members of the Deccan Education Society and Fergusson College.

Tilak started two newspapers i.e., the **Mahratta** (English) and **Kesari** (Marathi) in order to spread the idea of nationalism.

He revived **Ganapati** and **Shivaji** festivals to promote national feeling among Indians. He organised many *akhoras* and *lathi* clubs where physical training was given. His ideas infused new spirit of Assertive Nationalism in the Congress.

#### Bipin Chandra Pal

He was born in 1858 in Sylhet district of the then Assam. He started his career as a teacher and a headmaster of a high school at Cuttack. In 1876, he joined the Brahmo Samaj. In 1898, he was sent to Oxford by Brahmo Samaj to study theology. In his later life, he left Brahmo Samaj and became a total convert to orthodox Hinduism.

He is popularly known as the 'Father of revolutionary thought in India.' In the beginning, he supported the early Nationalists (Moderates) but during the anti-partition movement, he took active role in popularising Extremist ideals. He travelled to different parts of India spreading the message of Swaraj or freedom. He condemned the 'Arms Act'. Like other Extremist leaders, he stressed on self-reliance and national pride.

He started the newspaper 'New India' in 1901. His writings were regularly published in various newspapers like, 'The Englishman', 'The Statesman' and 'Modern Review'. Through his oratory and journalistic skills, he spread the message of Boycott, Swadeshi and National Education very effectively. He advocated widow remarriage. He opposed the existing caste system and provide all his support to the Age of Consent Bill in 1891.

#### Lala Lajpat Rai (1865-1928)

Lala Lajpat Rai was born in Jagraon in Ludhiana district of Punjab in 1865. He started his career as a lawyer in Hissar, but later shifted to Lahore. Lajpat Rai was greatly influenced by his father Radha Krishnan who was a follower of Dayanand Saraswati, founder of Arya Samaj. He was popularly known as Sher-e-Punjab (The Lion of Punjab).

He laid the foundation of DAV College at Lahore and various other educational institutions. In 1914, he established an education trust and founded Radha Krishna High School at Jagraon.

He started various newspapers, like 'Punjabi', 'Vande Mataram' (Urdu Daily) and 'People' (English weekly).

He wrote various books like, 'Young India', 'England's Debt to India', 'Political Future of India and Unhappy India'. He also wrote biographies of Mazzini, Garibaldi,

Swami Dayanand Saraswati, Shivaji, etc. During his exile in Mandalay, he wrote his autobiography, 'The Story of My Deportation'.

He founded the 'Servants of the People Society' in 1921, which worked for the freedom movement as well as social reforms in the country.

1907	The Prevention of Seditious Meetings Act
1907	Surat Split
1908	The Explosive Substances Act, the Newspapers Act
1885	Indian National Congress was founded.
1885-1905	The Period of Early Nationalists
1904	Indian Universities Act, Official Secrets Act passed by Lord Curzon.
1916	Tilak started Home Rule League in Maharashtra.
1887	Bipin Chandra joined the Congress.
1907	Bipin Chandra was sent to jail for not giving testimony in Aurobindo Ghosh's case
1888	Lajpat Rai joined the Congress
1907	Lajpat Rai and Sardar Ajit Singh led an agitation against the 'Colonisation Bill'.
1914	Lajpat Rai went to England as member of the Congress delegation.
1919	Jallianwala Bagh Massacre
1920	Lajpat Rai became the first President of the Indian National Congress.
1926	Lajpat Rai went to Geneva to attend the 8th International Labour Conference.
1928	Lajpat Rai was severely wounded while leading a peaceful procession against the Simon Commission.
1928	Lajpat Rai died.

## TIME LINE

### Years

### Important Events

1899-1905	Tenure of Lord Curzon	1914	
1903	Scheme of Partition was made public.	1919	
20th July, 1905	The Partition of Bengal was announced.	1920	
1st Sep, 1905	The proposal for the division of Bengal received Royal assent	1926	
10th Oct, 1905	Carlyle Circular was implemented.	1928	
16th Oct, 1905	The Partition of Bengal was implemented.	1928	
1906	Calcutta Session of Indian National Congress, National Council of Education were established.	1928	

## SUMMARY

- The Viceroy Lord Curzon (1899-1905) announced on 20th July, 1905 the Partition of Bengal, which was implemented on 16th October, 1905.
- The main reason behind the Partition of Bengal was administrative necessity. Beside this, there were several other reasons for the partition.
- After the implementation of the scheme of partition, the anti-partition movement started and the day of partition (16th October, 1905) was observed as 'Day of Mourning'.
- In 1907, at the annual session of Indian National Congress at Surat, the Congress split into two groups i.e. Moderates and Extremists. This split was based on ideological differences.
- After 1907, the Extremist leaders criticised the methods of Moderates and adopted aggressive mode to demand 'Swaraj'.
- Radicals promoted Swadeshi and boycotted foreign goods. They emphasised on involvement of the masses in freedom struggle.
- Tilak gave the slogan "Swaraj is my birth right and I shall have it".
- Bipin Chandra Pal emphasised on total socio-economic transformation. Due to his thought, he is known as the 'Father of revolutionary thought in India'.
- Lala Lajpat Rai opposed capitalism and emphasised on social transformation. He opposed Simon Commission in 1928 and died during the protest in a *lathi* charge incidence.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a Short Questions

[2 Marks each]

1. When did the suggestion of Boycott first come out?

**Ans.** The suggestion of Boycott first came from Krishna Kumar Mitra's Sahjivani on 3rd July, 1905. It was later accepted by all prominent 'public figures' that time at the Town Hall Meeting on 7th August, 1905.

2. When was Bengal partitioned? Name the viceroy responsible for it. *(2011)*

**Ans.** The plan about the Partition of Bengal was first made known on '20th July, 1905. Partition of Bengal' was effected on 16th October, 1905. Viceroy Lord Curzon was responsible for it.

3. When was the decision regarding the Partition of Bengal officially announced?

**Ans.** The decision regarding the Partition of Bengal was announced on 20th July, 1905 by Viceroy Lord Curzon.

4. What were Curzon's two real motives behind the Partition of Bengal? *(2009)*

**Ans.** Curzon's two real motive behind the Partition of Bengal were as follows:

- (i) Bengal was the main centre of Indian nationalism at that time. Thus, to weaken the Nationalist Movement, Curzon wanted to divide Bengal,
- (ii) It was the step to apply 'Divide and Rule Policy' among the Hindus and the Muslims.

5. What double advantage did Lord Curzon hope to obtain by the Partition of Bengal?

**Ans.** The double advantages Lord Curzon hoped to obtain by Partition of Bengal was:

- (i) to split up the large province of Bengal territorially and thus, weaken the National Movement.
- (ii) to separate the Muslim from the Hindus.

6. In which areas except Bengal, Swadeshi Movement was spread?

**Ans.** Besides Bengal, Swadeshi Movement was spread in Uttar Pradesh, Central Provinces, Bombay, Punjab and Madras. The entire country followed Bengal and soon the Swadeshi Movement acquired national dimensions.

7. Name some leaders who deported during the Swadeshi and Boycott Movements.

**Ans.** Some leaders were deported during the Swadeshi and Boycott Movements. They were Bal Gangadhar Tilak, Lala Lajpat Rai nad Ajit Singh. After that, the movement lost its strength.

8. Name any two leaders who took part in the Anti-Partition of Bengal Movement outside Bengal.

**Ans.** Two leaders from outside Bengal who took part in the Anti-Partition of Bengal Movement were Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Lala Lajpat Rai.

9. Suggest some new lessons brought by the Swadeshi Movement.

**Ans.** The Swadeshi Movement gave some new lessons such as:

- (i) It taught the press to be fearless.
- (ii) It inspired Hindus and Muslims to co-operate.
- (iii) It also taught students to defy unjust authority and to make sacrifices even of their lives for the sake of their country.

10. State two impacts of the Swadeshi and Boycott Movements.

**Ans.** Two impacts of the Swadeshi and Boycott Movements were:

- (i) Indian industries received a great stimulus.
- (ii) It enhanced the differences between the early nationalist and the assertive nationalists.

11. The Swadeshi and Boycott Movements had an adverse impact on the Indian National Congress less. What was the adverse impact? What was the main difference between the two groups of Congressmen?

**Ans.** The Swadeshi and Boycott Movements had an adverse impact on the Indian National Congress. There was a split in the Surat Session of Indian National Congress. In this session, the Assertive Nationalists wanted to adopt revolutionary method, but the Moderates were not in favour of such methods. This was the main difference between them.

**12.** Name some acts enacted by the government to suppress the Anti-Partition Movement.

**Ans.** The acts enacted by the government to suppress the Anti-Partition Movement were:

- (i) Prevention of Seditious Meeting Act, 1907
- (ii) Explosive Substances Act, 1908
- (iii) Criminal Law Amendment Act, 1908
- (iv) Newspaper Act, 1908

**13.** What did the Radicals of the Congress mean by the term 'boycott'?

**Ans.** The Radicals of the Congress appealed for total boycott of foreign goods. They meant boycott of foreign goods, services, honours, titles and also social boycott of those persons who were trading in foreign goods.

**14.** When did Surat split take place? Who became the Congress President after this?

**Ans.** Surat split is mainly known for 'Separation of Congress' partymen into Moderates and Extremists at the Surat Session of Congress on 26th December, 1907. After Lala Lajpat Rai stepped down as President candidate, Dr Rash Bihari Ghosh became the President.

**15.** What were two basic reasons responsible for the Surat Split in 1907 between the Early Nationalists and the Assertive Nationalists. *[2014]*

**Ans.** The reasons behind Surat Split were:

- (i) There were much debate and disagreement between the Moderates and the Extremists in the Indian National Congress. The Moderates wanted to achieve Swaraj through constitutional means and Assertives believed that unless they put a stronger pressure on the government, they would never achieve their objectives. In 1906, Calcutta Session of the Congress they passed resolution supporting Swadeshi, Boycott and national education which was not liked by the Moderates.
- (ii) In Surat Session (1907), the Moderates proposed the name of Rash Bihari Ghosh for the post of the Congress Presidentship, but the radicals proposed the name of Lala Lajpat Rai. The ideology conflict between the two groups led to the split of the Congress.

**16.** Mention two international events that influenced the radical groups of the Congress.

**Ans.** Two international events that influenced the radical groups of the Congress were:

- (i) The defeat of the Italians by the Ethiopians in 1896.

(ii) The defeat of the Russians by the Japanese in 1905. Both these victories of African and Asian forces over Western powers shattered the myth of European superiority and invincibility.

**17.** Give one difference in the method of Aggressive and like Moderate Nationalists.

**Ans.** The Aggressive Nationalists believed in Swadeshi, Boycott and militant nationalism, but the Moderate Nationalists believed in petitions, prayers and passive resistance.

**18.** Name two repressive policies taken by Lord Curzon.

**Ans.** Viceroy Lord Curzon took some repressive policies to rule India. These were:

- (i) In 1899, Lord Curzon passed the 'Calcutta Corporation Act' which reduced the number of elected Indian members in Calcutta Corporation.
- (ii) He introduced the 'Indian Universities Act of 1904' which aimed to abolish the internal independence of the universities and curtail the power of the senates.

**19.** What were the two methods adopted by the Radical Nationalists in the freedom struggle?

*[2010]*

**Ans.** Swadeshi and Boycott were the two methods, which were adopted by the Radical Nationalists in the freedom struggle. They urged to use only Swadeshi products and followed the methods of non-cooperation with the British Government by boycotting government service, courts, school, colleges and British goods.

**20.** What methods were used by Radicals for attaining independence in the field of education?

**Ans.** The Radicals suggested two methods for attaining independence in the field of education.

- (i) The Radicals asked the students to boycott schools and colleges set-up by the British Government.
- (ii) Special schools and colleges like Bengal National College and many National Schools were established to impart national education on the education according to the needs of the nation.

**21.** Name the nationalist who said 'Swaraj is my birth-right'. Mention one contribution of his to the National Movement.

*[2018]*

**Ans.** Bal Gangadhar Tilak said 'Swaraj is my birth-right'. Tilak revived Ganapati and Shivaji festivals to instill national feeling among Indians. Both these festivals inspired the Indians and infused new spirit of nationalism in them.

**22.** In what way was Tilak forerunner of Gandhiji?

**Ans.** Tilak was regarded as a forerunner of Gandhiji. The principles followed by him greatly inspired Gandhiji. Gandhiji followed his principle of Swadeshi and Boycott. Tilak's idea of Swaraj was similar to Gandhi's idea of complete independence.

**23.** (i) Name any two methods used by Bal Gangadhar Tilak to enthuse the youth.

(ii) Give the names of two leaders who led the Home Rule Movement in India?

**Ans.** (i) Bal Gangadhar used some methods to enthuse the youth. Two of these methods were:

- (a) Celebrating Ganapati and Shivaji festivals.
- (b) Setting up akharas and lathi clubs.

(ii) Two leaders who led the Home Rule Movement in India were Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Annie Besant.

**24.** Name two newspapers started by Bal Gangadhar Tilak in order to spread the ideals of Nationalism.

**Ans.** Bal Gangadhar Tilak started two newspapers-The Mahratta (English) and The Kesari (Marathi), in order to spread the ideals of Nationalism.

**25.** Name two famous books written by Bal Gangadhar Tilak.

**Ans.** Two famous books written by Bal Gangadhar Tilak were:

- (i) Gita Rahasya
- (ii) Arctic Home in the Vedas

**26.** Who is popularly known as the 'Father of revolutionary thoughts in India'?

**Ans.** Extremist leader Bipin Chandra Pal is popularly known as the 'Father of revolutionary thoughts in India'.

**27.** Mention two important contributions of Lala Lajpat Rai. [2014]

**Ans.** Two important contributions of Lala Lajpat Rai were as follows:

- (i) Lala Lajpat Rai was popularly known as 'Punjab Kesari' or 'Sher-e-Punjab', He founded 'Punjabi', 'Vande Mataram' (Urdu Daily) and 'People' (English Weekly).
- (ii) In 1914 Lajpat Rai went to America and there he worked for the Ghadar Party in America. He also started a Home Rule League in America.

**28.** Who founded the 'Servants of the People Society'?

**Ans.** Lala Lajpat Rai founded the 'Servants of the People Society' in 1921. It worked for social and political reforms in our country.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

**1.** To some extent, Lord Curzon was responsible for the transformation of the anti-Partition agitation into a Mass Movement. In this context, answer the following questions. [2006]

- (i) What was Lord Curzon's argument in favour of the Partition of Bengal? How did the nationalists interpret Lord Curzon's motives? [3]
- (ii) How did the people express their unhappiness against this decision of the British? [3]
- (iii) Explain the terms Swadeshi and Boycott in the context of the National Movement in India. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Curzon's argument in favour of the Partition of Bengal was as follows:

- Curzon justified the Partition of Bengal Presidency, saying that the area of Bengal was very large and it was also the most thickly populated province in British India.
- It was difficult for the British to administer the same efficiently. Hence, according to Lord Curzon, Partition of Bengal was administrative necessity.
- The Indian nationalists clearly saw the design behind the partition and condemned it. They thought that this was done in order to divide or break the Hindu-Muslim unity; they felt that administrative efficiency could have been better secured to stop the tide of nationalism, to curb Bengali influence by not only placing Bengalis under the administration, but by reducing them to a minority in Bengal.

(ii) People's reactions to the Partition of Bengal were as follows:

- On 16th October, 1905, the Partition of Bengal came into effect. The leaders of the protest movement declared it a day of 'National Mourning' throughout Bengal. It was also observed a 'Day of fasting'.
- They tied rakhis on each other's wrists to show their bonds of love and unity.
- The streets of Calcutta were full of the cries of Vande Mataram, which became the theme song of the National Movement.
- People showed their anger by boycotting foreign goods. They observed fasts and pledged support to the nationalists for forcing the government to cancel the Partition.

(iii) In the Year 1905, the Swadeshi and Boycott Movements started as a part of the agitation against the Partition of Bengal. 'Swadeshi' literally means 'one's own country'. The aim of the Swadeshi Movement was the promotion of indigenous industries for strengthening the nation. Boycott Movement meant 'abstaining from the purchase of British goods'. These movements were started with a view to accelerate the pace of the freedom struggle. Swadeshi was a weapon forged by the people to achieve industrial and economic regeneration. The Boycott Movement was more comprehensive and a four-fold programme of Boycott was advocated. Boycott includes the following conditions:

- Boycott of English goods like clothes, salt and sugar, etc.
- Rejection of English speech.
- Rejection of government posts and seats in Legislative Council.
- Social boycott of people, who purchased foreign goods. Thus, these movements were openly and aggressively anti-British.

**2.** Bengal was partitioned in the year 1905 by Lord Curzon. In the light of this, describe briefly.

(i) The motives of Lord Curzon behind the partition. {3}

(ii) The measures taken by the British to crush the Anti-Partition Movement. {3}

(iii) The reasons given by the British to justify the Partition of Bengal. {4}

**Ans.** (i) The motives of Lord Curzon behind the Partition were as follows:

- The main motive for the Partition of Bengal according to British rulers was administrative necessity. They said that the province of Bengal was too big to be efficiently administered by a 'single provincial government'.
- The Partition of the State was intended to curb Bengali influence by not only placing Bengalis under two administrations, but by reducing them to a minority in Bengal itself.
- Curzon's real motive behind the Partition was to break 'the growing solidarity of Bengali nationalism.' Another motive was to drive a wedge between the Hindus and the Muslims.
- The Partition was meant to foster divisions on the basis of religion. East Bengal would be predominantly a Muslim majority state and West Bengal would have a Hindu majority.

(ii) The government banned processions and meetings, curbed the newspapers by rigorous press laws and imprisoned the leaders of the movement without trial. The government took all measures to suppress the students. The government made use of several repressive measure's such-as Prevention of Seditious Meeting Act, Explosive Substances Act, Criminal Law Amendment Act and Newspapers Act. The singing of Vande Mataram was forbidden in the streets of Bengal. The leaders of the movement were ill-treated. Some leaders were tried for seditious writing in various papers. The educational institutions were warned that if they did not prevent their students from participating in the Boycott Movement, their grants-in-aid would be stopped.

(iii) Bengal was a huge territory which originally comprised the whole of Bihar, Orissa, Assam, Western and Eastern Bengal. Curzon said, "Bengal is ungovernably too large a charge for any single man." It meant that it was too large a state to be effectively administered by a single provincial government. Therefore, to provide good administration, it should be divided into two provinces.

**3.** From 1905 to 1918, there emerged a new and a younger group of leaders within the Congress who did not agree with the old leadership, In this context, answer the following questions. {2010}

(i) Differentiate between the Moderates and the Radical nationalists in their objectives and achievements, stating one objective and two achievements of each wing of the Congress. {3}

(ii) Name the Radical leader known as the forerunner of Gandhiji. Why is the person known as the forerunner of Gandhiji? {3}

(iii) Explain how the Repressive policies of Lord Curzon and influence of International events led to Radical Nationalism. {4}

**Ans.** (i) **The Objectives**

- The Moderates adopted the path of prayer petition, and protest pleading with the British to introduce changes. The moderates agitated only for certain administrative and economic reforms. They wanted that the Indians should have some say in the government and administration of the country. In 1906 under the pressure from the aggressives they talked about 'Swaraj' as their goal.

- The Radicals on the other hand, demanded 'Purna Swaraj' or complete independence of India. They thought that 'Swaraj' was the only solution to all problems being faced by the Indians.

#### **The Achievements**

- The Moderates were successful in inspiring the common masses of India. They sowed the seed of nationalism and developed the spirit of national unity among Indians.
- On the other hand the social base of the movement was broadened under the leadership of the Radicals. They instilled self-confidence and self-reliance among people.
- Bal Gangadhar Tilak was regarded as the forerunner of Mahatma Gandhi. Gandhiji's ideal of complete independence was similar to Tilak's ideal of Swaraj. Moreover, no-rent campaign, Boycott and Swadeshi preached and practiced by Tilak was also accepted by Gandhiji. Thus, it can be said that Gandhiji's ideals were moulded by Tilak's thought.
- Lord Curzon adopted many repressive policies toward Indians. Lord Curzon passed the 'Calcutta Corporation Act' (1899), Indian Universities Act (1904), Official Secrets Act (1904) etc. All these measures outraged Indians against British rule. Some international events also greatly inspired radicals.

The defeat of the Italians by the Ethiopians in 1896 and of the Russians by the Japanese in 1905 encouraged them to fight against foreign rulers. Moreover the Boers War (1899-1902) against the British power in South Africa, Home Rule agitation in Ireland and the revolutionary movements in Russia, China etc, influenced the Radical Nationalism.

- 4.** With reference to the effect of the Swadeshi and Boycott Movements, describe the following.
- Involvement of the masses. [3]
  - Decline in import of foreign goods. [3]
  - Growth of national literature and culture. [4]

**Ans.** (i) The Swadeshi Movement was undertaken by the Indian nationalist leaders to remove the British from power and improve India's economic conditions. The radicals emphasised to involve the masses in the movement. The Day of Partition was observed as 'Day of Mourning'. On the call of Rabindranath Tagore the people observed the Day of Partition as rakshabandhan and tied wristlets on each other's hand. Both Hindus and Muslims

enthusiastically participated in this movement. Beside this women, peasants, children, students all participated in this movement.

- Though Manchester cloth was the chief target of attack, the movement was extended to other British manufacturers also, such as salt and sugar as well as luxury goods in general. Foreign cigarettes and clothes were bought and burnt on the streets. Some people refused to assist any religious ceremonies in houses where European salt and sugar in houses were used and traders were warned from importing foreign articles. All these proceedings led to the decline in import of foreign goods.
- As a result of the spread of modern Western education and thought during the 19th century, a large number of Indians imbibed a modern rational, secular, democratic, and nationalist political outlook. The educated Indians were the first to feel the humiliation of foreign subjection. The writings of authors like, Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay, Rabindranath Tagore, Fakir Mohan Senapati inspired people to develop self-confidence and self-respect. Teaching of social reformers led to cultural growth. In Bengal, the worship of goddesses Kali and Durga was revived to inspire the people to take up arms against the evil powers.

#### **C Picture Based Questions**

[10 Marks each]

- 1.** Answer the following questions based on the picture given below.



- Identify the personality in the given picture. Why is he remembered in Indian history? [3]
- Explain his repressive policies. [3]
- What was the influence of the agitation of Partition of Bengal in the realm of culture? [4]

**Ans.** (i) The above picture belongs to Viceroy Lord Curzon (1899-1905). He knew more about India and Indian Problems in 1899 than any other Viceroy at the time of his appointment. He introduced administrative, educational, economic, judicial, military reforms to strengthen the British empire.

In July, 1905 Curzon announced the Partition of Bengal which has 'a mere readjustment of administrative boundaries'. On 16th October, 1905, Partition became effective. This incident led to anti-Partition agitation. This Swadeshi and Boycott Movements added strength to the National Movement. The Partition of Bengal embittered Indo-British relations. Lord Curzon is remembered as the person who is responsible for all these developments.

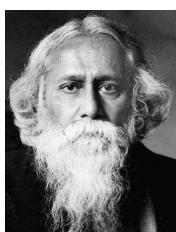
(ii) Repressive policies of Lord Curzon were as follows:

- The Calcutta Corporation Act, which was passed by Lord Curzon in the year of 1899, by which he increased the number of Englishmen on the list of official members of the corporation and reduced the number of Indian members in Calcutta Corporation.
- Curzon introduced the 'Indian Universities Act of 1904' which aimed to abolish the internal independence of the universities and tried to apply official control over the university senates.
- Also in 1904, Curzon passed the 'Official Secrets Act' with the intention to deny information to the people under the pretext of official secrets.

(iii) In the realm of culture, Swadeshi Movement resulted in the flourish of literature and journalism in our country. Its influences were:

- Patriotic songs written by Rabindranath Tagore, Rajnikant Sen, Dwijendralal Roy, Mukunda Das (a ballad singer) became very popular.
- Newspapers like the 'Kesari' 'Maharatta', 'Vande Mataram' and 'Yugantar' fostered a new spirit of freedom and self-reliance.
- Folk theatre in Bengal helped in popularising the ideals of Swadeshi.

2. Answer the following questions based on the picture given below.



(i) Identify the personality in the given picture. [3]

(ii) What was his role in Swadeshi Movement? [3]

(iii) Write a short note on the political view of Rabindranath Tagore. [4]

**Ans.** (i) The picture belongs to Rabindranath Tagore (1861-1941). He Supported Indian Independence Movement and wrote many patriotic songs to inspire the nation. He believed that freedom was not just political freedom from the British, but rather ability to be honest and truthful with oneself, without which self-rule would lose all meaning. His ideas deeply influenced Mahatma Gandhi.

(ii) On 16th October, 1905 the Partition of Bengal became effective. This day was observed as a 'day of mourning'. Rabindranath Tagore called for the 'Raksha Bandhan' on that day. People tied 'rakhi' or thread wristlets on each other's hand irrespective of caste and religion. People were emotionally charged. Rabindranath wrote many patriotic songs like 'Banglar mati, Banglar jal' for the Swadeshi Movement started at that time. His patriotic songs and writings inspired the nationalists. He helped in setting up a Swadeshi store. Thus, in different ways he supported the Swadeshi Movement.

(iii) Rabindranath Tagore's political view marked with two aspects. On one hand he denounced European imperialism and on the other hand he supported Indian nationalism. Partition of Bengal disappointed him and he delivered lectures, wrote songs in support of anti-partition movement. He viewed British control of India as a 'Political symptom to our social disease. He renounced his knighthood in protest of Jallianwala Bagh Massacre. He was instrumental in resolving a dispute between Mahatma Gandhi and B.R. Ambedkar regarding separate electorates for untouchables. He lashed out against the education system introduced in India by the British for their own interest. He established a different type of school where a new methodology was adopted. He was a true patriot, but his own involvement in the nationalist movement fluctuated largely because of his ideological differences with the Indian leaders.

**3.** Answer the following questions based on the picture given below.

- (i) Identify the person given in picture. To which section of the Congress did he belong and what was its ultimate objective?



- (ii) State the contributions of the person in freedom struggle.

- (iii) Highlight three different methods of struggle adopted by the moderates and the radicals.

**Ans.** (i) Person in this picture is Lala Lajpat Rai, one of the Assertive leaders of the Congress. The main objective of the Assertive Nationalists was the immediate attainment of 'Swaraj'. This meant complete independence and not just self-government, as was in the colonies of Australia and New Zealand etc.

- (ii) Contributions of Lala Lajpat Rai in the freedom struggle were as follows:

- He started a monthly magazine 'The Young India', to spread the message of the right of India to attain Swaraj.
- He opened orphanages, hospitals and schools. He set-up 'Servants of the People Society' for the welfare of the downtrodden and outcastes.
- He was assaulted by a British sergeant while demonstrating against the Simon Commission in Lahore in 1928. This incident fuelled anti-British passion and enraged revolutionaries.
- He inspired Indians to take action against the British rulers rather than following the three P's - Prayers, Petitions and Protests for this purpose.

- (iii) Methods of struggle adopted by each section of the Congress were as follows:

**Methods of the Moderates** The moderates relied on constitutional and peaceful methods and avoided violence and confrontation. They believed in the Prayers, Petitions and Protests to achieve their objectives. They had full faith in the British sense of justice and fair play and believed that India needed a balanced representation of its demands before the British rulers. They sent memorandums and petitions to the government officials and to the British Parliament.

**Methods of the Assertives** The favoured use of force and revolutionary methods for achieving their aims. They mainly relied on the strength of their masses. They converted the national movement

into a mass movement. They aroused the masses by influencing them with their sacrifices and sufferings. The methods of the Assertive Nationalists included Swadeshi, Boycott, National Education and co-operative organisations. They announced that Indians should be ready to face sorrows and difficulties for achieving Swaraj.

**4.** The conflict between the two sections of the Congress came to surface in its Session in 1906 at Calcutta. In this context explain the following.

- (i) The split in the Congress in 1907. [3]
- (ii) With reference to the picture given below, answer the following: [3]



- (a) What were the three personalities popularly known as?  
 (b) Which section of the Congress did they represent?  
 (c) Mention two of their popular Beliefs.  
 (iii) State any four methods that they advocated for the achievement of their aims. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 47.

- (ii) (a) The three personalities were popularly known as 'Lal-Bal-Pal'.  
 (b) They represent the 'Assertive Nationalist' section of the Congress.

- (c) Their two popular beliefs are following:
  - They had no faith in the British sense of justice.
  - They believed that the British had ruined our civilisation.

- (iii) Four methods that they advocated for the achievement of their aims are following:
  - (a) They asked the people to use only swadeshi goods and boycott the foreign goods.
  - (b) They emphasised on national education and called upon students to boycott schools and colleges run by the British government.
  - (c) They encouraged co-operative organisations.
  - (d) They also emphasised on involvement of masses in the national movement.

# **CHAPTER TEST**

## **Short Questions**

**[2 Marks each]**

1. State the real motives for the Partition of Bengal.
2. In what unique way did Bengali's observe partition day?
3. How did the Swadeshi Movement promote National education?
4. What was the main impact of the Partition of Bengal and the National Movement?
5. State the territorial reorganisation in the Partition of Bengal.
6. In what way did the Swadeshi Movement achieve success?
7. When was the Partition of Bengal revoked?
8. What was the main aim of the Radical Nationalists?
9. Mention two important anti-Indian policy adopted by Lord Curzon which brought about aggressive nationalism in India.
10. What was the contribution of Bal Gangadhar Tilak in the field of education in our country?

## **Structured Questions**

**[10 Marks each]**

1. With reference to Partition of Bengal, explain the following questions.
  - (i) Why was Bengal partitioned?
  - (ii) How did the Partition of Bengal affected National Movement?
  - (iii) What did people do to make this movement a success?
2. With reference to the Swadeshi and Boycott Movements, answer the following questions.
  - (i) Give two objectives of this movement.
  - (ii) How did these movements spread and become popular?
  - (iii) How did these movements help to strengthen the National Movement?

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

1. Name the nationalist who said 'Swaraj is my birth-right'. Mention one contribution of his to the National Movement.

## 2015

2. Mention any two causes for the Rise of Assertive Nationalism.

## 2014

3. Mention two important contributions of Lala Lajpat Rai.
4. What were the two basic reasons responsible for the Surat Split in 1907 between the Early Nationalists and the Assertive Nationalists?

## 2013

5. The early Congressmen were liberal in their views and programmes. This led to the rise of Assertive Nationalists who demanded more forceful action against the British. In this context, discuss the following.
  - (i) Reasons why the early Congressmen were called Moderates.
  - (ii) How did Moderates differ from the Assertive Nationalists in realising their objectives?
  - (iii) How did Tilak bring a new wave in Indian politics that was distinct from the early Congressmen?

## 2012

6. State any two repressive policies of Lord Curzon.
7. One of Lord Curzon's administrative measures that resulted in a strong resentment from the masses was the Partition of Bengal in 1905. In this context, answer the following questions.
  - (i) What was Lord Curzon's argument in favour of the Partition of Bengal? How did the nationalists interpret Lord Curzon's motives?
  - (ii) How did the people react to the Partition of Bengal?
  - (iii) What was the impact of the Swadeshi Movement on Indian Industries?

## 2010

8. How did Lord Curzon justify the partition of Bengal.
9. Why was Bengal partitioned? Name the Viceroy responsible for it.

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

# The Muslim League : Formation and Objectives

## Factors/Events Leading to the Formation of the Muslim League

### The British Policy of Divide and Rule

After the revolt of 1857, the British started to discriminate<sup>1</sup> between the Hindus and the Muslims. The British ruler thought that the movement might unite the people and cause a problem to the British Empire. So, they applied 'Divide and Rule Policy' and encouraged separatist<sup>2</sup> and communal politics in India. They started favouring Muslims against the Hindus. They branded the Congress as a Hindu organisation. They talked of Bengali domination and encouraged provincialism. They even encouraged the upper class Muslims to start their own organisation.

### Educational and Economic Backwardness of the Muslims

The Muslims considered that the Britishers were responsible for the end of Mughal rule. They felt humiliated after the last Emperor Bahadur Shah Zafar was dethroned and deprived of power, titles and privileges. Muslims became anti-British, conservative and hostile to Western education. This resulted in economic and educational backwardness of Muslims. On the other hand, Hindu who received Western education easily got government jobs. Muslims remained backward in the field of commerce and industry.

Due to this, the economic conditions of the Muslims was deteriorated. The ordinary Muslim population was under the influence of their zamindars. These zamindars class were loyal to the British ruler class who found it easy to make difference between Hindu-Muslim communities.

<sup>1</sup> Discriminate To show a difference between people or things.

<sup>2</sup> Separatist A group of people within a country who want to separate from the rest of the country and form their own government.

## Loss of Sovereignty by the Muslims

Before the British period, many rulers of India were followers of Islam. The British became ruler in our country after defeating Mughal ruler. This resented the Muslim community against the British rulers. After the Revolt of 1857, the British thought that, Muslim community could take revenge at any time. So, they took a policy of indifference towards Muslims and started to **appease**<sup>3</sup> Hindus.

## The Hindi-Urdu Controversy

In the United Provinces (present Uttar Pradesh), Urdu was the court language. All the petitions to the offices and courts were submitted in Urdu. But some sections of the society protested against this practice.

In 1900, the government issued a decree granting equal status to both Hindi and Urdu. All the petitions were to be submitted in Hindi, in Devanagri Script and the official announcements of the court to be issued in Hindi as well as in Urdu. This was opposed by the Muslims. Sir Syed Ahmed Khan promoted the adoption of Urdu as the **lingua franca**<sup>4</sup> of all Indian Muslims. He strongly opposed the adoption of Hindi as a second official language of the United Provinces.

## Sir Syed's Political Views towards Congress

Under British influence, Sir Syed gradually became more conservative and communal in his political views. By 1889, he gave up his earlier political views and declared that the interests of Hindus and Muslims were completely different. In 1893, he founded the **Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental Defence Association** to keep the Muslims away from the Congress, to promote loyalty towards the rulers and to prevent Muslims from participating in any political movement.

Sir Syed Ahmed Khan was one of the earliest advocates of the 'Two-Nation Theory' that Hindu and Muslim should have separate nations. His philosophy guided the creation of the **All India Muslim League** in 1906, as a political party separate from the Congress. British took his idea of separatism and used it to separate Hindu and Muslims.

## The Partition of Bengal

The Partition of Bengal, 1905, by Lord Curzon further aggravated<sup>5</sup> the conflict between the Hindus and Muslims. The new province of Eastern Bengal and Assam with Dacca as its capital demarcated<sup>6</sup> it as a predominantly Muslim area. Its creation satisfied the Muslims' dream for a separate region and also ensured their loyalty to the British. It gave a blow to the national movement led by the Indian Congress. The Congress started Swadeshi and Boycott Movements in protest against government's decision of dividing Bengal. Many Muslim leaders did not support this movement, as they thought that this newly developed province would become the centre of their political activity.

On 16th October, 1905, the Mohammedan Provincial Union was founded. All the existing societies and organisations were invited to join with it. Nawab Salimullah Khan was chosen as its patron who was a supporter of the partition.

## Muslim Deputation to Lord Minto

Viceroy **Lord Minto** wanted to use Muslims against the Hindus. So, he invited Muslim delegations to meet their demands.

Realising the importance of such meeting, Mohsin-ul Malik, the secretary of MAO College soon organised a delegation<sup>7</sup>. 35 influential Muslims from all over the country led by Agha Khan met the Viceroy in Simla on 1st October, 1906. They submitted the following demands to the viceroy:

- Representation of Muslims in elected bodies on the basis of its political importance and not on numerical strength of the community.
- Separate electoral constituency for the Muslims.
- Reservation of seats for Muslims in the state services.
- More state aids for promoting new Muslim Universities.
- Preference to be given to Muslims while nominating members of the Viceroy's Council.

In their letter, the Muslims described their loyalty to the British and expressed their fears about being dominated by the majority, i.e. Hindus. Viceroy gave a favourable reply to the delegation and declared separate electorates for the Muslim. This was a part of the Indian Council Act of 1909, popularly known as the **Morley-Minto Reforms**.

<sup>3</sup> **Appease** To make somebody calmer by giving them what they want.

<sup>4</sup> **Lingua Franca** A language that is adopted as a common language between speakers whose mother tongue are different.

<sup>5</sup> **Aggravated** To make a bad or unpleasant situation worse.

<sup>6</sup> **Demarcated** To mark or establish the limits of something.

<sup>7</sup> **Delegation** A group of people who represents the views of an organisation.

Separate electorate<sup>8</sup> meant that elections were to be held on the basis of communal representation. It meant that the Muslims could vote for a Muslim candidate and the Hindus for a Hindu candidate. Thus, the Muslim community would be represented as a community in the councils. This sowed the seed of communalism and as a result, an unbridgeable gulf between the 2 communities created.

### CHECK POINT 01

- 1 Who founded the Anglo Mohammedan Oriental College?
- 2 When was the Mohammedan Provincial Union founded?
- 3 Which Act is known as 'Morley-Minto Reforms'?

## Formation of Muslim League

The success of the Muslim deputation to the Viceroy on 1st October, 1906 inspired and motivated the Muslim to start a new political organisation. In December, 1906, Nawab Salimullah arranged the meeting at Dacca and under his leadership on 30th December, 1906, the All-India Muslim League was founded.

Muslim League's original political goal was to define and advance the Indian Muslim's civil rights and to provide protection to the Muslims. Its constitution was framed in 1907 at Karachi. Sir Sultan Muhammad Shah (Aga Khan III) was elected as permanent President of Muslim League. Its headquarters was at Aligarh, but its central office was shifted to Lucknow in 1910. A committee framed its rules and regulations. The First Regular Session of the Muslim League was held in December, 1908 at Amritsar. Its Chairman was Syed Ali Imam.

## Objectives of the Muslim League

The main objectives of the Muslim League were following:

- To promote the feelings of loyalty towards the British Government amongst the Indian Muslims and to remove any misconception that may arise as to the intentions of the government in relation to the Indian Muslims.
- To protect and advance the political rights and other interests of the Muslims of India and to place their needs and aspirations before the government in mild and moderate language.
- To promote friendly relations between the Muslims and other communities of India and to prevent the rise of any hostility between them.

- To promote social and economic interests of the Muslims.
- To secure a rightful place for the Muslims in the Indian society and economy.

## Impact of the Muslim League on the National Movement

Initially, the Muslim League stood apart from the National Movement, opposed the Anti-Partition Movement and the Swadeshi and Boycott movements. From its very inception<sup>9</sup>, the Muslim League was a political organisation of the Muslims. It tried to cut off the Muslim masses from the National Movement.

### Divide and Rule Policy

The British supported the Muslims and maintained their 'Policy of Divide and Rule'. The league demanded separate electorates and reservation of posts in the services to protect the rights of the Muslims. The British gave full support to their demands. Thus, the Britishers were successful in sowing the seeds of conflict between the Hindus and Muslims.

### Demand for Self-Government

However, in spite of these differences, the radical and nationalist ideas among the Muslims were promoted by a group of educated young men. Among them the most prominent were Maulana Abul Kalam Azad, Habib-ur-Rahman, Hakim Ajmal Khan and Mazhar-ul-Haq. In 1913, the Muslim League adopted the goal of self-government for India. In 1913, Muhammad Ali Jinnah joined the Muslim League. He also supported the progressive and national aims of the Congress.

### Growth of Nationalism

In the first World War, when the safety of Turkey was threatened, Indians reacted and anti-British sentiments started to grow among the Muslims. As a result many more radical young Muslims joined the nationalists towards the common cause.

On the advice of Abul Kalam Azad, Habib-ur-Rahman founded Masjlis-i-Ahrar (The society of freeman). The Ahrar made great sacrifices for the cause of India's freedom. The emergent<sup>10</sup> section of nationalists, Muslims changed the attitude of the Muslim League towards the Congress.

<sup>8</sup> Electorate The people in a country or an area who have the right to vote.

<sup>9</sup> Inception The start of an institution or an organisation.

<sup>10</sup> Emergent New and still developing.

**CHECK POINT 02**

- 1 When was the Muslim League founded?
- 2 Where was the Constitution of Muslim League framed?
- 3 Where was the first regular Session of the Muslim League held?
- 4 In which year Muhammad Ali Jinnah joined the Muslim League?

**TIMELINE**

Year	Important Events
1867	Hindi-Urdu Controversy
1875	Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental College was founded by Sir Syed Ahmed Khan.

1893	Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental Defence Association was founded.
16th Oct, 1905	Mohammedan Provincial Union was founded.
1st Oct, 1906	Muslim delegations met Viceroy Lord Minto at Simla.
30th Dec, 1906	All-India Muslim League was founded.
1908	The First Session of the Muslim League was held at Amritsar.
1909	Indian Council Act.
1913	Muhammad Ali Jinnah joined the Muslim League. The Muslim League adopted the goal of self-government.

**SUMMARY**

- The Britishers applied 'Divide and Rule Policy' and encouraged separatist and communal politics in India.
- Lord Curzon divided the country on communal lines by announcing the Partition of Bengal (1905).
- Muslims were anti-British, conservative and hostile to Western education. It resulted in economic and educational backwardness of Muslims.
- The British became the ruler after defeating Mughal ruler. This made the Muslims enemies towards them.
- In 1875, Sir Syed founded **Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental College**, which later developed into 'Aligarh Muslim University'.
- Muslim intellectuals started Aligarh Movement to secure the future of Indian Muslims.
- In 1893, Sir Syed founded the Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental Defence Association to keep the Muslims away from the Congress.
- Sir Syed was one of the earliest advocates of the 'Two-Nation Theory' i.e. Hindus and Muslims should have separate nations.
- The Partition of Bengal aggravated the conflict between the Hindus and Muslims.
- A Muslim delegation led by Sir Sultan Muhammad Shah (Aga Khan III) met Viceroy Minto in Simla. They demanded more representation of Muslims, separate electorate constituency, etc. Viceroy gave a favourable reply to the delegation and declared separate electorates for the Muslims.
- On 30th December, 1906, the All India Muslim League was founded under the leadership of Nawab Salimullah of Dacca.
- The main objectives of the Muslim League was to promote loyalty amongst the Indian Muslims towards the British, to protect the political rights and interests of Muslims, to promote friendly relation between the Muslims and other communities, etc.
- The Muslim League was a political organisation of Muslims. In its initial stage, it opposed the nationalist movement but later, some prominent Radical leaders like, Maulana Abul Kalam Azad, Habib-ur-Rahman, etc changed the attitude of the Muslim League toward the Congress.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a Short Questions [2 Marks each]

1. When did the communal politics develop in India?

**Ans.** In the early 20th century, the communal politics developed in our country. It developed as a result of wrong policies taken by the British rulers.

2. State any two ways through which the Britishers encouraged separatist politics in India.

**Ans.** The two ways taken by the Britishers to encourage separatist politics in India were:

- (i) They started favouring Muslims against the Hindus.
- (ii) They branded the Congress as a Hindu organisation.

3. Why the Muslims were hostile to Western education?

**Ans.** The Muslims considered the British responsible for the end of Mughal rule. They felt humiliated after the last Emperor Bahadur Shah Zafar was dethroned, deprived of power, titles and privileges. So the Muslims became hostile to Western education given by the Britishers.

4. What was the view of Sir Syed Ahmed Khan regarding education?

**Ans.** Sir Syed Ahmed Khan realised that the lack of scientific education forced the Muslim community towards backwardness.

Thus, he founded many national schools and Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental College to educate the Muslim community.

5. Sir Syed Ahmed Khan thought Indian National Congress was a Hindu organisation. Was it correct or not?

**Ans.** Sir Syed Ahmed Khan's view regarding Indian National Congress was baseless. It was a secular organisation and had many eminent Muslim leaders like Badruddin Tyabji, Abdul Rasul, Hasrat Mohani and many more.

6. State any two aims of Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental College.

**Ans.** The two aims of Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental College were as follows:

- (i) To provide a centre of Western learning for the Muslims.
- (ii) To promote loyalty towards the rulers and solicit their favours.

7. Write the name of any two associations founded by Sir Syed Ahmed Khan to safeguard the rights of the Muslims.

**Ans.** Sir Syed Ahmed Khan founded the following two associations to safeguard the rights of the Muslims:

- (i) Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental Defence Association
- (ii) United Indian Patriotic Association

8. Why did Sir Syed Ahmed Khan oppose the policies of the Indian National Congress?

**Ans.** Sir Syed Ahmed Khan preached complete obedience to British rule. When the Indian National Congress was formed, he decided to oppose it. He feared that since most of the prominent leaders of the Congress were Hindus, they would dominate the Muslims. So, he urged the Muslims not to join the Indian National Congress.

9. Why did the imperial regime encourage separatist tendencies among the minority community?

**Ans.** The imperial regime encouraged separatist tendencies among the minority community as they wanted to check the growth of a united national feeling in India. The British ruler knew that the united people could not be subjugated or suppressed for a long time.

10. List two important events that led to the formation of the Muslim League.

**Ans.** Two important events that led to the formation of the Muslim League were:

- (i) **Partition of Bengal** Partition of Bengal in 1905 widened the gap between the Muslims and the Hindus as it was welcomed by the Muslims.

- (ii) **The Hindi-Urdu Controversy** The controversy relating to use of court language whether it would be Urdu or Hindi also widened the gap between Hindus and Muslims.

11. When did a Muslim delegation under the leadership of Aga Khan III met Viceroy Lord Minto?

**Ans.** 35 eminent Muslim intellectuals organised as a delegation led by Aga Khan III met Viceroy Lord Minto on 1st October, 1906 at Simla. They submitted their demands like more Muslim representation in elected bodies, separate electoral constituency for the Muslims etc to the Viceroy.

**12.** When was the Indian Council Act passed? What was its other name?

**Ans.** Indian Council Act was passed in 1909. The popular name of it was Morley-Minto Reforms.

**13.** What was the meaning of separate electorate?

**Ans.** Separate electorate meant that elections were to be held on the basis of communal representation. It meant that the Muslims could vote for a Muslim candidate and the Hindus for a Hindu candidate.

**14.** Give two examples to show that the British encouraged communal and separatist attitude in Indian politics.

**Ans.** The British encouraged communal and separatist attitude in Indian politics in two ways:

- (i) Lord Curzon partitioned Bengal to weaken the Hindu-Muslim unity.
- (ii) Morley-Minto Reforms of 1909 provided for separate representation to the Muslim community in the Imperial Legislative Council.

**15.** What did the British do to foster the Policy of Divide and Rule, which gave rise to the formation of the Muslim League?

**Ans.** The Hindus and Muslims were treated as separate communities by the British Government and accepted their communal leaders as authentic representatives of their group. The British Government started favouring Muslims against the Hindus. They branded the Congress as Hindu organisation and encouraged the upper class Muslim to form their own organisation.

**16.** When was the Muslim League formally founded? Who presided over its session at Dacca?

**Ans.** The Muslim League was formally founded on 30th December, 1906. Nawab Salimullah presided over its Session at Dacca.

**17.** How did Hindi-Urdu controversy become an important factor in the formation of the Muslim League?

**Ans.** Hindi-Urdu Controversy (1867) relating to use of court-language in the United Provinces became an important factor in the formation of the Muslim League. As Hindi was accepted as the second official language, Sir Syed Ahmed Khan strongly criticised it and after that his political view was totally changed and declared that the interests of Hindus and Muslims were completely different which paved the way for the formation of the Muslim League.

**18.** State any two objectives of the Muslim League.

*(2018)*

**Ans.** The two objectives of the Muslim League were:

- (i) To promote amongst the Indian Muslims the feeling of loyalty towards the British rulers.
- (ii) To protect and advance the political rights and other interests of the Muslims of India and to place their needs and aspirations before the government in mild and moderate language.

**19.** Name the Muslim leader who welcomed the Partition of Bengal.

**Ans.** Nawab Salimullah of Dacca welcomed the Partition of Bengal. He took the initiative to form a political organisation for the Muslim. His proposal was accepted and the Muslim League was formally founded.

**20.** Write two initial demands of the Muslim League.

**Ans.** Two initial demands of the Muslim League were:

- (i) Separate electorate for Muslims.
- (ii) Reservation of posts in the services.

**21.** Under whose chairmanship was the First Regular Session of the Muslim League held. Name the city.

**Ans.** The First Regular Session of the Muslim League was held in 1905 at Amritsar under the leadership of Syed Ali Imam.

**22.** Give any two demands forwarded by the delegation led by Aga Khan III.

**Ans.** Two demands forwarded by the delegation led by Aga Khan III were as follows:

- (i) Separate electoral constituency for the Muslims.
- (ii) More state aids for promoting new Muslim Universities.

**23.** Name the organisation founded by Habib-ur-Rahman.

**Ans.** On the advice of Abul Kalam Azad, Habib-ur-Rahman founded Masjlis-i-Ahrar (The society of freeman). The organisation made great sacrifices for the cause of India's freedom.

**24.** How did the British apply 'Divide and Rule Policy' in the Government of India Act, 1919?

**Ans.** According to the Government of India Act, 1919, the electorates to elect the members of the legislature were arranged under the communal and sectional bases. In this way, the British applied the 'Divide and Rule Policy' in the Government of India Act.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

- 1.** The formation of the Muslim League and the Home Rule Movement had a wholesome effect on the affairs of the country. In this context, answer the following questions. *[2008]*

- (i) Three factors leading to the formation of the Muslim League. *[3]*
- (ii) Any three aims of the Muslim League. *[3]*
- (iii) Impact of Muslim League on the National Movement. *[4]*

**Ans.** (i) Three factors leading to the formation of Muslim League were as follows:

- The unity between Hindus and Muslims were seen by the Britishers during the Revolt of 1857 and the Partition of Bengal. To check the growth of nationalism, the Britishers encouraged the formation of the Muslim League.
- The communal and separatist's trend of thinking grew among the Muslims to some extent because of their relative backwardness in education, trade and industry.
- Sir Syed Ahmed Khan was a great educationist and social reformer of Muslim community. He whole heartedly opposed the Congress and urged the Muslims to be loyal to the British and to keep themselves away from the Congress. He worked as a guiding force for the Muslims to form a separate organisation.

(ii) The three aims of the Muslim League were as follows:

- To promote support for the British Government among the Muslims of India and to remove any mis-conceptions regarding the intention of the government in relation to Indian Muslims.
- To protect and advance the political rights and interests of the Muslims and to represent their needs and aspirations to the government in a mild and moderate language.
- To prevent the rise of feelings of hostility between the Muslims of India and other communities.

(iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 61.**

- 2.** With reference to nationalism and the birth of the Indian National Congress, explain each of the following. *(2012)*

- (i) Political views of Sir Syed Ahmed Khan towards Congress. *[3]*
- (ii) The demand of Muslim delegations to Viceroy Lord Minto. *[3]*
- (iii) Three main objectives of the Muslim League. *[4]*

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no 60.**

- (ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no 60 and 61.**
- (iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no 61.**

- 3.** The reasons for the formation of the Muslim League were many. In this context, explain the following questions. *(2013)*

- (i) Any three factors that led to the formation of the Muslim League in India. *[3]*
- (ii) Any three demands made by the Muslim Deputation in 1906 to the Viceroy Lord Minto. *[3]*
- (iii) What were the aims and objectives of the Muslim League? *[4]*

**Ans.** (i) **Refer Q. no 1 part (i) (Structured Questions).**

- (ii) 35 prominent Muslim intellectuals led by Aga Khan III met Viceroy Lord Minto in Shimla on 1st October, 1906.

They submitted the following demands:

- Representation of Muslims in elected bodies on the basis of its political importance and not on numerical strength of the community.
- Separate electoral constituencies for the Muslims.
- Special favours granted to the Muslims in appointment to government services and to the membership of Central and Provincial Councils.

- (iii) The All India Muslim League was founded on 30th December, 1906 under the leadership of Nawab Salimullah. The aims and objectives of the Muslim League were:

**Refer to chapter theory page no. 61.**

- 4.** The British Policy of Divide and Rule gave rise to the formation of the Muslim League. In this context, state the following.

- (i) The British Policy of Divide and Rule. *[3]*
- (ii) The objectives of the Muslim League. *[3]*
- (iii) Two direct outcomes of the formation of the Muslim League. *[4]*

**Ans.** (i) After the First War of Independence in 1857, the British became apprehensive of the safety and stability of their Empire in India. In the War of 1857, both the Hindus and Muslims took part in a large number. Britishers saw the unity between the Hindus and Muslims as a threat to them.

- To check the growth of a united national feeling in India and to encourage communal and separatist tendencies in Indian politics, they decided to follow the 'Policy of Divide and Rule'. The Muslims were made to fight with the Hindus, with one class or caste used against the other and the high caste Hindus were excited against the low caste Hindus and the Sikhs alike. They tried to create hatred among the Hindus and the Muslims by portraying Muslim rulers as plunders and Hindu rulers as cruel kings to their Muslim subjects.
- They tried to spread communal hatred through the use of press, posters, literature and public platform.

(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 61.**

(iii) The direct impacts of the formation of the Muslim League were:

- The radical and nationalist ideas among the Muslims were promoted by a group of educated and modern young men. These young men asked Muslims to join the Congress and disliked the loyalist politics of the Aligarh group and leadership of big Nawabs and Zamindars. Among them, the most prominent were Maulana Abul Kalam Azad, Habib-ur-Rahman, Hakim Ajmal Khan and Mazhar-ul-Haq.
- When the safety of Turkey was threatened during the First World War, Indians reacted and anti-British sentiments started to grow among the Muslims and they joined the nationalist movement. They changed the attitude of the Muslim League towards the Congress.
- Now, the Hindus and the Muslims had a common cause and they put forward a common demand. As a result, a pact known as 'Lucknow Pact' was signed between the Congress and the League in 1916. It was an important step in achieving Hindu-Muslim unity.

5. The Partition of Bengal and the formation of the Muslim League were two important events that had its impact on the National Struggle for independence. In this context, explain the following.

(i) Impact of Swadeshi and Boycott Movements as part of the Anti-Partition Movement. /3

(ii) Any three factors leading to the formation of the Muslim League. /3

(iii) Objectives of the Muslim League. /4

**Ans.** (i) The Swadeshi and Boycott Movements are parts of the Anti-Partition Movement. It involved the Indian boycott of British goods and the increasing reliance on goods made in India to weaken the British hold on our country. This movement helped Indians to regain a sense of pride and autonomy. It paved the way for India to accelerate the national movement.

(ii) **Refer to Q. no. 1 (i) (Structured Questions).**

(iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 61.**

6. With reference to the formation of Muslim League explain the following questions.

(i) Whose ideas led to the formation of the Muslim League? /3

(ii) What was the reaction of the nationalist Muslim? /3

(iii) Hindi-Urdu controversy made conflict between two communities. /4

**Ans.** (i) In December, 1906, the delegates from various provinces assembled for the Muslim Educational Conference at Dacca. They felt the need to establish a political organisation and they were encouraged by the British to do so. Nawab Salimullah Khan of Dacca took the initiative to form a political organisation of the Muslims. His proposal was accepted by all and the Muslim League was formally founded on 30th December, 1906. Sir Syed Ahmed Khan was the pioneer of Two-Nation Theory. His philosophy guided the path to create separate organisation i.e. Muslim League which was founded later by the Nawab of Dacca.

(ii) From its very inception, the Muslim League was a political organisation of the Muslims. It tried to cut off the Muslim masses from the National Movement. But some nationalist Muslims believed in active co-operation with the Congress.

Leaders like Maulana Abul Kalam Azad, Habib-ur-Rahman, Hakim Ajmal Khan, Mazhar-ul-Haq etc joined the Nationalist Movement. On the advice of Abul Kalam Azad, Habib-ur-Rahman founded Masjlis-i-Ahrar (The society of freemen).

The Ahrar made great sacrifices for the cause of India's freedom. In 1916, both the Muslims and the Hindus wanted self-government and thus the Muslim League and the Congress signed a pact, known as 'Lucknow Pact'.

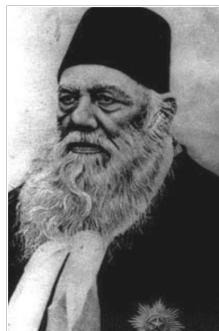
- (iii) Urdu was the most common language of the North-Western provinces of India and all official records were written in this language. But in 1867, some prominent Hindus started a movement in Banaras demanding Hindi and its Devanagri script should be the language of lower courts instead of Urdu and its Persian script. On 8th April, 1900, the British Government declared Hindi and its Devanagri script as official languages for lower courts.

The opposition of Hindus towards the Urdu language made it clear to the Muslims that Hindus were not ready to accept Muslim's culture and tradition. After this, Sir Syed Ahmed Khan declared that the interests of the Hindus and the Muslims were completely different which paved the way for the formation of the Muslim League.

### C Picture Based Question

[10 Marks each]

1. Answer the following questions based on the picture given below.



- (i) Identify the person given in the picture. [3]  
(ii) When and why Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental Defence Association was founded? [3]

- (iii) What was his contribution in respect of 'Two-Nation Theory'? [4]

**Ans.** (i) The person given in the picture is Sir Syed Ahmed Khan. He was a great social reformer and educationalist of Muslim Community. He founded the Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental College at Aligarh in 1875 with the aim of spreading Western education and modernising the Muslim community.

- (ii) In 1893, under the influence of Principal of the Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental College, Aligarh, Sir Syed Ahmed Khan founded the Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental Defence Association.

This organisation was founded in order to keep away the Muslims from the Congress, to promote loyalty towards the rulers and to prevent Muslims from participating in any political movement. Sir Syed feared that the Muslim community would be dominated by the Hindus if the Congress were to come power. The British through this association, wanted to dissuade Muslims from joining the Congress.

- (iii) Sir Syed Ahmed Khan opposed the policies of Indian National Congress. He declared that the interests of Muslims and Hindus were different. He advised the Muslims not to identify themselves with the Hindus and the Congress. Sir Syed was one of the earliest advocates of the 'Two-Nation Theory', that Hindus and Muslims should have separate nations.

British took his idea of separatism and used it to separate Hindus and Muslims. In 1909, the British Government passed the Indian Council Act or Morley-Minto Reform. This cut off the Muslim masses from the National Movement. This new communal politics in India gave birth to the 'Two-Nation Theory', which was a development of Sir Syed Ahmed Khan's separatist ideology.

# CHAPTER TEST

## Short Questions

[2 Marks each]

1. Why did the British treat the Muslims badly immediately after the uprising of 1857?
2. What were the reasons for the educational and economic backwardness of the Muslims in India?
3. Give two examples to show that the British incited the Muslims against the Hindus.
4. How did the principal of Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental College encourage the Muslim communalism?
5. When was separate electorate granted to the Muslims?
6. What was the belief of the nationalist Muslims?
7. Give reasons for the establishment of the Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental Defence Association in 1893.
8. Why did Sir Syed Ahmed Khan advise the Muslims not to join the Indian National Congress?

## Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

1. There were many events that led to the formation of the Muslim League in 1906. In this context, explain the following questions.
  - (i) The British Policy of Divide and Rule. [3]
  - (ii) Loss of sovereignty by the Muslims. [3]
  - (iii) Muslim deputation sent to Viceroy Lord Minto. [4]
2. With reference to the factors responsible for the growth of separatist trend among the Muslims, briefly explain the following questions.
  - (i) Economic backwardness of India. [3]
  - (ii) Communal bias of Muslim society against Western education. [3]
  - (iii) Many Muslims supported the Partition of Bengal. [4]
3. A Muslim delegation under the Leadership of Aga Khan III was received by Lord Minto in 1906. In the context to this, answer the following.
  - (i) The demands given by the delegation. [3]
  - (ii) Assurance given by the Viceroy to the delegation. [3]
  - (iii) Morley-Minto Reforms of 1909. [4]

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

- 1.** State any two objectives of the Muslim League.

## 2016

- 2.** The Partition of Bengal and the formation of the Muslim League were two important events that had its impact on the National Struggle for independence. In this context, explain the following:
  - (i) Impact of Swadeshi and Boycott Movements as part of the Anti-Partition Movement.
  - (ii) Any three factors leading to the formation of the Muslim League.
  - (iii) Objectives of the Muslim League.

## 2013

- 3.** The reasons for the formation of the Muslim League were many. In this context, explain the following questions:
  - (i) Any three factors that led to the formation of the Muslim League in India.
  - (ii) Any three demands made by the Muslim Deputation in 1906 to the Viceroy Lord Minto.
  - (iii) What were the aims and objectives of the Muslim League?

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

# Lucknow Pact

The Era of the First World War (1914-1918) was full of enormous nationalist political activities in India. The events occurred during the First World War and the prevalent sentiments were responsible for the signing of Lucknow Pact between the Indian National Congress and the Muslim League. Lucknow Pact was an agreement that took place between the Indian National Congress (INC) and the Muslim League in 1916. The Congress and the League held their annual sessions **cumulatively<sup>1</sup>** in Lucknow.

## Events/Circumstances Leading to the Lucknow Pact

During the war, there was an important change in the attitude of the Muslims towards the British rulers. Many international events took place at that time. Britain was fighting the war against Turkey, whose ruler, Caliph was the temporal and spiritual head of all the Muslims. Large number of Muslims joined in the National Movement.

### International Events

During the war between Turkey and Italy and during the Balkan wars between 1912 and 1913, Britain maintained indifference towards Turkey. Moreover, the British occupation of Egypt and Anglo-Russian Convention of 1907, dividing Persia and bringing it under control were not accepted by the Muslims. This annoyed the sentiments of the Muslims as they believed that the British were pro-Christian and anti-Muslim. Gradually, Muslims began to support the Congress' aim of self-government.

### National Events

The partition of Bengal was cancelled. Some prominent Nationalist Muslims like Abul Kalam Azad and Ali Brothers (Maulana Mohammad Ali and Shaukat Ali ) took this as an opportunity to spread nationalist ideas among the Muslims. Azad started the Urdu newspaper *AlHilal* and Ali brothers started *Hamdard* in Urdu and *Comrade* in English to mobilise public opinion in favour of self-government. In 1913, the Muslim League passed a resolution adopting self-government as its goal.

<sup>1</sup> Cumulatively Taken as a whole; in combination.

## Relations between the Muslim League and the Congress

In 1913, Mohammad Ali Jinnah joined the Muslim League. Since the aim of the Congress and the Muslim League was identical, i.e. self-government, both the parties started to co-operate with each other. Arrest of prominent Muslim leaders under the **Seditious<sup>2</sup>** Meetings Act brought the Muslim League even closer to the Congress. **Annie Besant** and **Bal Gangadhar Tilak** played a significant role in bringing the two organisations together. Efforts were made by the leaders of both parties to reach an agreement on the scheme of political reforms in India. In 1915, both the party leaders met at Bombay, where they made a joint plan of post war constitutional reform.

In 1916, both the Indian National Congress and the Muslim League again held simultaneous sessions at Lucknow. The joint scheme of political reforms was put forward and passed by both parties in 1916.

## Main Features and Terms of the Lucknow Pact

The main features of the Lucknow Pact were as follows:

- It declared that India must cease to be a dependency and be raised to the status of self governing state as an equal party with equal rights and responsibilities as an independent unit of the empire.
- The **Imperial Legislative Council** should consist of 150 members. Of these, 4/5th were to be elected and 1/5th nominated. 1/3rd of the members were to be Muslims. The elected members of the Imperial Legislative Council were to be elected by elected members of the Provincial Legislative Council.
- The minorities should be given adequate separate representation in elected bodies.
- No bill would be introduced by a non-official member, if it affected the interest of any community. And such a bill would not be passed, if it was opposed by three-fourth of that community.
- All bills passed by the legislature should be effective unless voted by the Governor-General in council. If the same bill was passed again by the legislative council within a year, the government would be obliged to pass it.
- Extensive power was to be given to the legislature for control over financial matters.

- At least half of the members of the Viceroy's Executive Council were to be given to Indians, nominated by the elected members of the Central Legislature.
- The provinces should be given a large measure of autonomy.
- The Central Government should not unnecessarily interfere in provincial matters.
- The imperial legislature would not have control over defence, foreign affairs and political relations in India (relating to war, treaties or peace).
- The membership of the Central Legislature should be raised to 150. 1/3rd of these should be from the Muslim community elected from separate electorates.
- India Council of Secretary of State should be replaced by two permanent members under secretaries out of which one should be an Indian.

## Significance of the Lucknow Pact

The significance of the pact were as follows:

- The Lucknow Pact is considered important, as for the first time the Congress and the Muslim League had come up with a joint programme, which the British found difficult to ignore. While the Congress compromised on its secular character by accepting the scheme of a Muslim electorate, the Muslim League accepted the principles of election and the majority rule. This pact symbolised Hindu Muslim unity to both parties.
- Both the Congress and the League demanded self-government. The leaders of both the parties did not want to give the British Government any excuse for delaying political reforms.
- The Lucknow Pact was symbol of the unity between two sections of the Congress i.e. extremists and moderates. The extremists, who were expelled from the Congress in 1907, were welcomed back within the fold of the Congress.
- At that time, demand of Home Rule Movement intensified the National Movement. The British Government could not easily reject the demand for constitutional reforms.
- The Lucknow Session of the Congress was notable because at this session the radical and moderate factions were reconciled.

<sup>2</sup> Seditious The use of words or actions that are intended to encourage people to oppose a government.

## Criticism Against Lucknow Pact

Lucknow pact was criticised in the following ways:

- Some criticised that compromise demanded more sacrifice on the part of the Hindus. They thought that it marked the beginning of the appeasement of Muslims by the Congress.
- The scheme did not involve the masses, either of Hindu or of Muslim community.
- The scheme provided for Muslim representation in the council in excess of their proportion in the total population.
- The Congress failed to retain its secular character by agreeing to a scheme of communal electorate. By accepting the separate electorates for Muslims, the Congress opened the scope for future communal tension.
- The Lucknow Pact introduced a new type of communal veto. It declared that no legislature could enact a law if it was opposed by 3/4th of the members of a particular community.
- Even after this pact, the leaders of both the Hindu and Muslim community could not formulate any means to bring the masses of both communities closer to each

other. This pact failed to deliver any responsible government for India.

### CHECK POINT

- 1 Who started the Urdu newspaper *Al-Hilal*?
- 2 In which year Mohammad Ali Jinnah joined the Muslim League?
- 3 Which leaders played a significant role in bringing the Muslim League and Congress together?

## TIMELINE

Year	Important Events
1913	Mohammad Ali Jinnah joined the Muslim League The Muslim League adopted a resolution of self-government.
1914-18	First World War
1916	The Lucknow Pact
1915	Both the party's leaders met at Bombay
1919	The Government of India Act (Montague Chelmsford Reforms)

## Summary

- The First World War started in 1914 and India as a British colony involved in this war to protect the interests of the colonial rulers.
- Gandhiji, Tilak and many moderate leaders supported Indian's participation in the war, as they thought that the British Government would grant India self-government as soon as the war ended.
- Britain was fighting the war against Turkey, whose ruler, Caliph was the temporal and spiritual head of all Muslims. This annoyed the Muslims and they started supporting the demand of self-government which was an aim of the Congress.
- In 1916, both the Congress and the Muslim League signed an agreement which was known as the **Lucknow Pact**. It claimed self-government for India. According to this pact, atleast half of the members of the Governor should be Indians and the provinces should be given a large measure of autonomy.
- The Lucknow Pact is considered important as for the first time, the Indian National Congress and the Muslim League had come up with a joint programme.
- Some believed that the Lucknow Pact marked the beginning of the appeasement of Muslims by the Congress. By accepting the separate electorates for Muslims, the Congress paved the way for future communal tension.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a Short Questions [2 Marks each]

1. Which decision of the Britishers were not acceptable to the Muslims?

**Ans.** The British occupation of Egypt and Anglo-Russian Convention of 1907, dividing Persia and bringing it under control were not acceptable to the Muslims.

2. Why did the Indians help the British during the First World War?

**Ans.** Indians helped the British during the First World War with men, money and material in the hope that the British government would grant India self-government as soon as the war ended.

3. Name the founders of newspapers like 'Al- Hilal', 'Hamdard' and 'Comrade'.

**Ans.** Maulana Abul Kalam Azad started the Urdu newspaper 'Al-Hilal' and Ali brothers (Maulana Mohammad Ali and Shaukat Ali) started 'Hamdard' in Urdu and 'Comrade' in English to mobilise public opinion in favour of self-government.

4. Why was there an important change in the attitude of the Muslims towards the British rulers?

**Ans.** Britain was fighting the First World War against Turkey, whose ruler, Caliph was the temporal and spiritual head of all the Muslims. This annoyed the sentiments of the Muslims and gradually they began to support the congress aim of self-government.

5. Name the famous pact that demonstrated the unity between the Congress and the Muslim League. When was it signed? *[2016]*

**Ans.** Lucknow Pact demonstrated the unity between the Congress and the Muslim League. It was signed in 1916.

6. Which incidence brought Muslim League closer to the Congress?

**Ans.** Arrest of prominent Muslim leaders under the Seditious Meetings Act, brought the Muslim League closer to the Congress.

7. Write any two features of the Lucknow Pact.

**Ans.** Two important features of the Lucknow Pact were as follows:

- (i) It declared that India must cease to be a dependency and be raised to the status of self-governing state as an equal party with equal rights and responsibilities as an independent unit of the empire.

- (ii) The minorities should be given adequate separate representation in elected bodies.

8. What was the importance of the Lucknow Pact of 1916? *[2013]*

**Ans.** Lucknow Pact played an important role, as it brought about a unity between the Hindus and the Muslims. Both the communities agreed to compromise on some areas for their common good. Congress compromised on its secular character by accepting the Scheme of Separate Electorates for Muslims. The Muslim League accepted the principles of election and the majority rule.

9. Mention two reasons why the Lucknow Pact is considered important in the history of the Indian National Congress.

**Ans.** The two reasons were as follows:

- (i) The Lucknow Pact was important as for the first time, the Congress and the Muslim League agreed to compromise on some areas for their common good.

- (ii) The Lucknow Session and the signing of the Lucknow Pact brought about a unity between the Assertive Nationalists and the Early Nationalists.

10. What were the provisions regarding bills in Lucknow Pact?

**Ans.** There was a provision in the Lucknow Pact that no Bill would be introduced by a non-official member, if it affected the interest of any community. And, such a bill would not be passed, if it was opposed by 3/4th of that community.

11. What was the main demand of the Lucknow Pact?

**Ans.** The main demand of the Lucknow Pact was self-government at all levels of administration. This pact declared that India must cease to a dependency and be raised to the status of self-governing state as an equal party with equal rights and responsibilities as an independent unit of the empire.

12. What was the demand of Lucknow Pact, regarding reform of secretariat?

**Ans.** The Lucknow Pact demanded that, India Council of secretary of state should be replaced by two permanent under secretaries out of which one should be an Indian.

**13.** What was the significant mutual compromise between the Congress and Muslim League after Lucknow Pact?

**Ans.** After Lucknow Pact, the Congress compromised on its secular character by accepting the scheme of a Muslim electorate, while Muslim League accepted the principles of election and the majority rule.

**14.** For what, the Lucknow Session of the Congress was notable?

**Ans.** The Lucknow Session of the Congress was notable because at this session the Radical and Moderate factions were reconciled.

**15.** Which communal veto was introduced in Lucknow Pact?

**Ans.** The Lucknow Pact introduced a new type of communal veto which declared that no legislature could enact a law if it was opposed by 3/4th of the members of a particular community.

**16.** Give two ways of criticism against the Lucknow Pact.

**Ans.** The Lucknow Pact was criticised in the following ways:

- (i) Some thought this pact demanded more sacrifice on the part of the Hindus and it marked the beginning of the appeasement of Muslims by the Congress.
- (ii) The scheme did not involve the masses either of Hindu or Muslim community.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

**1.** With reference to the Lucknow Pact of 1916, answer the following questions. *(2013)*

- (i) Mention two terms of the Lucknow Pact. *[3]*
- (ii) What is the significance of this pact? *[3]*
- (iii) On what grounds this pact was criticised? *[4]*

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 71.**

(ii) Significance of the Lucknow Pact were as follows:

- The Lucknow pact is considered important as for the first time, the Congress and the Muslim League had come up with a joint programme which the British found difficult to ignore.
- Both the parties demanded for self-government.
- The moderates and the extremists faction of the Congress were reconciled at Lucknow Session.

- At that time, Home Rule Movement intensified the National Movement, thus the British rulers could not easily ignore the constitutional reforms demanded by this pact.

(iii) Lucknow Pact was criticised in the following ways:

- Critics thought that this pact demanded more sacrifice on the part of the Hindus and it marked the beginning of the appeasement of Muslims by the Congress.
- The scheme did not involve the masses from both the communities.
- It provided for Muslim representation in the council in excess of their proportion in the total population.
- The Congress failed to maintain its secular character by accepting separate electorates for Muslims.

**2.** Lucknow Pact of 1916 is considered as landmark in the history of Indian National Movement. Answer the following questions in this regard. *(2013)*

(i) Changes in the relations between the Congress and Muslim League. *[3]*

(ii) Three main features of the Pact. *[3]*

(iii) Impact of the Pact on National Movement? *[4]*

**Ans.** (i) Following changes were seen in the relations between the Congress and Muslim League:

- After Lucknow Pact Muslims began to support the Congress aim of self-government.
- Both the parties compromised with each other and the pact symbolised Hindu-Muslim unity to both parties.
- The leaders of both the parties did not want to give the British Government any excuse for delaying political reforms.

(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 71.**

(iii) Following were the impact of Lucknow Pact on National Movement:

- It discouraged the British policy of 'divide and rule'.
- The pace of the movement increased as both the parties at all India level successfully mobilised the masses.
- The Congress which was divided between moderates and radicals, now united and strengthened in position.
- The Congress acknowledged the 'Separate Electorate' concept of the Muslim League. This proved very problematic in later period.

# **CHAPTER TEST**

## **Short Questions**

**[2 Marks each]**

1. Name the leader who led the Home Rule Movement in Maharashtra.
2. Why did the Congress support the British in the First World War?
3. Mention any two factors that brought the Congress and the Muslim League closer by the year 1916.
4. What were the drawbacks of the Lucknow Pact?
5. The extremists who were expelled from Congress and joined the Congress again at which session?

## **Structured Questions**

**[10 Marks each]**

1. The First World War started in 1914 and lasted till 1918. In this context, explain the following questions.
  - (i) How far was India involved in this war?
  - (ii) State the two alliances involved in this war.
  - (iii) Why did Indian Leaders accept India's participation in this war?
2. The Lucknow Pact symbolised the unity in the Congress. In this context, answer the following questions.
  - (i) What was the Lucknow Pact?
  - (ii) How did it make unity among the Hindus and Muslims?
  - (iii) Can it be regarded as the beginning of the appeasement of Muslims in India?

# **ARCHIVES\***

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## **2016**

1. Name the famous pact that demonstrated the unity between the Congress and the Muslim League. When was it signed?

## **2013**

2. What was the importance of the Lucknow Pact of 1916?
3. With reference to the Lucknow Pact of 1916, answer the following questions?
  - (i) Mention two terms of the Lucknow Pact.
  - (ii) What is the significance of this pact?
  - (iii) On what grounds this pact was criticised?

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

# The National Movement and Mahatma Gandhi

## (1915-1947)

In India, the growth of modern nationalism is intimately connected to the anti-colonial movement. People began discovering their unity in the process of their struggle against colonialism. The sense of being oppressed under colonial power provided a shared bond that tied many different groups together. But each class and group, felt the effect of colonialism differently, their experience were varied and their notions of freedom were not always the same. The Indian National Congress under the leadership of Mahatma Gandhi tried to unite these groups within one movement.

### Mahatma Gandhi

Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi, (popularly known as Bapu or Mahatma Gandhi) was born on 2nd October, 1869 in Porbandar, a coastal town at Gujarat. His father was the Diwan (Chief-Minister) of Porbandar. He was fortunate to receive a comprehensive education, but he was a normal student. In 1883, aged 13, Gandhiji was married to Kasturba. In 1888, he went to London for higher studies in Law. In 1893, he went to South Africa and spent the next 21 years living in South Africa. At that time the system of 'Apartheid' or racial segregation was very much present in South Africa. Gandhiji founded a political movement, known as Natal Indian Congress and developed his theoretical belief in non-violent civil protest. In South Africa, Gandhiji first experimented with campaigns of Civil Disobedience and protest. Under his leadership the Indians in South Africa kept up their resistance against racism. His heroic fight for the Indians in South Africa was well-known. His novel method of mass agitation known as Satyagraha had yielded good results. In 1915, Gandhiji returned to India and involved in freedom movement.

He organised Satyagraha movement in Champaran, Kheda and Ahmedabad. Encouraged with the success of this movement he decided to launch a nationwide Satyagraha against the British Raj in 1919. This started the Gandhi era in India's freedom struggle which lasted till 1947.

## Non-Cooperation Movement

At the Calcutta Session of the Congress in September 1920, Gandhiji convinced other leaders to start a Non-Cooperation Movement in support of Khilafat and decided to start a Satyagraha on the Khilafat Issue. This Non-Cooperation programme was launched in 1920. Leaders like CR Das had doubt in accepting this programme, but Gandhiji's call for sacrifice and renunciation appealed to his emotions strongly. Thus, a Non-Cooperation Movement in support of Khilafat as well as for Swaraj was started. The Non-Cooperation Movement was the first mass based political movement under Gandhiji.

In his famous book **Hind Swaraj** (1909), Mahatma Gandhi declared that British rule was established in India with the cooperation of Indians and had survived only because of this cooperation of Indians. If Indians refuse to cooperate, British rule in India would collapse within 1 year and Swaraj would come as a result.

### Causes of the Non-Cooperation Movement

The Indian National Congress decided in 1920 to start the Non-Cooperation Movement, under the leadership of Mahatma Gandhi. This movement can be considered to be the result of the following:

#### Khilafat Movement

The First World War had ended with the defeat of Ottoman Turkey. There were rumours that a harsh peace treaty was going to be imposed on the Ottoman emperor, who was the spiritual head (Khalifa) of the Islamic world. The Muslims of India decided to force Britain to change its Turkish policy. A Khilafat Committee was formed under the leadership of Maulana Azad, Hakim Ajmal Khan and Hasrat Mohani. A young generation of Muslim leaders like the brothers Muhammad Ali and Shaukat Ali, began discussing with Mahatma Gandhi about the possibility of a united mass action of the issue. Gandhiji saw this as an opportunity of uniting Hindus and Muslims together.

#### The Rowlatt Act

When the Rowlatt Act, 1919 were passed hurriedly through the Imperial Legislative Council in spite of unanimous opposition of the Indian members, Gandhiji's patience came to an end. He decided to try to oppose it with Satyagraha. This act gave unlimited powers to the government to arrest and imprison suspects without trial for maximum 2 years.

Gandhiji wanted non-violent civil disobedience against such unjust laws, which would start with a *hartal* or strike on 6th April, 1919. Rallies were organised in various cities, workers went on strike in railway workshops and shops closed down. 6th April, 1919, was observed as Satyagraha Day when people all over the country observed fast and *hartal*. It was the first countrywide agitation by Gandhiji and marked the foundation of the Non-Cooperation Movement. During March and April 1919, the country witnessed a remarkable political awakening in India. There were hartals, processions and demonstrations, everywhere.

### Jallianwala Bagh Massacre

On 13th April, 1919, a large crowd gathered in the enclosed ground of Jallianwala Bagh. Some people came to protest against government's repressive measures while some came to attend the annual Baisakhi fair. Many of them were unaware of the **martial laws**<sup>1</sup> that was imposed.

**General Dyer** entered the area, blocked the exit points and opened fire on the crowd, killing hundreds. Dyer did this with an object to 'produce a moral effect' to create in the minds of Satyagrahis, a feeling of terror and awe. As the news spread, crowds took to the streets; there were strikes or *hartals*, clashed with the police and attacks on government buildings. The government responded with brutal repression seeking to humiliate and terrorise people. Satyagrahis were forced to rub their noses on the ground, crawl on the streets and do *salaam* (salute) to all Sahibs; people were flogged and villages were bombed. Rabindranath Tagore returned his 'Knighthood' in this protest.

### Hunter Commission

The Hunter Commission under the Chairmanship of Lord Hunter was appointed to enquire in the Jallianwala Bagh Massacre. The Commission criticised Dyer's action and said that though Dyer had acted in a harsh and ruthless way, military or legal charge would not be possible due to political reasons.

### Programmes of Non-Cooperation Movement

Four methods of resistance were adopted in the Non-Cooperation Movement which are as follows:

- (i) Surrendering of titles and offices and resignation from nominated posts in the local bodies.
- (ii) Boycott of legislatures, law courts, schools, colleges and all institutions having connection with the British.
- (iii) Boycott of foreign goods and adoption of Swadeshi.
- (iv) Boycott of election and other government functions.

<sup>1</sup> **Martial Laws** It was an imposition of direct military control over the civilians in Jallianwala Bagh.

## Supression of the Movement

The Movement was started with full enthusiasm but due to government's stern action and some violent incidence it collapsed abruptly. The British Government took stren actions to suppress the movement. All important leaders were arrested and sent to prison. Any processions or public meetings were prohibited.

### Chauri Chaura Incident

The Non-Cooperation Movement was non violent, but an unfortunate incident brought the movement to an end. On 5th February, 1922 a procession of 3000 peasants was fired upon by police at Chauri Chaura, a village in Gorakhpur district in Uttar Pradesh. Some violent incidents also happened in other parts of the country. Gandhiji, a firm believer of non-violence, was shocked and decided to call off the movement immediately.

He felt that people were not yet ready for a non-violent struggle. He thought that violence would breed violence and British could easily suppress it. Non-violence of Gandhiji was a new weapon against which British suppression would not be effective. Gandhiji was arrested on 10th March, 1922 and was sentenced to 6 years' imprisonment on the charge of sedition.

### Impact of the Movement

Though the Non-Cooperation Movement ended in apparent failure and was unable to achieve its immediate goals, but it had great historical importance. Its impacts were as follows:

- Earlier the national movement had remained the concern of the middle class and intelligentsia. But later, it became an all India Movement and Gandhiji became the symbol of the poor and the downtrodden.
- By supporting the Khilafat Movement and later, it involving Muslim masses, Gandhiji was able to unite Hindu and Muslim community. The Non-Cooperation Movement tried to remove caste distinctions and bound the whole nation in a common bond, i.e. to achieve Swaraj.
- This movement made the Congress as a nationalist organisation by adopting new, revolutionary method which was supported by the masses.
- The economic boycott during Non-Cooperation Movement affected British industries. There was a decline

in the import of cotton goods from England in 1920-22. As a consequence, the Indian textile industry flourished.

- The Non-Cooperation Movement gave political lesson to Indians. It instilled confidence in Indians. The myth of invincibility of British power no longer dominated them.
- Indians for the first time realised that passive resistance was more powerful than any weapon used by the British. Gandhiji gave the movement a direction and purpose and the masses realised that the road to freedom was not far away if they fought unitedly.

### CHECK POINT 01

- 1 When and where was Gandhiji born?
- 2 Name the act which gave the government power to suppress political activity and detain political prisoners without trial.
- 3 Mention the event which seemed as an opportunity of uniting Hindus and Muslims in our country to Mahatma Gandhi.
- 4 For what purpose the Hunter Commission was appointed?

## Civil Disobedience Movement

After the failure of Non-Cooperation Movement, Gandhiji felt that Satyagrahis were needed to be properly trained before they would be ready for mass struggles. Some leaders within Congress were tired of mass struggle and wanted to participate in the election to the provincial councils that had been set-up by the Government of India Act of 1919. They felt it was important to oppose British policies within the councils. CR Das, Motilal Nehru, NC Kelkar formed the Swaraj Party within the Congress to argue for a return to council politics. But younger leaders like Jawaharlal Nehru and Subhas Chandra Bose pressed for more radical mass agitation and for full independence.

In the situation of internal debate and discussion two factors again shaped Indian politics towards the late 1920s. These were:

- (i) First was the effect of the worldwide economic depression.
- (ii) Second was agricultural prices which began to fall from 1926 and collapsed after 1930.

## Factors Leading to the Civil Disobedience Movement

Following factors led to start the Civil Disobedience Movement by Mahatma Gandhi:

### Formation of the Simon Commission

As the demand for agricultural goods fell and exports declined, peasants found it difficult to sell their harvest and pay their revenue. Under these circumstances, Simon Commission was constituted under Johan Simon to review the functioning of the constitutional system in India and suggest changes. Indian leaders opposed the Commission as there were no Indians in it. When the Commission arrived in India in 1928, it was greeted with the slogan 'Simon Go Back'. All parties including the Congress and the Muslim League participated in the demonstrations.

### Demand of Purna Swaraj

In October 1929, the Viceroy, Lord Irwin announced a vague offer of **dominion status<sup>2</sup>** for India in an unspecified future and a Round Table Conference to discuss a future constitution. In December 1929, under the Presidency of Jawaharlal Nehru, the Lahore Congress formalised the demand of Purna Swaraj or full independence for India. It was also declared that 26th January, 1930 would be celebrated as the Independence Day, when people were to take a pledge to struggle for complete independence.

### The Salt March

Mahatma Gandhi found salt as a powerful symbol that could unite the nation. On 31st January, 1930 Gandhiji sent a letter to Viceroy Irwin stating eleven demand, i.e. 'Eleven Points Ultimatum'. Some demands were of general interest and some specific demands of different classes form industrialists to peasants.



The Salt March

The most stirring of all was the demand to abolish the salt tax. Salt was one of the most essential food items and was consumed by both rich and poor. Along with 78 followers, Gandhiji started his March from Sabarmati Ashram on 12th March, 1930 for Dandi, the coastal town of Gujarat. On 6th April, he reached Dandi and ceremonially violated the salt law, by manufacturing salt by boiling sea water. The March was over 240 miles. This marked the beginning of the Civil Disobedience Movement.

### The Programmes of the Civil-Disobedience Movement

The Civil-Disobedience Movement adopted following programmes:

- Definance or violation of salt laws.
- Non-payment of taxes and revenues.
- Boycott of foreign cloth and British goods of all kinds.
- Boycott of liquor.

### Impact of the Civil-Disobedience Movement

The Civil-Disobedience Movement had some significant impacts on India's freedom struggle. These were:

- It created political consciousness and a deep sense of patriotism in the minds of the people.
- It brought women out of their homes and made them equal partners in the freedom struggle.
- It made the British Government to realise the need for constitutional reform. As a consequence the Government of India Act, 1935 was passed.

### Gandhi-Irwin Pact

The First Round Table Conference was held in 1930, but was boycotted by the Congress. The Congress was convinced that the Indian princes and representatives of communal parties would not support the demand of the Congress for complete independence and a joint electorate. Further, the Congress wanted the summoning of a Constituent Assembly to draft a constitution for India. The British Government refused to accept the demand of the Congress, thus the Congress boycotted it.

The British Government realised that they could not suppress the genuine feelings of nationalism. So, they wanted to compromise. Sir Tej Bahadur Sapru and Dr Jayakar became the mediators between the British and the Congress. As a result, Gandhiji, Jawaharlal Nehru and other leaders were released from the jail in Januray 1931. An understanding was formed between Gandhiji and Lord Irwin. Viceroy Lord Irwin and Gandhiji signed an agreement on 5th March, 1931. This agreement is known as Gandhi-Irwin Pact.

<sup>2</sup> Dominion Status It is a status enjoyed by other dominions of British common wealth, such as Australia or Canada.

The features of the Gandhi-Irwin Pact were as follows:

- According to this Pact, the Viceroy agreed to release all political prisoners except those convicted of violence and killing.
- The government agreed to withdraw all ordinances and end prosecution.
- The Viceroy agreed to permit peaceful picketing of liquor as well as opium shops and to allow people living within some distance of the sea shore to collect or manufacture salt free from any tax.
- Gandhiji on his part agreed to discontinue the Civil Disobedience Movement and agreed to participate in the Second Round Table Conference.

### Second Round Table Conference

Mahatma Gandhi was appointed as the sole representative of the Congress to the Second Round Table Conference. It was held from 7th September to 1st December 1931. The representatives of other groups like Muslims, Sikhs, Christians, Princes and planters were more interested to safeguard their narrow interests than fighting for the country's interest. The conference sidelined the major issues and devoted most of its time to communal problems. The British Government refused to consider the basic nationalist demand of freedom on the basis of immediate grant of dominion status. There was no agreement regarding communal representation and disgusted Gandhiji returned empty handed to India.



Second Round Table Conference, 1931

### CHECK POINT 02

- 1 Who founded 'Swaraj Party'?
- 2 When did Simon Commission arrive in India?
- 3 Who announced the offer of dominion status?
- 4 When was the Gandhi-Irwin Pact signed?

## Quit India Movement

A meeting of the Congress Working Committee was held at Wardha on 14th July, 1942. In this meeting, the Quit India Resolution was adopted. It was formally passed on 8th August, 1942 at the Bombay session of the Congress.

On this day at Gowalia Tank Maidan in Bombay, Gandhiji called for 'Do or Die'. The British Government were also prepared to act. Almost the entire Congress leadership was imprisoned without trial within hours after Gandhiji's speech.

The Congress was banned as an illegal organisation and the press was censored. The news of the arrest of all leaders shocked the entire nation. Their anger and resentment was expressed through numerous agitations, hartals, processions and demonstrations in all over the country. The movement took different shapes in different areas. People burnt government building, post offices, police stations, etc. They disconnected railway, telegram and telephone lines.

Inspired by Gandhiji's call for 'Do or Die', the people were ready to make sacrifices. Students, peasants, workers and women all took part in this movement. The British took this situation as a challenge and used force to suppress it. Due to brutal oppression and to avoid getting arrested many leaders were forced to go underground. Among them were Achyutrao Patwardhan, Sucheta Kripalani, Aruna Asaf Ali, Biju Patnaik, Jayaprakash Narayan, etc. Some of these leaders belonged to the Congress Socialist Party and Forward Bloc. During this period, Jayaprakash Narayan emerged as a great leader.

### Causes of Quit India Movement

#### Cripps Mission (1942) and its Failure

Prime Minister Winston Churchill sent Sir Stafford Cripps, a seasoned diplomat with some proposals of constitutional reforms. These reforms as follows:

- Promise of dominion status after the war.
- An elected Constituent Assembly for framing the Constitution of free India.
- Proposals of an interim government during the war.
- Indian leaders were invited to participate in the council of their country and the common wealth.
- If any British Province did not wish to join the federation, it could retain its present position and the British Government would give it the same status as the rest of the Indian Union.

- The powers of the Viceroy would remain as hitherto and he would be responsible for the defence of the country. Gandhiji called this proposal a ‘post-dated cheque in a fast failing bank’.

This proposal did not satisfy the leaders. Failures of Cripps Mission led to disappointment and bitterness among Indians. Gandhiji felt that it was the correct time to launch the final struggle for freedom.

### The Threat of the Japanese

In 1942, the Japanese Army attacked Myanmar and marched towards India. This threat (of a Japanese invasion) convinced the Indian leaders of the need to throw away the Britishers from India immediately. On 9th August, 1942, all prominent leaders like Gandhiji, Nehru, Patel, etc were arrested but the others like JP Lohiya, Aruna Asaf Ali, Usha Mehta, etc continued the revolution for struggle. Violence spread throughout the country. Several Government offices were destroyed and damaged, the telegraph wires were cut and communication was paralysed.

### Quit India Resolution

The Quit India Resolution was adopted by the Congress Working Committee at Wardha in July 1942. The British put down the movement with ruthless brutality. Gandhiji and other important leaders were arrested and the Congress was declared illegal. The resolution pledged that “British rule in India must end immediately”.

### Significance of the Quit India Movement

The Quit India Movement though short-lived and suppressed by the British, is one of the greatest mass movements of historical significance. Its significance can be explained through the following:

- This movement was a mass movement joined by all walks of life like the Hindus, Muslims, Sikhs, Christians, Parsis, etc. This movement clearly indicated the capacity of the Indian people for sacrifice and determined struggle. It displayed the depth of national feelings.
- This movement attracted world attention. The pressure of public opinion in USA and Britain in favour of India’s independence was so strong that Britain found it difficult to withhold the independence of India after the war was over.
- The mass upsurge in this movement shook the basic foundations of the British Raj in our country. It was evident that the British would no longer find it to rule India against the wishes of Indians.

- The Quit India Movement developed the feelings of political awakening and consciousness among masses. It showed Indian’s anger and hatred against imperialism.
- Suppression of this movement resulted to a temporary set back to the national movement and there was hardly any political activity till the end of the Second World War in 1945.

### CHECK POINT 03

- Where was the ‘Quit India Resolution’ passed?
- Who gave the slogan ‘Do or Die’?
- In which year the Japanese Army attacked Myanmar?

## TIMELINE

Year	Important Events
1915	Mahatma Gandhi returned to India.
1916	Gandhiji travelled to Champaran in Bihar to inspire the peasants against oppressive plantation system.
1917	Gandhiji organised Satyagraha in Kheda district, Gujarat.
1918	Gandhiji went to Ahmedabad to organise Satyagraha among cotton mill workers.
1919	Khilafat Committee was formed in Bombay, hartal against Rowlatt Act.
19th April, 1919	Jallianwala Bagh Massacre
1920	Gandhiji convinced other leaders of the need to start a Non-Cooperation Movement in support of Khilafat as well as for Swaraj in Calcutta Congress Session.
1921	Non-Cooperation and Khilafat Movement launched.
5th February, 1922	Incident of Chauri Chaura; Gandhiji withdrew Non-Cooperation Movement.
1928	The Simon Commission arrived in India.
1929	Lord Irwin announced a vague offer of ‘dominion status’ for India.
1929	Congress adopted the demand for ‘Purna Swaraj’.
6th April, 1930	Gandhiji begins Civil Disobedience Movement by breaking Salt Law at Dandi.
1930	First Round Table Conference

1931	Gandhiji ends Civil Disobedience Movement.	1935	Government of India Act.
1931	Gandhi-Irwin Pact	1941	Second World War started.
7th Sep-1st Dec,		1942	Cripps Mission
1931	Second Round Table Conference.	8th August, 1942	Quit India Movement resolution was passed in the Bombay Session.
1932	Poona Pact signed between Dr Babasaheb Ambedkar and Mahatma Gandhi. Civil Disobedience Movement relaunched.	1945	The end of Second World War.

## SUMMARY

- In India, the growth of modern nationalism developed through the struggle against British colonialism.
- Mahatma Gandhi was the person who first united the people of India under the banner of Indian National Movement.
- Gandhiji returned to India in 1915 from South Africa. After arriving India, he successfully organised Satyagraha Movements in Champaran, Kheda and Ahmedabad (1916-1917).
- Gandhiji wanted non-violent civil disobedience against Rowlatt Act (1919). Under this unjust law, government could arrest and imprison suspects without trial for maximum 2 years.
- On 13th April, 1919 Jallainwala Massacre was happened. Rabindranath Tagore rejected his 'Knighthood' in protest of this killing.
- The Non-Cooperation Khilafat Movement began in 1919. The movement started with middle class participation in the cities which included students, headmasters, teachers, lawyers, etc.
- By supporting the Khilafat Movement, Gandhiji was able to unite Hindus and Muslims. This movement gave political lesson to Indians.
- In 1920, at the Calcutta Session, the Congress passed the resolution to start the Non-Cooperation Movement in support of Khilafat Movement. It was the first mass based political movement under Gandhiji.
- In 1920, Indian National Congress started the Non-Cooperation Movement under the leadership of Mahatma Gandhi.
- The Non-Cooperation Movement began with the surrender of titles and honorary offices, boycott of civil services, army, police, courts and legislative councils, schools and foreign goods.
- But a violent incident at Chauri Chaura on 5th February, 1922 made Gandhiji to call-off the movement. Gandhiji was a firm believer of non-violence and believed that violence would breed violence and the British could easily suppress it.
- The Non-Cooperation Movement was a great success. Strikes, *hartals* and demonstrations spread all over the country. In December, 1921 at Ahmedabad Session, the Congress decided to continue the Non-Cooperation Movement.
- Simon Commission (1928) was rejected by all, as it had no Indian members in it. In October, 1929 Lord Irwin announced a vague offer of dominion status for India.
- In December, 1929 under the Presidency of Jawaharlal Nehru, the Lahore Congress formalised the demand of 'Purna Swaraj' or full independence for India.
- On 12th March, 1930 Gandhiji with his followers started his March from Sabarmati Ashram for Dandi, the coastal town of Gujarat. This marked the beginning of the Civil Disobedience Movement.
- The Civil Disobedience Movement spread all over the country. Everywhere *hartals*, demonstrations and picketing of foreign goods were organised on a large scale.
- The Congress boycotted the First Round Table Conference (1930) as the British Government refused to accept its demands of complete independence and a joint electorate.
- Lord Irwin and Gandhiji signed Gandhi-Irwin Pact on 5th March, 1931.
- Second Round Table Conference was held from 7th September to 1st December, 1931. The conference sidelined the major issues and devoted most of its time to communal problems.
- The Quit India Movement began in August, 1942. Gandhiji called for 'Do or Die'.
- All the prominent leaders were arrested. The movement spread all over India. Due to brutal oppression many leaders were forced to go underground.
- The mass upsurge of this movement shook the basic foundations of the British Raj. It developed the feelings of political awakening and consciousness among masses.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a Short Questions [2 Marks each]

**1.** Against which policy of the British Government Mahatma Gandhi did his struggle in South Africa?

**Ans.** Gandhiji's struggle in South Africa was against the policy of racial discrimination followed by the British Government.

**2.** When did Gandhiji return to his homeland and from where?

**Ans.** Mahatma Gandhi returned to his homeland in January, 1915. He came back from South Africa where he fought for the Indian community against racial discrimination imposed by the British Government.

**3.** State the two methods of political struggle evolved by Mahatma Gandhi as a part of the National Movement.

**Ans.** The two methods of political struggle evolved by Mahatma Gandhi were as follows:

- (i) Gandhiji promoted the use of Satyagraha which emphasised the power of truth and the need to search for truth.
- (ii) Gandhiji advocated the Non-Violence Movement. According to him, non-violence is not a negative, but a positive and active force.

**4.** What do you mean by Satyagraha?

**Ans.** The idea of Satyagraha emphasised the power of truth and the need to search for truth. This idea developed during Gandhiji's struggle against racial discrimination in South Africa.

**5.** When 'Satyagraha day' was observed?

**Ans.** 6th April, 1919 was observed as 'Satyagraha day' when people all over the country observed fast and hartal. It marked the foundation of Non-Cooperation Movement.

**6.** When did Jallianwala Bagh Massacre happen?

**Ans.** On 13th April, 1919, the Jallianwala Bagh Massacre happened.

**7.** Why was the Rowlatt Act (1919) passed?

**Ans.** The Rowlatt Act was passed to curb the growing upsurge in the country. In spite of opposition from the Indians, the Rowlatt Act was passed in March, 1919.

**8.** State any two provisions of the Rowlatt Act passed by the Government in 1919? [2017]

**Ans.** Following were the provisions of the Rowlatt Act:

- (i) The government could arrest any person without a warrant.
- (ii) The Governor-General was empowered to give effect the Act to any area.

**9.** What was the Khilafat Movement? [2017]

**Ans.** The Khilafat Movement (1919-20) was a movement to express Muslim support for the Caliph of Turkey against the allied powers particularly Britain. The Muslims demanded that the Caliph Sultan must retain sufficient territories, so that he would be able to defend the Islamic Faith.

**10.** Under whose leadership Khilafat Committee was formed?

**Ans.** Khilafat Committee was formed under leadership of Maulana Azad, Hakim Ajmal Khan and Hasrat Mohani.

**11.** Name the leaders of the Khilafat Movement that was launched in India to champion the cause of the Caliph of Turkey. [2013]

**Ans.** Mohammed Ali and Shaukat Ali were the leaders of the Khilafat Movement.

**12.** What was Hunter Commission?

**Ans.** The Hunter Commission under the Chairmanship of Lord Hunter was appointed to enquire about the Jallianwala Bagh Massacre. The Commission criticised Dyer's action, but mentioned that legal prosecution against Dyer would not be possible due to political reasons.

**13.** When and where was the resolution of Non-Cooperation Movement passed by the Congress?

**Ans.** The resolution of Non-Cooperation Movement was passed by the Congress at Nagpur Session in December 1920.

**14.** Mention two methods of resistance adopted in the Non-Cooperation Movement.

**Ans.** Two methods of resistance adopted in the Non-Cooperation Movement were as follows:

- (i) Surrendering of titles and offices and resignation from nominated posts in the local bodies.
- (ii) Boycott of foreign goods and adoption of Swadeshi.

**15.** Name some institutions which were set-up during the Non-Cooperation Movement?

**Ans.** Some institutions which were set-up during the Non-Cooperation Movement were as follows:

- (i) Jamia Millia Islamia of Aligarh
- (ii) Bihar Vidyapeeth
- (iii) Kashi Vidyapeeth
- (iv) Gujarat Vidyapeeth

**16.** Name some famous personalities who renounced their titles during the Non-Cooperation Movement?

**Ans.** Rabindranath Tagore, Mahatma Gandhi, Subramania Iyer and Jamnalal Bajaj renounced the titles and honours conferred upon them by the British.

**17.** Suggest an important feature of the Non-Cooperation Movement.

**Ans.** Earlier National Movement had remained the concern of the middle class and intelligentsia. It was for the first time; National Movement became an all India Movement and Gandhiji became the symbol of the poor and downtrodden.

**18.** Why was the Simon Commission rejected by the Congress? *[2015]*

**Ans.** The Simon Commission was rejected by the Congress on the following basis:

- (i) All members of this Commission were Europeans (whites) and no Indian was associated with it.
- (ii) This was seen by the Congress as a violation of the principle of self-determination and a deliberate insult to the self respect of the Indians.

**19.** Why was the Simon Commission boycotted by the Indians? *[2013]*

**Ans.** The Simon Commission was boycotted by the Indians because:

- (i) It was boycotted everywhere because all its members were Englishmen.
- (ii) The government showed no inclination towards accepting the demand for Swaraj.

**20.** Why was the Congress session held at Lahore in 1929 significant to the National Movement?

**Ans.** The Congress session held at Lahore in 1929 was significant to the National Movement because the resolution of 'Purna Swaraj' was passed here.

**21.** Mention any two events which led to the Civil Disobedience Movement of 1930? *[2018]*

**Ans.** The two events were as follows:

- (i) A resolution was passed in the Lahore Session of Congress in 1929, which declared Poorna Swaraj to become the objective of the Congress.
- (ii) An 'Eleven Points Ultimatum' was served by Gandhiji to the British Government. After the government's failure to negotiate, Gandhiji started the Civil Disobedience Movement.

**22.** Why did Mahatma Gandhi start his historic March to Dandi? *[2017]*

**Ans.** Mahatma Gandhi started his historic Dandi March to break the salt law and start the Civil Disobedience Movement.

**23.** On what assurances did Gandhiji withdraw the Civil Disobedience Movement?

**Ans.** Gandhiji's withdrawal of the Civil Disobedience Movement was on the basis of the following assurances from the British Government:

- (i) Withdrawal of all the ordinances and the prosecutions.
- (ii) Releasing the political prisoners, except those guilty of violence and killing.

**24.** Mention any one provision of the Gandhi-Irwin Pact signed in 1931. *[2014]*

**Ans.** One of the provisions of the Gandhi-Irwin Pact 1931 was that the Viceroy agreed to release all political prisoners except those convicted of violence and killing.

**25.** Mention atleast two proposals given by Cripps Mission.

**Ans.** Two proposals given by Cripps Mission (1942) were as follows:

- (i) Promise of dominion status after the Second World War.
- (ii) Proposals of an interim government during the war.

**26.** "The mantra is 'Do or Die'. We shall either free India or die in the attempt". Who said this and when?

**Ans.** Mahatma Gandhi said this on 8th August, 1942 at Gowalia Tank Maidan in Bombay. On the same day, Quit India Resolution was passed at the Bombay Session of the Congress.

**27.** What was the most significant feature of the Quit India Movement?

**Ans.** The most significant feature of the Quit India Movement was that it was a mass movement joined by all walks of life like the Hindus, Muslims, Sikhs, Christians, Parsis etc. It displayed the depth of national feelings.

**28.** Name some leaders who were forced to go underground during the Quit India Movement.

**Ans.** Some prominent leaders like Achyutrao Patwardhan, Sucheta Kripalani, Aruna Asaf Ali, Biju Patnaik, Jayaprakash Narayan were forced to go underground during the Quit India Movement.

**29.** Who was Shyama Prasad Mukherjee?

**Ans.** Shyama Prasad Mukherjee was a prominent leader of Hindu Mahasabha in Bengal. He strongly criticised the Quit India Movement and assured the British to defeat the Movement in Bengal.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

**1.** Gandhiji introduced new ideas in politics and adopted new methods to give a new direction to the Political Movement. In this context, answer the following questions. *[2012]*

- (i) Gandhiji's Doctrine of Satyagraha. *[3]*
- (ii) Gandhiji's social ideas. *[3]*
- (iii) Which mass struggle was launched by him on non-violent lines in 1920? Explain in brief the programmes of such a campaign. *[4]*

**Ans.** (i) **Gandhiji's Doctrine of Satyagraha** Gandhiji introduced the Satyagraha, which was a method of agitation and protest based on truth and non-violence. It suggested that if the cause was true, if the struggle was against injustice, then physical force was not necessary. A Satyagrahi could win the battle through non-violence. It was a passive resistance consisting of defiance of laws, non-payment of taxes, boycott of government institutions etc.

Gandhiji's Satyagraha Movement was directed against the British system of exploitation and not against the British people individually or collectively. These experiments in Satyagraha brought Gandhiji into a close touch with the masses, with both the peasants in the rural areas and the workers in the urban areas. In course of time, he became the symbol of the poor and the downtrodden, whose authenticity could not be questioned or doubted.

(ii) **Gandhiji's Social Ideas** The whole philosophy of Gandhiji was based on non-violence. According to Gandhiji, 'Truth and non-violence is the weapon of strong, mighty and powerful individual'. Gandhiji always used mass movements as weapon of protest. He realised that movement which involved rural, urban, men, women, educated, uneducated are more liable to have an effect.

He launched many movements like Non-Cooperation, Civil Disobedience, Quit India Movement for gaining freedom, but none of them was violent. During the Non-Cooperation Movement, he suspended the movement, when it was on its zenith just because of the Chauri-Chaura Incident, in which 22 policemen were burnt alive. The movements under his leadership shook the basic foundation of British Raj in our country. The British Government realised that it would not be possible to rule India against the wishes of Indians.

(iii) The importance and power of the organised masses was realised by Gandhiji. In the year 1920, Non-Cooperation Movement was started by Gandhiji.

For programmes Refer to chapter theory page no. 77.

**2.** In 1919, Gandhiji plunged into India's struggle for freedom. He guided the affairs of the Indian National Congress with new techniques. Through various National Movements, he got the public support to win freedom for India. In this context, explain the following. *[2009]*

- (i) Which resolution was passed on 8th August, 1942 leading to a mass struggle on non-violent lines? State any two reasons behind the launching of this movement. *[3]*
- (ii) The impact of the Non-Cooperation Movement in India's struggle for freedom. *[3]*
- (iii) The reasons leading to the Non-Cooperation Movement. *[4]*

**Ans.** (i) On 8th August, 1942, the All India Congress Committee passed the Quit India Resolution. The proposal of Quit India Movement was adopted at Wardha in July, 1942. Reasons behind the launching of Quit India Movement were as follows:

- Japan declared war against Britain and America on 7th December, 1941. Its sensational victories in the opening months of 1942 obliged the British Government to resolve the political deadlock in India.

- On the night of 9th August, the British Government arrested many prominent leaders like Gandhiji, Maulana Azad, Sardar Patel, Jawaharlal Nehru and other members of the Congress Working Committee and sent them to Pune. This hasty action of the government led to the movement immediately.
- (ii) The Impacts of Non-Cooperation Movement in India were as follows:
  - It generated a desire for freedom and inspired people to challenge the colonial rule.
  - It fostered Hindu-Muslim unity, which could be seen in the merge of Khilafat issue with this movement.
  - This movement gave a new boost to nationalism in India at its annual session in Nagpur in December, 1920.
  - The demand for Swaraj became much popular.
  - It transformed the Indian National Congress from a deliberative assembly into an organisation for action.
- (iii) Reasons that led to the Non-Cooperation Movement were following:
  - In the year of 1918-1919, the mill workers of Ahmedabad were on a strike and received the support of Gandhiji.
  - On receiving a report of Sedition Committee headed by Justice Rowlatt, the Anarchical and Revolutionary Crimes Act was introduced in the Central Legislature in February, 1919. The purpose of the bill, was to curb the growing upsurge in the country. This act authorised the government to imprison any person without trial and convict him in a court.
  - It was at such a time that General Dyer banned public meetings. In spite of this ban, there was a peaceful crowd gathered at the Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar on 13th April, 1919 to protest against the arrest of leaders like Dr Saifuddin Kitchlu and Dr Satyapal. Without much warning, General Dyer ordered the army to open fire at the peaceful crowd. According to official report 379 people were killed and 1137 were injured in the incident. This event shocked Gandhiji and he decided to stop every cooperation with the British Government at every level.
  - The Muslims of India decided to force Britain to change its Turkish policy and a Khilafat Committee was formed. Gandhiji saw this as an opportunity i.e to unite Hindu-Muslim Community. So, he decided to start a Non-Cooperation Movement in support to Khilafat Movement.

- 3.** In the Nagpur Session (1920), the Congress ratified the resolution to launch the Non-Cooperation Movement under the leadership of Gandhiji. In this context, answer the following questions. [2014]

- (i) What were the objectives which the Non-Cooperation Movement sought to achieve? [3]
- (ii) What do you understand by the term Non-Cooperation? [3]
- (iii) Explain the impact of the Non-Cooperation Movement in India's struggle for freedom. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Mahatma Gandhi urged the Indian National Congress to launch a Non-Cooperation Movement on three issues (objectives).

These were as follows:

- Redressal of the wrongs committed in Punjab that entailed the Jallianwala Bagh Massacre and the atrocities related to the martial law.
- Supporting the Khilafat issue by restoring the old status of the Sultan of Turkey.
- Accomplishment of Swaraj by boycotting election and other government functions and organisations and foreign goods.

(ii) Non-Cooperation is a way of protesting, in which one does not cooperate with the evil-doer, Gandhiji asked the people not to assist the Foreign Government to rule over them. In his book, 'Hind Swaraj' Mahatma Gandhi declared that the British Rule was established in India with the cooperation of Indians and had survived only because of this cooperation. If Indians refused to cooperate, British rule in India would collapse within one year and Swaraj would come.

(iii) Impact of the Non-Cooperation Movement were as follows:

- The Indian National Movement, for the first time in history, acquired a real mass base with the participation of different sections of Indian society such as peasants, workers, students, teachers and women.
- It generated a desire for freedom and inspired people to challenge the colonial rule. The movement undetermined the power and prestige of the British Government. It created an anti-British feeling in the country.

- It transformed the Indian National Congress from a deliberative assembly into an organisation for action. This movement became the organiser and leader of the masses in their national struggle.
  - It fostered Hindu-Muslim unity, which could be seen in the merger of Khilafat issue with this movement. Gandhiji was determined to emancipate the poor and the oppressed. Removal of untouchability and promotion of Khadi became essential tools in Gandhi's struggle against the British rule. Message of Swadeshi was spread.
  - The most important landmark of this movement was the massive participation of peasants and workers. People made contributions to finance the movement. Specially women made huge contributions to the National Fund by offering their jewellery.
- 4.** Through various National Movements, Gandhiji mobilised public support to win freedom for India. In this context, state the following. (2016)
- (i) Any three causes for Gandhiji to launch the Non-Cooperation Movement? [3]
  - (ii) The name given to the uprising of 1942. Two reasons for launching this mass uprising. [3]
  - (iii) The impact of the Non-Cooperation Movement in India's freedom struggle. [4]
- Ans.** (i) Following were the causes for Gandhiji to launch the Non-Cooperation Movement:
- The passing of the Rowlatt Act and the Jallianwala Bagh tragedy gave a new turn to Indian Politics. Gandhiji became firm in the policy of non-cooperation.
  - The Khilafat Committee accepted the suggestion of non-cooperation and asked Gandhiji to lead the movement.
  - The Montague Chelmsford Reform of 1919 could not satisfy the Congress. The actual scheme of reforms fell far short of nationalists demands.
- (ii) The name given to the uprising of 1942 was 'Quit India Movement'. Two reasons for launching this mass uprising were following:
- Failure and rejection of the Cripps proposals.
  - There was a general demoralisation of the congress leaders. Gandhiji was desperate and wanted to call for "do-or-die" after the failure of the individual satyagraha.
- (iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 78.
- 5.** The Simon Commission was appointed in November, 1927 by the British Government. Subsequently, the Civil Disobedience Movement began. In this context, answer the following questions. (2010)
- (i) Why was the Simon Commission appointed by the British Government? Why did the Congress boycott the Commission? [3]
  - (ii) The Civil Disobedience Movement was launched by Gandhiji with his famous Dandi March on 12th March, 1930. Mention the significance of this historic event. [3]
  - (iii) Why did Gandhiji call off the Civil Disobedience Movement and later renew it? [4]
- Ans.** (i) In November, 1927, the British Government appointed the Indian Statutory Commission, which was popularly known as the Simon Commission (after the name of its Chairman Sir John Simon) to investigate the need for further constitutional reforms. This commission was composed by the seven British members of Parliament. Simon Commission was boycotted by the Congress on the following bases:
- All members of this commission were Europeans (whites) and no Indian was associated with it. This was seen as a violation of the principle of self-determination and a deliberate insult to the self-respect of the Indians.
  - The position of Governor-General remained unaffected.
  - No provision to abolish separate electorate but rather extended to other communities as well.
- (ii) Significance of the Dandi March were as follows:
- The movement spread rapidly. Violation of Salt Laws over the country was soon followed by defiance of forest laws in Maharashtra, Karnataka and the Central Provinces and the refusal to pay the rural Chaukidari tax in Eastern India.
  - In the North-West Frontier Province, the Pathans adopted the policy of Non-Cooperation under the leadership of Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan.
  - The British Government was put out of gear in many places example, Midnapore in Bengal.
  - The monopoly of the British over the salt was abolished by this movement.

(iii) The Civil Disobedience Movement was called off by Gandhiji because of the Gandhi-Irwin Pact, signed between Gandhiji and Viceroy Lord Irwin. In this pact, Irwin agreed to some of the demands of Gandhiji, like the abolition of salt tax, release of political prisoners, permit peaceful picketing of liquor etc. After this, Gandhiji agreed to call off the Civil Disobedience Movement and attend the Second Round Table Conference in London. When Gandhiji came back from London, he renewed the movement again because of the failure of the Second Round Table Conference. The British Government refused to consider the basic nationalist demand of freedom on the basis of immediate grant of dominion status. There was no agreement regarding communal representation. Disgusted Gandhiji returned back to India empty handed and called for the Civil Disobedience Movement.

**6.** The Civil Disobedience Movement was significant in the history of the National Movement. In this context, write briefly on the following points. [2011]

- (i) The circumstances leading to the Civil Disobedience Movement. [3]
- (ii) The Second Round Table Conference. [3]
- (iii) The Gandhi-Irwin Pact. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Following circumstances led to the Civil-Disobedience Movement:

- Simon Commission arrived in India in 1928 to review the functioning of the constitutional system in India and suggest changes. This commission was opposed by Indians because no Indians were included in it.
- At Lahore Session of Indian National Congress in 1929, the Congress formally demanded 'Purna Swaraj'.
- Gandhiji started Dandi March on 12th March, 1930 and violated salt laws on 6th April, 1930 by manufacturing salt.

(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 80.**

- (iii) Viceroy Lord Irwin and Gandhiji signed an agreement on 5th March, 1931. Following were the provisions of this pact:
- The Viceroy agreed to release all political prisoners except those convicted of violence and killing.
  - The government agreed to withdraw all ordinances and end prosecution.
  - The Viceroy agreed to permit peaceful picketing of liquor as well as opium shops and to allow

people living within some distance of the sea shore to collect or manufacture salt free from any tax.

- Gandhiji on his part agreed to discontinue the Civil Disobedience Movement and agreed to participate in the Second Round Table Conference.

**7.** The Congress Working Committee passed the famous Quit India Resolution at Wardha in July, 1942. With reference to this, answer the following questions. [2013]

- (i) What were the reasons for the passing of this resolution? [3]
- (ii) What was the British Government's reaction to the Quit India Movement? [3]
- (iii) What was the impact and significance of this movement? [4]

**Ans.** (i) Following were the factors for the passing of this resolution:

- **Failure of the Cripps Mission** The Cripps Mission did not bring with its promise of Independence in the near future. The Muslim League opposed the creation of a single union. The proposals did not accept Pakistan specifically. The Indians were also not happy at the proposals of the Cripps Mission because proposals contained such provisions which could divide India into hundreds of independent provinces. Gandhiji opposed the declaration and described the Cripps proposals as a Post-dated cheque in a fast failing bank.

- **The Threat of Japanese** In the year of 1942, the Japanese Army attacked Myanmar and marched towards India. The threat of Japanese invasion on India convinced the Indian leaders that for India's safety, the British should withdraw from India immediately, Gandhiji asked the British to quit India because an orderly and peaceful withdrawal the British could save India both from the internal anarchy and also external aggression.

**(ii) Reaction of the British Government to the Quit India Movement**

- The Government resorted to severe measures to crush the Quit India Movement. The press was completely puzzled. The demonstrating crowds were machine gunned and even bombed from the air. Prisoners were tortured. The police and secret police reigned. Over 100000 people were arrested by the end of 1942. The military took

over many towns and cities. Rebellious villages had to pay huge sum as punitive fines and the villagers had to undergo mass floggings.

- India had not witnessed such intense repression since the First War of Independence, 1857. Gandhiji was detained at the Agha Khan Palace in Pune and other prominent leaders were sent to jail in Ahmednagar Fort. In the end, the government succeeded in crushing the movement.

### (iii) Impact and Significance of the Quit India Movement

- It demonstrated the depth of the nationalist feelings in India and the great capacity for struggle and sacrifice that the people had developed.
- It was obvious that the British would no longer found it possible to rule India against the wishes of the people.
- It was a mass uprising before attaining Independence. People from all the parts of India took part in the processions and demonstrations. The Hindus, Muslims, Sikhs, Christians and Parsis and even people from the Princely States participated.
- The emergence of Parallel Government in various places of India like Ballia in Uttar Pradesh, Midnapur in Bengal and Satara in Maharashtra took place.
- The Quit India Movement led to the strengthening of the Congress Socialist Party because of its magnificent and heroic role in the movement. Its socialist ideas had an impact on the Indian National Congress.

**8.** The Quit India Resolution in 1942 was one of the final calls given by Gandhiji for the British to leave India. Moving towards Independence, Lord Mountbatten's Plan was significant. In this context, answer the following questions. *[2018]*

- (i) State two reasons for the launching of the Quit India Movement. *(3)*
- (ii) Give any three effects of the Quit India Movement launched by Gandhiji in 1942 that was significant to the last phase of the National Movement of India. *(3)*
- (iii) Give any four clauses of the Mountbatten Plan of 1947. *(4)*

**Ans.** (i) Two reasons for launching the Quit India Movement were:

- **Congress Ministers Resignation** Ministries were formed by Congress in the United provinces, Central provinces, Odisha, Bihar, Madras and Bombay.

In protest against the decision of the government to join the Second World War and its refusal to liberate India, the Congress resigned.

- **The August Offer** The British government made a new offer to the Congress known as the August Offer on 8th August, 1940. Congress rejected the offer as too much constitutional independence was given to the minorities. The League also rejected the offer because it did not talk about the formation of the separate state of Pakistan.

(b) Three effects of the Quit India Movement launched by Gandhiji in 1942 that was significant to the last phase of the National Movement of India were:

- This movement developed the feelings of political awakening and consciousness among masses. It showed Indian's anger and hatred against imperialism.
- The mass upsurge in this movement shook the basic foundations of the British Raj. It was evident that the British would no longer be able to Rule India against the wishes of Indians.
- This movement clearly indicated the capacity of the Indian people for sacrifice and determined struggle. It displayed the depth of national feelings.

(iii) Four clauses of the Mountbatten Plan of 1947 were:

- India would be divided into two dominions i.e. India and Pakistan.
- The Princely State would have the choice of joining either of the two dominions or to remain independent.
- A plebiscite would be held in the North-West Frontier Province to ascertain whether the people in the area wanted to join India or not.
- The Provinces of Assam, Bengal and Punjab were also to be divided.

**9.** The period between 1920 and 1947 was marked with major events and reforms that finally led us to our Independence. In this context, answer the following questions.

- (i) State three provisions of the Gandhi-Irwin Pact as a result of the Civil Disobedience Movement. *(3)*
- (ii) Reasons for the protest of Rowlatt Act. *(3)*
- (iii) Chauri-Chaura Incident. *(4)*

**Ans.** (i) Refer to Q. no. 6 (iii) Structured Question.

(ii) Following were the protest of Rowlatt Act:

- It was implemented to restrict fundamental rights like freedom of expression by giving more privileges to police.
- This act authorised the government to imprison for a maximum period of two years, without trial, any person suspected of terrorism.

(iii) Refer to chapter theory page. no. 78.

### C Picture Based Questions

[10 Marks each]

1. Answer the following questions based on the picture given below.



(i) Identify the two male personalities in the above picture. Mention the ideological tenets of the Indian leader. [3]

(ii) Explain the reason behind the merging of Khilafat Movement with Non-Cooperation Movement. [3]

(iii) What was the consequence of the withdrawal of Non-Cooperation Movement within the Congress Party? [4]

**Ans.** (i) The two male personalities in the above picture are Lord Mountbatten and Mahatma Gandhi. After the First World War, the National Movement in India became more vigorous and mass-based under the leadership of Mahatma Gandhi.

The main ideological tenets of Gandhi were as follows:

- **Satyagraha** It is a method of agitation and protest based on truth and non-violence. Gandhiji believed that the dharma of non-violence could unite all Indians.
- **Non-violence** Gandhiji's whole philosophy was based on it. According to him, non-violence was the weapon of strong, mighty and powerful individual.

- **Swadeshi** This literally means one's own country. Gandhiji was in favour of using 'Swadeshi' goods and boycott of foreign goods to harm English trade and to boost up cottage industries of our country.

- **Constructive Programme** To attain Swaraj some constructive programmes were important. These were removal of untouchability, upliftment of women, village development, Khadi and Cottage industries, communal harmony, Hindu-Muslim unity etc.

(ii) The Khilafat Movement (1919-1924), was a pan-Islamic, political protest campaign launched by Muslims in British India to influence the British Government and to protect the Ottoman empire during the aftermath of First World War. The First World War had ended with the defeat of Ottoman Turkey. There was a fear that the power of the spiritual head of the Islamic world (Khalifa) would be curtailed. To defend his power, a Khilafat Committee was formed in Bombay in 1919. The Khilafat leaders put pressure upon the British Government give better treatment to Turkey.

The Khilafat Movement was launched by Muhammad Ali and Shaukat Ali. Gandhiji saw this as an opportunity to bring Muslims under the umbrella of a unified National Movement.

At the Calcutta Session of the Congress in September 1920, he convinced other leaders to start a Non-Cooperation Movement in support of Khilafat Movement.

(iii) The Non-Cooperation Movement was non-violent. But the violent incident in Chauri Chaura disappointed Gandhiji and he called off the movement. Frustrated and disappointed with Gandhiji's decision, a section of the Congress led by Deshbandhu Chitta Ranjan Das and Motilal Nehru organised a separate party known as the 'Swaraj Party' within the Congress in December, 1922.

- It started a new line of political activity and returned to the constitutional mode of agitation. Its leaders believed that the Congress should contest elections to the legislatures and oppose the British Government from within the council. The other section of leaders including Jawaharlal Nehru, Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel, Dr Rajendra Prasad etc strongly opposed the idea of council entry. They were known as No-Changers.

- The Congress allowed the Swarajists to function as a political party in the legislature and carry out its programmes. The Swarajists contested elections to the imperial and provincial legislatures and won many seats. They disapprove the British claim that the reforms were acceptable to a large section of the people. The Swaraj party opposed the government and on many occasions the Viceroy and the Governors had to use their special powers to keep up the administration. The year 1925-27 saw demoralisation and decline of the Swarajists.
- 2.** In 1930, Mahatma Gandhi's demands were rejected by the British, as a result of which he launched the Civil Disobedience Movement. In this context, explain the following questions. [2015]
- (i) Name the famous march undertaken by Gandhiji. Where did he begin this march? State two of its features. [3]
  - (ii) The Gandhi-Irwin Pact as a consequence of this Movement. [3]
  - (iii) Significance of the Second Round Table Conference. [4]
- 
- Ans.** (i) 'Dandi March' was undertaken by Gandhiji in response to British disapproval of his 'Eleven Point Ultimatum'. He began this march from Sabarmati Ashram to Dandi, the coastal town of Gujarat.
- The two features of 'Dandi March' were as follows:
- It marked the beginning of the Civil Disobedience Movement.
  - By Dandi March, Gandhiji broke the salt laws because the salt-tax affected all sections of society especially poor.
- (ii) The Civil Disobedience Movement resulted in the signing of a pact between Gandhiji and Lord Irwin, the viceroy in March, 1931. The British Government realised that they could not suppress the feelings of nationalism in Indians. So, they wanted to compromise. Sir Taj Bahadur Sapru and Dr Jayakar became the mediators between the British and the congress. As a result Gandhi, Nehru and other leaders were released from the jail. Viceroy agreed to release all political prisoners except those convicted of violence and killing. Peaceful picketing of liquor, opium and foreign goods were allowed and manufacturing salt for the people living near sea coast was also allowed according to this act.
- (iii) The second Round Table Conference was a significant event. It was held in London during the Viceroyalty of Lord Willington from September to December, 1931. Gandhiji attended it on the behalf of Indian National Congress. The conference became a deadlock on the minority issue and the question of independence or setting up a responsible government receded into the background. The British Government refused to consider the basic nationalist demand of freedom on the basis of immediate grant of 'Dominion Status'.

# **CHAPTER TEST**

## **Short Questions**

**[2 Marks each]**

- 1.** Gandhiji's struggle in South Africa was against which policy of the British Colonial Power?
- 2.** What would a Satyagrahi do against injustice?
- 3.** Define the term Swadeshi.
- 4.** Mention any two positive aspects of the Non-Cooperation Movement.
- 5.** What was the importance of Chauri-Chaura incident?
- 6.** How can you justify the reaction of the Indians to the Simon Commission?
- 7.** Why was the Rowlatt Act passed?

## **Structured Questions**

**[10 Marks each]**

- 1.** Various circumstances were responsible for the Non-Cooperation Movement started by Gandhiji. In this context, write the short notes on the following.
  - (i) Rowlatt Act
  - (ii) Jallianwala Bagh Tragedy
  - (iii) Khilafat Movement
- 2.** Trace the programme and progress of the Civil Disobedience Movement under the leadership of Mahatma Gandhi with reference, to the following.
  - (i) Demand of Purna Swaraj
  - (ii) Salt March
  - (iii) Gandhi-Irwin Pact
- 3.** State the importance of the following.
  - (i) The Communal Award, 1932
  - (ii) Value based politics of Gandhiji
  - (iii) The spread of the Civil Disobedience Movement

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

1. Mention any two events which led to the Civil Disobedience Movement of 1930?
2. The Quit India Resolution in 1942 was one of the final calls given by Gandhiji for the British to leave India. Moving towards Independence, Lord Mountbatten's Plan was significant. In this context, answer the following questions.
  - (i) State two reasons for the launching of the Quit India Movement.
  - (ii) Give any three effects of the Quit India Movement launched by Gandhiji in 1942 that was significant to the last phase of the National Movement of India.
  - (iii) Give any four clauses of the Mountbatten Plan of 1947.

## 2017

3. What was the Khilafat Movement?
4. State any two provisions of the Rowlatt Act passed by the Government in 1919?
5. Why did Mahatma Gandhi start his historic march to Dandi?

## 2016

6. Why was the Congress session held at Lahore in 1929 significant to the National Movement?
7. Through various National Movements, Gandhiji mobilised public support to win freedom for India. In this context, state the following.
  - (a) Any three causes for Gandhiji to launch the Non-Cooperation Movement?
  - (b) The name given to the uprising of 1942? Two reasons for launching this mass uprising.
  - (c) The impact of the Non-cooperation Movement in India's freedom struggle.

## 2015

8. Why was the Simon commission rejected by the Congress?
9. In 1930, Mahatma Gandhi's demands were rejected by the British, as a result of which he launched the Civil Disobedience Movement. In this context, explain the following questions.



- (i) Name the famous march undertaken by Gandhiji. Where did he begin this march? State two of its features.
- (ii) The Gandhi-Irwin Pact as a consequence of this Movement.
- (iii) Significance of the Second Round Table Conference.

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

## **2014**

- 10.** Mention any one provision of the Gandhi-Irwin Pact signed in 1931.
- 11.** In the Nagpur Session, 1920, the Congress ratified the resolution to launch the Non-Cooperation Movement under the leadership of Gandhiji. In this context, answer the following questions.
  - (i) What do you understand by the term Non-Cooperation?
  - (ii) What were the objectives which the movement sought to achieve?
  - (iii) Explain the impact of the Non-Cooperation Movement on India's struggle for freedom.

## **2013**

- 12.** Why was the Simon Commission boycotted by the Indians?
- 13.** Name the leaders of the Khilafat Movement that was launched in India to champion the cause of the Caliph of Turkey.
- 14.** The Congress Working Committee passed the famous 'Quit India' resolution at Wardha in July, 1942. With reference to this, answer the following questions.
  - (i) What were the reasons for the passing of this resolution?
  - (ii) What was the British Government's reaction to the 'Quit India Movement'?
  - (iii) What was the impact and significance of this movement?

# Forward Bloc and Indian National Army (INA)

## Formation of Forward Bloc

The Forward Bloc was formed on 3rd May, 1939 by Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose. In July, 1939 Subhash Chandra announced the committee of the Forward Bloc. It had Subhash Chandra as President, SS Cavesheer from Punjab as its Vice-President, Lal Shankarlal from Delhi as its General-Secretary and many more prominent members. In August the same year, Bose started publishing a newspaper titled Forward Bloc.

He travelled around the country for gaining support for his new political party. On 20th-22nd June, 1940 the Forward Bloc held its first All India Conference in Nagpur. In this conference, the Forward Bloc was declared as a socialist<sup>1</sup> political party and the date of 22nd June was considered as the founding date of the party by the Forward Bloc itself. The conference passed a resolution that declared 'All Power to the Indian People' urging militant action for struggle against the British colonial rule. Subhash Chandra was elected as the President of the party and HV Kamath as the General Secretary.

## The Objectives of the Forward Bloc

Subhash Chandra founded the Forward Bloc to carry on the freedom struggle. The objectives of the Forward Bloc were:

- The main objective of the Forward Bloc was to unite all the left-wing sections within the Congress and to develop an alternative leadership.
- The Forward Bloc's immediate objective was the liberation of India with the support of workers, peasants, youths and all radical organisations.
- The Forward Bloc supported militant action for struggle against the British.
- The Forward Bloc aimed to establish a socialist society. For this, it adopted some measures, which are as follows:
  - (i) State - planning for the reorganisation of agriculture and industry on socialist lines.

<sup>1</sup> Socialist Believes in or supports socialism.

- (ii) Abolition of landlordism, i.e. Zamindari System.
- (iii) Making the 'Right to Work' as a fundamental right of the citizens.
- (iv) Providing workers several kinds of benefits.
- (v) A new monetary and credit system.
- (vi) World peace, disarmament and friendly relations with socialist nations like Russia.

## Formation of the Indian National Army (INA)

### Tokyo Conference

It was held at Tokyo by South-East Asian Indian Nationalist groups between 28th and 31st March, 1942. The Indian Independence League, the Indian council and other small local Indian association and clubs joined the conference. Some decisions were taken in this conference which were as follows:

- To form an Indian National Army (INA).
- To expand and strengthen Indian Independence league in all Asian countries controlled by Japan.
- To hold a conference of the representatives of Indians at Bangkok in June 1942.

### Bangkok Conference

The Bangkok Conference was held from 15th June to 23rd June, 1942. It was attended by representatives from East-Asian countries. Indian prisoners of war, under Japan volunteered to fight for the freedom of India. Rash Bihari Ghosh was elected as President of the conference. He hoisted the tricolour flag and formally inaugurated the Indian Independence League. It aimed to fight for the attainment of complete and immediate independence of India.

On 1st September, 1942, the Indian National Army was formally established. Captain Mohan Singh became its Commander in Chief. The Bangkok Conference invited Subhash Chandra Bose to lead the movement. In this conference, it was also decided that the Indian Independence League (IIL) would make arrangement for the supply of men, material and money required by the Indian National Army.

Japanese Government was requested to supply the necessary arms and equipment. A council of action was founded for carrying out all necessary actions in connection with the independence movement.

### The Objectives of the INA

The aim of the INA was to overthrow the British rule in India, with Japanese assistance. Initially, the INA was composed of Indian prisoners of war captured by Japan, but later a large number of volunteers from Indian population in Burma and Malaya joined it.

Subhash Chandra Bose stated the objectives of the INA which were as follows:

- To mobilise all the forces effectively to lead Indian people to regain their freedom.
- To prepare the Indian people inside and outside India for a modern armed struggle against the British.
- To organise a provisional government of free India.

### Contribution of Subhash Chandra Bose in INA

On 4th July, 1943 Subhash Chandra Bose assumed the leadership of the Indian Independence League (IIL) and the Indian National Army. He was fondly called 'Netaji' by the soldiers and the civilians. He gave the call to his soldiers, 'Give me blood and I shall give you freedom'. His battle cry<sup>2</sup> was, 'Dilli Chalo', 'Jai hind'. He set up recruitment and training departments to strengthen the army. Fighting brigades were established which had names like Gandhiji, Azad, Nehru, Subhash, Rani Jhansi (exclusive brigade of women which was led by Captain Lakshmi Sahgal).

### Provisional Government of Free India

Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose founded the provisional or interim government of free India at Singapore on 21st October, 1943. The government was recognised by nine world powers including Germany, Italy, Japan and Burma. As the head of the Provisional Government, Netaji declared war against Britain. Netaji's Provisional Government got its first independent territory when Japan handed over Andaman and Nicobar Island to Netaji on 6th November, 1943. He named them 'Shaheed' and 'Swaraj' islands respectively.

### Declaration of War

On 23rd October, 1943, the cabinet of the Provisional Government called a meeting where it was decided to start war against Britain and USA. Netaji himself broadcast this decision on radio. He set up two quarters in Rangoon and Singapore. By March 1944, the INA 'Azad Hind Fauj' with the Japanese army had reached the very frontier of India.

<sup>2</sup> Battle Cry A shout that soldiers used to give in battle to encourage their own army or to frighten the enemy.

They entered Indian territory and captured Mowdok, a place near Chittagong. Then it marched towards Kohima in Nagaland. The Indian Tricolour flag was hoisted on the hilltops of Kohima.

### The Surrender of the INA

At that time Japanese had to withdraw their forces from the Indo-Burma border because of their war with the USA in the pacific regions. Further, the early arrival of monsoon hampered the supply of ration and ammunition to the army and the INA failed to seize Imphal. These two incidents forced the INA to surrender to the British troops.

The Indian Independence Movement in the South-East Asia came to an end. The bombardment on Hiroshima and Nagasaki (6th and 9th August, 1945) forced Japan to surrender on 15th August, 1945. It was supposed that Netaji was killed in an aeroplane accident on his way to Tokyo on 18th August, 1945.

### The INA Trials

After the war, the British Government in India decided to prosecute some INA officers like Colonel Prem Sehgal, Colonel Gurbaksh Singh Dhillon and Major General Shah Nawaz Khan for **treason**<sup>3</sup>. These INA trials held in a public trial at Red Fort.

This gave rise to a wave of anger and protests among Indians. The court martial held the accused guilty and they were convicted. These trials attracted much publicity and public sympathy for the defendants who were perceived as patriots in India. The trio was defended by the INA Defence Committee formed by the Congress. This Committee had legal experts like Jawaharlal Nehru, Bhullabhai Desai, Kailashnath Katju and others. The British Government had no option but to release them.

### Achievements of INA

The significant achievements of INA were as follows:

- The Indian National Army did not succeed fully in achieving its objective, but it set an inspiring example of patriotism and sacrifice before the Indian people.
- The heroic deeds and sacrifices of the soldiers of INA infused political consciousness among the Indian forces.
- INA marked the last major campaign when the Congress and the Muslim League worked together. The battle of the INA was not affected by communal divisions. There were Hindus, Muslims, Sikhs in the INA who fought together as Indians.

- The battle of INA inspired uprisings in the Armed forces of the country. The Indian Navy rose in revolt at Bombay, Calcutta, Madras and Karachi in February 1946. These revolts destroyed the very foundation of the British Raj.
- Historians believed that the INA trials and its effects brought a decisive change in British policy. So INA played a significant role in the final decision of the British Government to quit India.

### CHECK POINT

- 1 When was the Forward Bloc formed?
- 2 Mention any one objective of the INA.
- 3 Who gave the call of 'Dilli Chalo'?
- 4 Who were prosecuted in INA trials?

## TIMELINE

Year	Important Events
23rd Jan, 1897	Subhash Chandra Bose was born.
1920	Subhash Chandra passed Indian Civil Service Examination.
1938	Subhash Chandra was elected as the President of the Congress at Haripura Session.
1939	Subhash Chandra was elected as the President of the Congress at Tripuri Session.
3rd May, 1939	Forward Bloc was formed by Subhash Chandra Bose.
20th-22nd June, 1940	First All India Conference of the Forward Bloc held in Nagpur.
22nd June, 1940	Considered as the founding date of the Forward Bloc by itself.
July, 1940	Subhash Chandra was arrested under the 'Defence of India Rules'.
17th Jan, 1941	Subhash Chandra escaped from house arrest and went to Peshwar.
1942	Japan had occupied the British colonies of Singapore, Malaya and Burma.
28th-31st March, 1942	Tokyo Conference
15th-28th Jan, 1942	Bangkok Conference
1st Sep, 1942	Indian National Army was established.
1943	Subhash Chandra left for Japan.

<sup>3</sup> Treason It is the action of betraying one's country.

4th July, 1943	Subhash Chandra assumed the leadership of INA and IIL.	6th-9th Aug, 1945	Bombardment on Hiroshima and Nagasaki.
21st Oct, 1943	Subhash Chandra founded the Provisional Government of free India at Singapore.	18th Aug, 1945	Netaji was killed in a plane crash.
23rd Oct, 1943	Provisional Government called meeting where it was decided to start war against Britain and USA.	Feb, 1946	Indian Navy revolted in Bombay, Calcutta, Madras and Karachi.

## Summary

- On 3rd May, 1939, Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose founded the new political party, Forward Bloc.
- In its first conference at Nagpur (1940), the Forward Bloc passed the resolution 'All Power to the India People' and adopted militant action for struggle against the British.
- The initial aim of the Forward Bloc was to unite all the left-wing sections within the Congress and to develop an alternative leadership.
- The Forward Bloc declared itself as a socialist party.
- The Forward Bloc wanted to reorganise agriculture and industry, abolish landlordism, introduce new monetary and credit system , achieve world peace, etc.
- In the Tokyo Conference of IIL, decision about the formation of Indian National Army was taken.
- People in South-East Asia formed many associations with the objective of working for the liberation of India.
- Such an organisation was Indian Independence League (IIL). Its leader was Rash Bihari Ghosh.
- In Bangkok Conference of IIL, Rash Bihari Ghosh was elected as President of the Conference. He hoisted the tricolour flag and inaugurated the IIL.
- Further it was decided that the Indian Independence League (IIL) would make arrangement for the supply of men, material and money required by the Indian National Army (INA).
- On 1st September, 1942, the Indian National Army (INA) was established and captain Mohan Singh became its Commander-in-Chief.
- On 4th July, 1943, Subhash Chandra assumed the leadership of IIL and INA.
- Netaji set up recruitment and training departments to strengthen the army. Fighting brigades were named after Gandhi, Azad, Nehru, Subhash and Rani of Jhansi.
- Subhash Chandra founded the Provisional or Interim Government of free India at Singapore on 21st October, 1943.
- On 23rd October, 1943, the Cabinet of the Provisional Government decided to start war against Britain and USA. With the help of Japanese Army, INA captured Mowdok, a place near Chittagong.
- After that INA marched towards Kohima and hoisted tricolour flag on the hilltops of Kohima. But Japan had to withdraw their troops at that time as they became busy to struggle with USA in the Pacific regions.
- The bombardment on Hiroshima and Nagasaki forced Japan to surrender and the Second World War came to an end.
- The public trials of INA officers gave rise to a wave of anger and protest in all over India. The British Government had no option but to release them.
- The great contribution of the INA to our freedom struggle was to inspire patriotism and to infuse political consciousness among the Indians. It forced the British Government to take decision to quit India.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a Short Questions [2 Marks each]

1. By which name Subhash Chandra Bose was popularly known?

**Ans.** Subhash Chandra Bose was popularly known as 'Netaji'. Netaji means 'respected leader'. Due to his fearless spirit and endeavour to liberate India, people called him 'Netaji'.

2. When and where did Subhash Chandra Bose was born?

**Ans.** Subhash Chandra Bose was born on 23rd January, 1897 in a Bengali family settled at Cuttack in Orissa.

3. Who founded the Forward Bloc? Mention any one of its objectives. [2015]

*Or* Name the party formed by Subhash Chandra Bose. What was its immediate objective? [2012]

**Ans.** The Forward Bloc was formed by Subhash Chandra Bose. The main objective of the Forward Bloc was liberation of India with the support of workers, peasants, youth and other organisations.

4. How was the Indian Independence League formed? Who was its President?

**Ans.** From the different associations of South-East Asia, who were sympathetic about India's freedom struggle, the Indian Independence League was formed. Rash Bihari Ghosh was its President.

5. Mention any two objectives of the Indian National Army? [2017]

*Or* State two important objectives of the Indian National Army. [2014]

**Ans.** The two important objectives of the Indian National Army were as follows:

- To organise an armed revolution and to fight the British army with modern arms.
- To organise a Provisional Government of Free India in order to mobilise all the forces effectively.

6. How were the prisoners reorganised as Indian National Army after the capture of British Indian Soldiers by Japanese?

**Ans.** Japanese captured Indian soldiers in South-East Asia. During this time Britain's defeats aroused great hopes among Indian soldiers, which led to the formation of

the Indian Independence League by Rash Bihari Ghosh. A conference which was held in Tokyo, where decision was taken to form an Indian National Army.

7. Who was elected the President of the Bangkok conference? Which organisation was formally inaugurated at this conference?

**Ans.** Rash Bihari Ghosh was elected the President of Bangkok Conference. In this conference, Rash Bihari hoisted the tricolour flag and formally inaugurated the Indian Independence League.

8. Mention two contributions of INA (Indian National Army) to the Indian National Movement. [2016]

**Ans.** Two contributions of INA to the Indian Freedom Movement were as follows:

- The INA inspired uprisings in the armed forces of the country. The Indian Navy rebelled in February, 1946 at Bombay, Calcutta, Madras and Karachi.
- The struggle of INA officers took the form of a massive movement against the trial of the soldiers and officers of the INA.

9. Name the military organisation revamped by Subhash Chandra Bose.

**Ans.** Indian National Army (INA) was the military organisation revamped by Subhash Chandra Bose with Japanese Support. The INA under Bose was a model of diversity by region, ethnicity, religion and even gender.

10. Mention two contributions of Subhash Chandra Bose to India's freedom struggle. [2011]

**Ans.** Two contributions of Subhash Chandra Bose to India's freedom struggle were as follows:

- Subhash Chandra Bose was a die-hard freedom fighter, a new party called Forward Bloc was established by him, having the objective of bringing all the left-wing parties under one roof.
- Subhash Chandra Bose gave the call to his soldiers, 'Give me blood and I shall give you freedom'. He gave the slogans 'Dilli Chalo' (March to Delhi) and 'Jai Hind' (Victory of India). His view inspired Indians younger generations.

**11.** Where and when the Provisional Government of free India was set-up?

**Ans.** The Provisional Government of free India was set-up at Singapore on 21st October 1943 by Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose.

**12.** Which countries recognised the Provisional Government founded by Subhash Chandra Bose?

**Ans.** Nine countries including Germany, Italy, Japan and Burma recognised the provisional government founded by Subhash Chandra Bose.

**13.** When did Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose declared war against the British?

**Ans.** On 23rd October, 1943, the Cabinet of the Provisional Government decided to start a war against Britain and USA. Netaji himself broadcast this decision on radio.

**14.** When was Netaji died?

**Ans.** It is supposed that Netaji died in an aeroplane accident on his way to Tokyo on 18th August, 1945.

**15.** Name some prominent legal experts who defended the trials of INA officers at Red Fort.

**Ans.** Some prominent legal experts like Jawaharlal Nehru, Bhulabhai Desai, Kailashnath Katju defended the trials of INA officers at Red Fort.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

**1.** In the political scenario of 1939, important developments took place in India and abroad. In this context, answer the following questions.

(i) Who was the founder of the 'Forward Bloc'? Why was this organisation formed? [3]

(ii) Write about the main objectives of the Forward Bloc. [3]

(iii) How the Indian National League and Indian National Army were formed? [4]

**Ans.** (i) Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose was the founder of the Forward Bloc. Subhash Chandra gained popularity in Indian politics. He was elected as the President of the Indian National Congress twice - in 1938 (Haripura Session) and in 1939 (Tripuri Session). But Mahatma Gandhi did not like Subhash Chandra's political view and opposed his Presidentship. As a result, Subhash Chandra had to resign from the Congress. To unite all the left-wing sections within Congress and to develop an alternative leadership Netaji Subhash Chandra on 3rd May, 1939 founded the new political party, the Forward Bloc.

The Forward Bloc was formed for the liberation of India with the support of workers, peasants, youths and other organisations.

(ii) The objectives of the Forward Bloc were:

- To unite all the left-wing sections within the Congress under one head.
- To liberate India with the support of workers, peasant, youths and all radical organisations.
- To vehemently oppose the British Government by adopting militant action.
- To establish a socialist society by reorganising agriculture and industry, abolishing landlordism and introducing new monetary and credit system.

(iii) People living in the South-East Asia territories were free from European domination and sympathetic about Indian National Movement. They started some associations with the objective of working for the liberation of India. From these associations, the Indian Independence League (IIL) was born, Rash Behari Ghosh was its leader.

It aimed to fight for the attainment of complete and immediate independence of India. In the Tokyo conference (28th and 31st March, 1942) of the Indian Independence League decision about the formation of an Indian National Army (INA) was taken. Then the Indian National Army (INA) or Azad Hind Fauj was formed by Indian Nationalists on 1st September, 1942 in South-East Asia during the Second World War. It became the military army of Indian Independence League.

**2.** With reference to the Indian National Army, answer the following questions.

(i) Explain three measures taken by Subhash Chandra Bose to establish a socialist society. [3]

(ii) What were the three decisions taken at the Tokyo Conference? [3]

(iii) Explain any three contributions of Subhash Chandra Bose to the National Movement. [4]

**Ans.** (i) The three measures taken by Subhash Chandra Bose to establish a socialist society were as follows:

- Reorganisation of agriculture and industry on socialist lines.
- Abolition of the Zamindari System as landlordism.
- Introduction of a new Monetary and Credit System.

(ii) At the Tokyo conference, the decisions taken were as follows:

- To expand and strengthen the Indian Independence League of overseas Indians in all Asian countries.

- To form under the overall command of the league an Indian National Army (INA), an army for India's liberation.
  - To hold a conference at Bangkok to consolidate these decisions.
- (iii) Contributions of Subhash Chandra Bose
- Subhash Chandra Bose was a die-hard freedom fighter. A new party called the Forward Bloc was established by him, with the objective of bringing all the left-wing parties under one roof in 1939.
  - Subhash Chandra Bose gave the call to his soldiers, 'Give me blood and I shall give you freedom'. His battle cries were 'Dilli Chalo' (March to Delhi) and 'Jai Hind' (Victory of India) inspired the young generation immensely.
  - He got full support from the Japanese political and military leaders. He received the islands of Andaman and Nicobar from the Japanese and renamed them 'Shaheed' and 'Swaraj' respectively. The Provisional Government of India was founded at Singapore on 21st October, 1943. This government was recognised by nine world powers.

### C Picture Based Question

[10 Marks each]

1. With reference to the picture given below answer the following. (2018)



- (i) Identify the personality. (3)  
(ii) Where and when the Provisional Government of Free India was set-up? Who was the head of this government? (4)  
(iii) Explain the contribution of Subhash Chandra Bose in INA. (3)

Or

- (i) Identify the leader given in the picture. Name the political party and the Military Organisation that he formed. (3)  
(ii) State any three objectives of the political party that he founded. (3)  
(iii) Mention any four objectives of the Military Organisation that he formed. (4)

**Ans.** (i) The above picture belongs to Subhash Chandra Bose, one of the most respected and prominent leader of Indian Freedom Movement. He was popularly known as 'Netaji'. He was elected President of the Indian National Congress twice, but due to difference with Mahatma Gandhi, he had to resign. He founded a new political party, the Forward Bloc in 1939. It was a socialist party and wanted to consolidate the left-wing, within the Congress.

(ii) Subhash Chandra Bose founded the Provisional Government of Free India at Singapore on 21st October 1943. He proclaimed the formation of the Arzi-Hukumat-e-Azad Hind on the Provisional Government of Free India (Azad Hind). The Indian National Army was declared the Army of Azad Hind, which was to fight for independence of India from Britain. Subhash Chandra Bose was the head of this government. He also decided to lead the Indian National Army towards India. As the head of the Provisional Government Netaji declared war against Britain and USA. Netaji himself broadcast this decision on radio.

(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 96.

- Or**
- (i) The given picture belongs to Subash Chandra Bose, one of the most respected and prominent leader of Indian Freedom Movement. Forward Bloc was a political party and the Indian National Army was a military organisation formed by him.
- (ii) Three objectives of the political party Forward Bloc were:
- The main objective of the Forward Bloc was to unite all the left-wing sections within the Congress and to develop an alternative leadership.
  - Immediate objective was the liberation of India with the support of workers, peasants, youths and all radical organisation.
  - It aimed to establish a socialist society.
- (iii) Four objectives of the Indian National Army were:
- To mobilise all the forces effectively to lead Indian people to regain their freedom.
  - To prepare the Indian people inside and outside India for a modern armed struggle against the British.
  - To organise a provisional government of free India.
  - To fight the British army with modern arms and weapons.

# CHAPTER TEST

## Short Questions

[2 Marks each]

1. Why did Subhash Chandra Bose resign from the Congress Chairmanship in 1939?
2. Mention any one irreconcilable difference between Gandhiji and Subhash Chandra Bose.
3. Give one reason which led to a split in the Congress in 1939.
4. State two important objectives of the Forward Bloc.
5. What standpoint was taken regarding the Indian Independence League in Tokyo Conference?
6. Who was the first Commander-in-Chief of the INA?
7. When and by whom was 'Provisional Government of Free India' proclaimed?
8. Name any two top ranking officers of the INA who stood upon the historic trial as traitors in the Red Fort at Delhi.

## Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

1. The differences between Gandhiji and Subhash Chandra Bose led to the formation of the Forward Bloc. In this context explain the following questions.
  - (i) The main difference between Subhash Chandra Bose and Mahatma Gandhi. [3]
  - (ii) The formation of the Forward Bloc. [3]
  - (iii) The main objectives of the Forward Bloc. [4]
2. The Bangkok conference was held in June, 1942. In context of this, answer the following questions.
  - (i) Who was elected as the President of the Conference? [3]
  - (ii) Which organisation was formally inaugurated at this conference? [3]
  - (iii) Why did Subhash Chandra take the responsibility of both INA and IIL? [4]
3. Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose and the INA occupy a high position in the history of India's National Movement. In this context, answer the following questions.
  - (i) What were the objectives of the INA? [3]
  - (ii) What were the INA's major achievements and victories? [3]
  - (iii) What is the significance of INA's heroic struggle against the British Raj? [4]
4. With reference to the Indian National Army, answer the following questions.
  - (i) Explain three measures taken by Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose to establish a socialist society. [3]
  - (ii) What were the three decisions taken at the Tokyo conference? [3]
  - (iii) Explain any four contributions of Subhash Chandra Bose to the National Movement. [4]

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

- 1.** With reference to the picture given below answer the following.



- (i) Identify the leader given in the picture. Name the political party and the Military Organisation that he formed.  
(ii) State any three objectives of the political party that he founded.  
(iii) Mention any four objectives of the Military Organisation that he formed.

## 2017

- 2.** Mention any two objectives of the Indian National Army.

## 2016

- 3.** Mention any two contributions of the INA to the National Movement.

## 2015

- 4.** Who founded the Forward Bloc? Mention any one of its objectives.

## 2014

- 5.** State two important objectives of the Indian National Army.

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

# Independence and Partition of India

After the Quit India Movement, most of the Indian leaders were in jail. Gandhiji was released in May, 1944. During this period, Jinnah gained popularity and separatist tendencies developed.

In Europe, the Second World War ended in May, 1945. At that time, Mr Winston Churchill was the Prime Minister of Britain. His handling of the India-issue was severely criticised. Also public opinion in USA was strong that the constitutional deadlock<sup>1</sup> in India should be resolved. For this, Churchill called Lord Wavell, the Viceroy of India to London. Lord Wavell invited all Indian leaders to hold discussions with him in a conference at Shimla on 25th June, 1945.

Lord Wavell's Plan was not accepted by the Muslim League. They claimed that the right to appoint Muslim members should be enjoyed by the Muslim League only. But the Congress did not support this, as the Congress represented both the Hindus and the Muslims. However, no agreement could be reached on the plan. The non-compromising attitude of Congress and the Muslim League led to the failure of the Wavell's Plan.

## The Cabinet Mission of India

On 26th July, 1945, after 3 weeks of the Shimla Conference, Mr Clement Attlee became Prime Minister of Britain by replacing Mr Churchill. On 15th March, 1946, Mr Clement Attlee, announced in the House of Commons that the tide of nationalism was rising very high in India, so Britain had to take positive action. He declared that a Cabinet Mission would be sent to India to facilitate the process of transfer of power and to help the Indian leaders to decide the form of government that would suit them.

The Cabinet Mission which arrived on 24th March, 1946 consisted of three cabinet members. They were Mr Pethic Lawrence (the Secretary of State), Sir Stafford Cripps (President of the Board of Trade) and Mr AV Alexander (the First Lord of Admiralty). They discussed with different Indian leaders representing all sections and parties.

The mission tried to bring about a formula which would be acceptable to both the Congress and the Muslim League. Most of the leaders favoured a United India, whereas Mr Jinnah and the members of the Muslim League stuck to their demand for a separate nation 'Pakistan'. The mission submitted a proposal on 16th May, 1946 popularly known as the **Cabinet Mission Plan**.

<sup>1</sup> Deadlock A complete failure to reach agreement or settle an argument.

## The Main Clauses of the Cabinet Mission

The Cabinet Mission gave the following clauses:

- India should be a union or a federation of all the British Provinces and Indian States.
- The Union Government would deal with foreign affairs, defence and communications.
- All subjects other than union subjects and all residuary powers would vest<sup>2</sup> in the provinces.
- The union would have its own executive and legislature composed of members elected by and sent by all provinces.
- The British Provinces would be divided into three groups. **Group 'A'** consist of Madras, Bombay, Uttar Pradesh, Central Provinces, Bihar and Orissa; **Group 'B'** would consist Punjab, North-West Frontier Province and Sindh and **Group 'C'** would have Bengal and Assam. The provinces would be free to decide the provisional subjects to be taken in common.
- Each group would draft their own constitutions in consultation with other provinces included in each group.
- A province could opt out of any group and join another group by a majority decision of its legislature.
- A Constituent Assembly would be set up to frame the new Constitution of the Indian Union. It would consist of 389 members of which 296 members would be elected from the British Provinces and 93 members- from the Indian States. After the elections, the Constituent Assembly would meet at 'New Delhi' as one body and elect a Chairman; then the members would be divided into three groups representing A, B and C to frame their respective constitutions.
- The Constituent Assembly would sign a treaty with Britain to provide for certain matters arising out for the transfer of power.
- An interim government at the centre representing all communities would be installed on the basis of parity between the representatives of the Hindus and the Muslims. All portfolios including that of war minister would be held by Indian Ministers.

### CHECK POINT 01

- 1 When did the Cabinet Mission arrive in India?
- 2 In how many groups the British Provinces were divided as per Cabinet Mission Plan?
- 3 When was the elections held for the Constituent Assembly?

<sup>2</sup> Vest To give somebody the legal rights or power to do something.

<sup>3</sup> Plebiscite A vote by the people of a country or a region on an issue that is very important.

## The Mountbatten Plan

After coming to India, Lord Mountbatten began to hold consultations with leaders of different parties and communities. He discussed with Jawaharlal Nehru, Abul Kalam Azad, Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel, Jinnah, Liaqat Ali Khan, Baldev Singh and many others about the future course of action. After meeting with them, Lord Mountbatten concluded that he could not unite the two major parties, thus the partition of the country was inevitable.

Lord Mountbatten personally went to England to inform the British Government about the situation of India and get his plan approved by them. He announced his plan on 3rd June, 1947.

### Main Clauses of the Mountbatten Plan

The main clauses of the plan were as follows:

- India would be divided into two dominions, i.e. India and Pakistan.
- A referendum or plebiscite<sup>3</sup> would be held in the North-West Frontier Province to ascertain whether the people in the area wanted to join India or not.
- The Princely states would have the choice of joining either of the two dominions or to remain independent.
- The provinces of Assam, Bengal and Punjab were also to be divided. A boundary commission was to be set-up to determine the boundaries of these states.
- The existing Constituent Assembly would continue to work and draft the Constitution of free India. Pakistan would have a separate Assembly.
- The date of British withdrawal from India was to be preponed to 15th August, 1947 and the British Parliament would pass an act for the transfer of power before this date.

### Acceptance of the Mountbatten Plan

The Mountbatten Plan had a mixed reaction which are as follows:

#### The Muslim League

The Muslim League accepted the plan on 10th June, 1947. But Jinnah complained that they got a small and underdeveloped Pakistan referring to the division of Punjab and Bengal. Sikh leaders accepted and welcomed the plan.

### The Congress

The Congress was committed to a United India, but had to accept the partition as a 'necessary evil'. Gandhiji was still opposed to partition. He was persuaded by other leaders to accept the plan. Patel believed that partition was the only alternative left to make the country safe and strong and the unification of the rest of the country was the immediate necessity. Maulana Azad and many more nationalist Muslim leaders opposed to partition, but they had to accept it as inevitable.

### Reasons behind the Acceptance

The Congress formally accepted the Mountbatten Plan on 15th June, 1947. The most important reason for this acceptance was the safety of the Indians. The Congress leaders realised that the large-scale communal riots and mass killing could be prevented only by accepting the Muslim League's demand for Pakistan.

The Congress believed that it could not have the joint administration with the Muslim league as it had bitter experience in interim government of 1946. Sardar Patel thought that a United India even if it was smaller in size was better than a disorganised, troubled and weak bigger India.

The Congress leaders realised that the extension of the British rule would be harmful to India. By applying the 'Divide and Rule Policy' the Britishers not only divided Hindu and Muslim community in our country but they instigated the native rulers of the Indian States to remain independent. So, the Congress leaders accepted partition of our country for the sake of betterment of our people.

## The Indian Independence Act, 1947

After the Mountbatten Plan was accepted by the Indian leaders, preparations started to draft Indian Independence Bill to be introduced in the British Parliament. Prime Minister Clement Attlee introduced the Bill in the House of Commons on 4th July, 1947.

This bill was passed by both Houses of the British Parliament on 18th July, 1947. The Indian Independence Act was a short document, consisting of less than 20 sections and 3 schedules. The main provisions of the Indian Independence Act were as follows:

- India would be partitioned and two independent dominions i.e. India and Pakistan would be created from 15th August, 1947. The act provided the legislative supremacy of both the dominions.

- The territories of the two dominions were divided in such terms that Pakistan would comprise of Sindh, British Baluchistan, North-West Frontier Province, the West Punjab and East Bengal. The exact boundaries of the dominions would be determined by a Boundary Commission.
- For each of the two dominions, there would be a Governor-General who would be appointed by the British King and who would represent the king for the purposes of the government of the dominions. He was to function as a constitutional head. Similarly, the provincial Governors were to act on the advice of the elected ministers.
- The Constituent Assemblies of both the dominions were to act as the Central Legislatures and would have full powers to make laws for the respective dominion. They would act as sovereign bodies for legislative purposes. The legislative authority of the British Parliament would cease from 15th August, 1947.
- With effect from 15th August, 1947, his Majesty's Government would cease to have any responsibility for the Government of India and all treaties and agreements between the British Government and the rulers of Indian States or any authority in tribal areas would lapse.
- The Governor-General was vested with necessary powers for bringing Indian independence into effective operation.
- The office of the Secretary of State for India was abolished. Provisions were made for safeguarding the interests of the existing officers appointed by the Secretary of the State. The Secretary of the State however lost his power for future appointments.
- Provisions were made for the division of the Indian army between the two dominions and steps were to be taken to share the assets and liabilities between the two dominions.

### CHECK POINT 02

- 1 When did Lord Mountbatten announce his plan?
- 2 When did the Congress formally accept the Mountbatten Plan?
- 3 When was the Indian Independence Act passed by the both Houses of the British Parliament?
- 4 How many schedules were there in Indian Independence Act?

# TIMELINE

## Year

## Important Events

May, 1945	Second World War ended.	31st January, 1947	League demanded the dissolution of the Constituent Assembly.
26th July, 1945	Clement Attlee became the Prime Minister of Britain	24th March, 1947	Lord Mountbatten became the Viceroy of India.
February, 1946	Revolt of navy in Bombay.	3rd June, 1947	The Mountbatten Plan was announced.
24th March, 1946	The Cabinet Mission arrived at India.	10th June, 1947	The Muslim accepted the Mountbatten Plan.
16th May, 1946	The Cabinet Mission submitted the Cabinet Mission Plan.	15th June, 1947	The Congress accepted the Mountbatten Plan.
July, 1946	Elections of Constituent Assembly were held.	4th July, 1947	Attlee introduced the Indian Independence Act in the House of Commons.
29th July, 1946	The Muslim League passed a Direct Action Resolution.	18th July, 1947	The Indian Independence Act was passed by both the Houses of the British Parliament.
16th August, 1946	Direct Action Day	15th August, 1947	Country divided into two independent nations.
26th October, 1946	Representatives of the Muslim League were inducted in interim government.	20th June, 1948	C Rajagopalachari was sworn in as the first Indian Governor-General.
9th December, 1946	The Constituent Assembly met and Dr Rajendra Prasad was elected its President.	26th January, 1950	New Constitution was adopted and India became republic.

## SUMMARY

- The Second World War ended in May, 1945. Prime Minister of Britain, Mr Winston Churchill invited Lord Wavell, the Viceroy of India to discuss the problems of India.
- Lord Wavell's Plan was not accepted by the Muslim League. They claimed that right to appoint Muslim members should be only enjoyed by the Muslim League, but the Congress did not support this.
- The Cabinet Mission sent to India on 24th March, 1946. The mission tried to bring about a formula which would be acceptable to both the Congress and the Muslim League.
- The Cabinet Mission rejected the Muslim League's demand for a separate nation. It divided the British provinces into three groups i.e. Group A, Group B and Group C. Each group would draft their own constitution.
- On June, 1947, Lord Mountbatten announced his plan. The main clauses of the plan were the country would be divided into two nations. North-West Frontier Province and Princely states had the option to join according to their will and two countries would have different Constituent Assemblies.
- The Muslim League accepted the Mountbatten Plan. The Congress accepted the plan for the safety of the Indians. The Congress leaders believed that the extension of the British rule would be harmful to India.
- On 18th July, 1947, the Indian Independence Act was passed by both Houses of the British Parliament.
- According to this Act, India would be partitioned and two independent dominions i.e. India and Pakistan would be created from 15th August, 1947.
- The exact boundaries of the two dominions should be determined by the Boundary Commission.
- For each of the two dominions, there would be a Governor-General who would be appointed by the British King.
- The Constituent Assemblies of both the dominions would have full powers to make laws for the respective dominion.
- The office of the Secretary of the State for India was abolished. Indian army, assets and liabilities would be divided between the two dominions.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a) Short Questions [2 Marks each]

1. When did the Second World War ended? Who was the Prime Minister of Britain at that time?

**Ans.** In Europe the Second World War ended in May 1945. At that time Mr Winston Churchill was the Prime Minister of Britain.

2. Mention two proposals of the Wavell Plan.  
*[2008]*

**Ans.** Two proposals of the Wavell Plan were as follows:

- (i) The Executive Council would be constituted giving a balanced representation to the main communities in it, including equal representation to Hindus and Muslims.
- (ii) The Constitution of India would be drafted by the Indians themselves.

3. Why Lord Wavell's Plan was not acceptable to the Muslim League? On what grounds Congress rejected the proposals of the Muslim League?

**Ans.** Lord Wavell's Plan was rejected by the Muslim League as they claimed that the right to appoint Muslim members should be enjoyed by the Muslim League only. But in Wavell's Plan the Executive Council should have equal representation of Hindus and Muslims. The Congress did not support the claim of the Muslim League. The Congress represented both the Hindus and Muslims. Thus, the proposals of the Muslim League was rejected by the Congress.

4. How did the change of power in Britain became beneficial for India?

**Ans.** Mr Clement Attlee, leader of the Labour Party became the Prime Minister of Britain on 26th July, 1945, replacing Winston Churchill. Labour Party had always favoured self-rule for India. Thus, it became beneficial for India's Freedom Movement.

5. When was the Cabinet Mission sent to India? Write an international event that led to the Cabinet Mission.

**Ans.** The Cabinet Mission was sent to India on 24th March, 1946. The end of the Second World War had changed the balance of power. The USA and the Soviet Union emerged as the superpowers and both supported India's demand for freedom.

6. Name the three members of the Cabinet Mission.  
*[2014]*

**Ans.** Lord Pethick Lawrence, Sir Stafford Cripps and AV Alexander were the members of Cabinet Mission. The Cabinet Mission arrived in India on 24th March, 1946.

7. What was mentioned in the Cabinet Mission Plan regarding provisional autonomy?  
*[2012]*

**Ans.** The Cabinet Mission Plan proposed that the British Provinces would be divided into three Groups A, B and C. And that each group would draft a Constitution for regional union. If so desired and also for the Constituent Provinces. The provinces would enjoy full autonomy for all subjects other than the union subjects.

8. What was proposed in the Cabinet Mission about the Constituent Assembly?

**Ans.** A Constituent Assembly would be set-up to frame a new Constitution. It would consist of 389 members out of which 296 were elected from the British Provinces and 93 members from the Indian states. It would elect a Chairman and the members would be divided into Groups A, B and C to frame their respective Constitution.

9. What was suggested about the power of interim government in the Cabinet Mission?

**Ans.** According to the Cabinet Mission an interim government at the centre representing all communities would be installed on the basis of parity between the representatives of the Hindus and the Muslims. All portfolios including that of War Minister would be held by Indian Ministers.

10. In what way did the Cabinet Mission Plan try to preserve the unity of India?

**Ans.** The Cabinet Mission Plan tried to preserve the unity of India by giving the clause that India should be a union or a federation of British Provinces and Indian states.

11. Name any two provisions of the Mountbatten Plan.

**Ans.** Lord Mountbatten announced his plan on 3rd June, 1947. The two main provisions of the Mountbatten Plan were as follows:

- (i) The country would be divided into two dominions, that is India and Pakistan.

- (ii) A referendum or plebiscite would be held in the North-West Frontier province to ascertain whether the people in the area wanted to join India or not.

**12.** What were the two proposals related to the Princely States in the Mountbatten Plan?

(2006, 13)

**Ans.** The two proposals related to the Princely States in the Mountbatten Plan were as follows:

- All treaties and agreements made by the British with reference to states would lapse from 15th August, 1947.
- They would be free to associate themselves with either of the two dominions or to remain independent.

**13.** What was the Muslim League's reaction about the Mountbatten Plan?

**Ans.** On 10th June, 1947 the Muslim League accepted the Mountbatten Plan. But Mr Jinnah complained that they got a 'truncated and moth-eaten' Pakistan referring to the division of Punjab and Bengal Provinces.

**14.** Who was Clement Attlee?

**Ans.** Clement Attlee of Labour Party was the Prime Minister of Britain when India became independent. He was the person who declared on 20th February, 1947 that the British would quit India by 30th June, 1948.

**15.** Why was Mountbatten's Plan finally accepted by the Congress?

(2016)

**Ans.** The Congress finally accepted the Mountbatten plan on 15th June, 1947. The most important reason for this acceptance was the safety of the Indians.

**16.** When was the Bill of Indian Independence Act introduced in the House of Commons of Britain and by whom?

**Ans.** British Prime Minister Clement Attlee introduced the Bill of Indian Independence Act on 4th July, 1947 in the House of Commons. This Bill passed by the both houses of the Parliament on 18th July, 1947.

**17.** Mention any two provisions of the Indian Independence Act, 1947.

**Ans.** Two provisions of the Indian Independence Act, 1947 were as follows:

- India would be partitioned and two independent dominions India and Pakistan would be created on 15th August, 1947.
- The territories of the two dominions were divided in such terms that Pakistan would comprise Sindh, British, Baluchistan, North-West Frontier Province, the West Punjab and East Bengal.

**18.** What was the composition of Pakistan according to the Indian Independence Act, 1947?

**Ans.** According to the Indian Independence Act, 1947

Pakistan would comprise of Sindh, Baluchistan, North-West Frontier Province, the West Punjab and the East Bengal.

**19.** Name the last Viceroy of India. State any one of the provisions of the Indian Independence Act of 1947.

(2018)

**Ans.** Lord Mountbatten was the last British Viceroy of India. One provision of the Indian Independence Act, 1947, was the partition of British India into two independent nations, India and Pakistan.

**20.** Name the last Viceroy of India. State one of his proposals in regard to the Princely States.

(2008)

**Ans.** Lord Mountbatten was the last Viceroy of India. In regard to the Princely States, the treaties with them would come to an end. The Princely states would be free to associate themselves with either of the dominions (i.e. with India or Pakistan) or to remain independent.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

**1.** The period between 1920 to 1947 was marked with major events and reforms that finally led us to our Independence. In this context, answer the following questions.

(2017)

- Any three proposals of the Lord Wavell's Plan. (3)
- How did the Congress and the Muslim League respond to the Cabinet Mission Plan? (3)
- Mention any four clauses of the Cabinet Mission Plan. (4)

**Ans.** (i) Proposals of the Lord Wavell's Plan were as follows:

- Except for the post of Viceroy and Commander-in-Chief, all members of the Council would be Indians, with balanced representation of all communities.
- Hindus and Muslims would be represented equally in the Viceroy's Council.
- India would be given dominion status in the long-run.

(ii) The Congress and Muslim League responded to the Cabinet Mission Plan in following ways:

### The Congress

The Congress welcomed the proposals to preserve the unity of India and setting up the Constituent Assembly. The Congress was glad to see the rejection of the idea of Pakistan. The Congress refused to be a

part of interim government as the congress did not accept the demand of the Muslim League that it was the only body representing the entire Muslim Community of India.

### The Muslim League

Initially, the Muslim League accepted the Cabinet Mission Plan and showed its willingness to participate in the elections. But, the thumping majority of the Congress in the Constituent Assembly elections 1946, disappointed the members of the Muslim League. The League feared that it would be outvoted in the Assembly. Thus, Muslim League rejected the Cabinet Mission Plan.

- (iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 105.**
- 2.** With reference to the transfer of power to India, answer the following questions. *[2015]*
- Explain the Cabinet Mission's proposals regarding the setting up of a Constitution making body. *[3]*
  - Mention any two clauses of the India Independence Act, 1947. *[3]*
  - Why did the Congress accept the Mountbatten Plan? *[4]*
- Ans.**
- According to the Cabinet Mission a constituent Assembly would be set-up to frame the new constitution of the Indian Union. It would consist of 389 members- 296 members would be elected from the British Provinces and 93 members from the Indian states. After the election the Constituent Assembly would meet at New Delhi and elect a Chairman, then the members would be divided into three groups representing A, B and C to frame their respective Constitution.
  - The two clauses of the Indian Independence Act, 1947 were as follows:
    - India would be partitioned and two independent dominions India and Pakistan would be created on 15th August, 1947.
    - The territories of the two dominions were divided in such terms the Pakistan would comprise of Sindh, Baluchistan, North-West Frontier Province, the West Punjab and East Bengal.
  - The Mountbatten Plan was accepted by the Congress because:
    - The large-scale of communal riots that engulfed the whole country, convinced all that the only solution to communal problem lay in the Partition of India.
- The League had joined the interim government to obstruct and not to cooperate, experience of working with the League had convinced the Congress that it could not have a joint administration with the League.
  - The leaders felt that the extension of the British rule would be harmful to India. The Britishers not only divided Hindu and Muslim community, but also instigated the native rulers to be independent. So, the Congress accepted the Mountbatten Plan for the betterment of people.
- 3.** The Mountbatten Plan was the final proposal put forward by the British to solve the deadlock between the main political parties in India. In this context, answer the following questions.
- Any three development which paved the way for Mountbatten Plan. *[3]*
  - Three long-term impact of Mountbatten Plan on Indian Politics. *[3]*
  - Any four clauses of the Mountbatten Plan. *[4]*
- Ans.**
- Three development which paved the way for Mountbatten Plan were:
    - On 26th October, 1946 representatives of the Muslim League were inducted into the interim government. The government seemed to be paralysed by non-cooperation of the members of the Muslim League.
    - After consultation with Indian leaders Mountbatten concluded that he would not unite the major parties.
    - Lord Mountbatten personally went to England to inform the British Government about the situation of India and get his plan approved by them.
  - Three long-term impact of Mountbatten plan on Indian Politics were:
    - It gave birth to unended communal dispute between Hindus and Muslims.
    - The demarcation of boundaries were not clearly defined.
    - It left Kashmir issue unsettled.
  - The four clauses of the Mountbatten Plan were as follows:
    - The country would be divided into 2 dominions India and Pakistan.
    - The plan provided for the creation of Boundary Commission to settle the boundaries of the 2 dominions in case Partition was decided upon.

- Treaties with the Princely States would end and they were free to join either of their 2 dominions or remain independent.
- The plan ended with a declaration that the transfer of power would take place not in June 1948, but much earlier than that. The British Parliament would pass an act for the transfer of power before 15th August, 1947.

### C Picture Based Questions

[10 Marks each]

- 1.** With reference to the picture given below, answer the following questions.



- Identify the Viceroy in the Picture. Why was he sent to India? **[3]**
- How did he plan to solve the communal problem existing in India? **[3]**
- Why did the congress accept the Plan? State three reasons to justify its acceptance. **[4]**

**Ans.** (i) Lord Mountbatten is depicted in the given picture. British would quit India by 30th June, 1948, it was announced by the Prime Minister Clement Attlee. Lord Mountbatten became the Viceroy of India to solve the dispute between the Muslim League and the Indian National Congress. It offered a key to the political and constitutional deadlock created by the refusal of the Muslim League to join the Constituent Assembly formed to frame the Constitution of India. Mountbatten's formula was to divide India, but retain maximum unity.

(ii) In the struggle for India's partition, riots broke out in Kolkata, Punjab, Assam and the North-West Frontier Province. Mountbatten put his plan for the Partition of India before the prominent leaders like Nehru, Patel, Azad, Jinnah, Liaquat Ali Khan and Baldev Singh. After many consultations with them, Mountbatten came to the conclusion that the sooner the power was transferred, the better for all. He was convinced that India was to be partitioned and transfer of power to Indians could only be on the basis of partition of the country.

- The Congress accepted the plan due to the following reasons:

- The large scale of communal riots 'that engulfed the whole country convinced all that the only solution to communal problem lay in the Partition of India'.
- The League had joined the interim government to obstruct and not to cooperate. Experience of working with the League had convinced the Congress that it could not have a joint administration with the League.
- The leaders felt that Partition would rid the Constitution of separate electorates and other undemocratic procedures. India could evolve a truly secular and democratic polity.

- 2.** Answer the questions based on the picture given below.

[2011]



- Identify the event in the above picture. Name the lady seen in the given picture. Mention the year when the event took place. **[3]**
- What were the main provisions of the Indian Independence Act? **[3]**
- Mention the reasons that made the Congress accept the Partition proposals. **[4]**

**Ans.** (i) The event is the transfer of power ceremony. Here, Jawaharlal Nehru took the oath as the first Prime Minister of India. The lady shown in the picture is Edwina Mountbatten, wife of Viceroy Lord Mountbatten. This event took place in the year 1947.

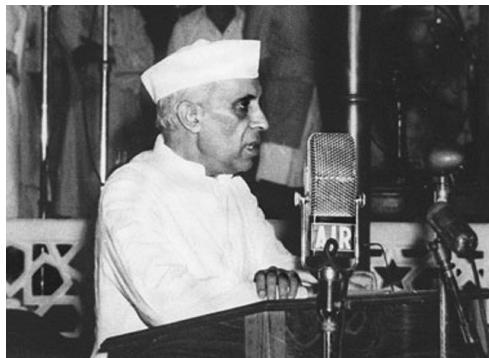
(ii) The main provisions of the Indian Independence Act were as follows:

- India would be partitioned and two independent dominions India and Pakistan would be created from 15th August, 1947.
- For each of the two dominions there would be a Governor-General who would be appointed by the British King. The office of the Secretary State for India was abolished.
- The Constituent Assemblies of both the dominions were to act as the Central Legislatures and would have all powers to make laws.

(iii) The Congress accepted the Partition proposals for the safety of Indians. The Congress leaders realised that the large scale communal riots and mass killing could be prevented only by accepting the Muslim League's demand for Pakistan. The extension of the British rule would be harmful to Indian.

So, the Congress leaders admitted Sardar Patel's thought that 'A United India even if it was smaller in size, was better than a disorganised, troubled and weak bigger India' and accepted the Partition proposals.

- 3.** In the given below historic photograph of Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru, is seen giving his famous speech in the Constituent Assembly on 14th August, 1947. In this context, answer the following questions.



- (i) Mention the provisions of the Indian Independence Act of 1947 regarding the Constituent Assemblies. **[3]**
- (ii) Discuss three basic reasons why the Cabinet Mission Plan rejected the demand for Pakistan. **[3]**
- (iii) Mention four important reasons for the All-Indian Congress Committee accepting the Mountbatten Plan. **[4]**

**Ans.** (i) The provisions of the Indian Independence Act of 1947 regarding the Constituent Assemblies were as follows:

- The Constituent Assemblies of both the dominions were to act as the Central Legislatures and would have 'full powers' to make laws for the respective dominion.
- The Constituent Assemblies would act as sovereign bodies for legislative purpose. The legislative authority of the British Parliament would cease from 15th August, 1947.

(ii) The Cabinet Mission Plan rejected the demand for Pakistan for the three following reasons:

- The demand for a separate nation was not viable.
- Areas in Eastern part of Bengal demanded by the Muslim League were separated from the Western part they demanded, by thousands of miles.
- In Sindh and Punjab, Hindus and Muslims constituted the population almost in equal numbers. Moreover, there was no justification for keeping large Hindu districts in Bengal, Assam and Punjab in Pakistan.

(iii) All-Indian Congress Committee accepted the Mountbatten Plan for the four following reasons:

- The most important reason for this acceptance was the safety of the Indians. The large scale of communal riots that engulfed the whole country convinced all the Congress leaders that the only solution to communal problem lay in the Partition of India.
- The Muslim League had joined the interim government to obstruct and not to co-operate. Experience of working with the League had convinced the Congress that it could not have a joint administration with the League.
- After Partition, India could avoid Constitution of separate electorates and other undemocratic procedures and could evolve as a truly secular and democratic polity.
- The Congress leaders realised that the extension of the British rule would be harmful to Indian. By applying 'Divide and Rule' policy the Britishers not only divided Hindu and Muslim community in our country, but they also instigated the native rulers of Indian states to remain independent. Thus, for the betterment of the people Congress leaders accepted Partition.

# **CHAPTER TEST**

## **Short Questions**

**[2 Marks each]**

- 1.** What was the main aim of Jinnah's Two Nation Theory?
- 2.** After the Second World War which party came to power in England.
- 3.** What was the purpose of sending Cabinet Mission to India in 1946?
- 4.** What was the Congress's view point regarding grouping of the provinces under the Cabinet Mission Plan?
- 5.** What did the Mountbatten Plan provide in regard to the Princely States?
- 6.** Why was Attlee's announcement welcomed by the Muslim League?
- 7.** What did the stand point of the Indian Independence Act of 1947 regarding the Secretary of State for India?

## **Structured Questions**

**[10 Marks each]**

- 1.** With reference to the Indian Independence Act of 1947, explain the following questions.
  - (i) Areas included in Pakistan and reasons for such inclusion.
  - (ii) Position of his Majesty's government regarding India.
  - (iii) The power of the Constituent Assembly.
- 2.** The Cabinet Mission Plan proposed a two- tiered federal union of British Provinces and Princely States. With reference to this describe the following.
  - (i) The federal structure proposed by the Cabinet Mission Plan.
  - (ii) 'Grouping of Provinces' that was recommended by the plan.
  - (iii) The option given to the Princely States.

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

1. Name the last Viceroy of India. State any one of the provisions of the Indian Independence Act of 1947.

## 2016

2. Why was Mountbatten's Plan finally accepted by the Congress?

## 2015

3. With reference to the transfer of power to India, answer the following.
  - (i) Explain the Cabinet Mission's proposals regarding the setting up of a Constitution making body.
  - (ii) Mention any two clauses of the Indian Independence Act, 1947.
  - (iii) Why did the Congress accept the Mountbatten Plan?

## 2014

4. Name the three members of the Cabinet Mission.
5. With reference to this picture given below, answer the following questions.



- (i) Identify the Viceroy in the picture.
- (ii) Why was he sent to India?
- (iii) How did he plan to solve the communal problem existing in India?
- (iv) Why did the Congress accept the plan? State three reasons to justify its acceptance.

## 2013

6. What were the two proposals related to the princely states in the Mountbatten Plan?

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

# The First World War

The First Global War that started between the great powers of Europe in 1914, is known as the 'First World War'. It started on 28th July, 1914 and lasted until 11th November, 1918. It was one of the deadliest conflict in the world. Around 10 million soldiers and 7 million civilians died in this war. Although the war began in Europe, but soon it spread to Asia and Africa. It marked an end to a long period of peace which was maintained after Franco-Prussian War of 1871. The peace was only apparent as the balance of power in the Europe was disrupted by the enormous growth of German strength. The outbreak of the First World War was the result of the numerous political tensions and rivalry that existed among the European powers.

## Causes of the First World War

Following are the major causes of the First World War:

### Militant Nationalism

The 19th century became an era of narrow and militant nationalism and patriotism which means love for one's own nation and hatred towards other nations. Each nation thought about its own national interests which resulted into aggressive nationalism.

Fierce competition in economic and defence areas were the causes of growing nationalism feelings. Germany, Italy, Russia and Japan worked to increase their influence and increase their colonies in the least developed countries. All military strong nation competed against each other in winning over other colonial power. Aggressive and fierce economic competition gave rise to fear, confusion, insecurity and mutual hatred in whole of Europe. This was followed by expansionist policies in the name of **nationalism<sup>1</sup>** which led to the rise of **imperialism<sup>2</sup>**.

Imperialism occurs when a strong nation takes over a weaker nation or region and dominates its economic, political and cultural life.

<sup>1</sup> Nationalism The feeling of patriotism of one's nation.

<sup>2</sup> Imperialism Any instance of aggressive extension of authority.

## Armament Race

The use of arms and proliferation of new types of weapons by every nation made the situation unfavourable for peace very soon. Rival groups were formed and every nation declared that arms were being made for one's safety. But it was impossible for any state to remain calm if the neighbours were producing large scale of arms. Every nation started research and development in defence sector in the name of self-defence. Germany acquired colonies in Africa and few islands in the Pacific Ocean. In order to protect these, Germany developed its naval power. Britain also launched its new battleship. It resulted into the naval rivalry between Britain and Germany. France also entered this armament<sup>3</sup> race for her own safety. The defence expenditure of every country increased massively during 1908 to 1914. All that created an atmosphere of fear, insecurity and mutual hatred.

## Division of Europe

As Africa and Asia had already been divided among other European powers, Germany tried to spread its empire in the European Continent. This resulted a direct conflict of Germany with other existing colonial powers like Britain, France, etc. Germany wanted a new arrangement which include Germany, Austria-Hungary, large areas of Balkans, Eastern Europe and even some parts of Belgium. Europe was divided into two hostile camps at the early 20th century. These were:

- (i) **Triple Alliance** Germany, Austria-Hungary and Italy had formed a Triple Alliance in AD 1882. Before it, there was Dual Alliance formed between Germany and Austria in 1879. Italy left the Alliance after the out break of the First World War but two other powers, i.e. Bulgaria and Ottoman Empire joined it. Then, they were known as 'Central Powers'.
- (ii) **Triple Entente** It was formed among Russia, France and Britain. During the First World War, Canada, Australia, Italy, Japan and the United States joined the Entente.

## Balkan Tension

In the 19th century, a large part of the Balkans started disintegrating from the Ottoman Empire. One by one, nation broke away from its control and declared independence. All European powers, viz Russia, Germany, England, Austria were interested to extend their own hold on the Balkans. Within the Austrian Empire, the most restive nationality was the Southern slavs. They wanted to join the independent kingdom of Serbia and the provinces of Bosnia-Herzegovina to form a United South Slav State. Serbia became a threat to Austria thus, Austria wanted to destroy completely the 'united slav' dream. Austria annexed the provinces of Bosnia-Herzegovina.

As the largest slav nation, Russia considered itself to be the protector of the Balkan slavs and wanted the Bosnia-Herzegovina issue to be settled in international conference. But Germany supported Austria and Russia and forced to give in. This tension led to series of war and ultimately the First World War.

## Outbreak of First World War (Sarajevo Crisis)

The Archduke or emperor of Austria Francis Ferdinand was murdered along with his wife at the Bosnian capital of Sarajevo on 28th June, 1914. This dual murder was planned by a terrorist outfit 'Union of Death' or popularly known as Black Hand<sup>4</sup>. The assassin Gavrilo Princep was a 19 years old Bosnian. The group aimed at uniting all the South Slavs in Serbia. Thus, they killed the Prince who was the heir of Austria-Hungarian Empire.

On 23rd July, 1914, Austria sent an ultimatum to Serbia. Austria wanted the conspirators to be caught and handed over to the Austrian Government. It also demanded that all anti-Austrian publications, meetings and educational institutions should be banned. All revolutionary movements aimed against Austria were to be suppressed.

The German Government pressurised Austria for an immediate declaration of war. On 28th July, 1914 Austria declared war against Serbia. Russia began to mobilise her troops to defend Serbia. On 1st August Germany declared war on Russia. Germany demanded free passage through Belgium to invade France. But Britain asked Germany to show respect for Belgian neutrality. Germany failed to respond so, Britain declared war on midnight of 4th August, 1914.

In this way all the major European powers Austria, Germany, Russia, France and Britain became involved. In the war, Turkey and Bulgaria joined the side of Germany. Italy deserted Triple Alliance and joined the Triple Entente. Japan declared war against Germany as it wanted to capture German colonies in the far East. In all, about 86 nations gradually involved in this war.

<sup>3</sup> Armament Rush to acquire arms and ammunitions.

<sup>4</sup> Black Hand Secret Society of Patriotic terrorists in Serbia.



## Results of the First World War

The major results of the First World War were as follows:

### The Treaty of Versailles

On 28th June, 1919, the Treaty of Versailles was signed. The terms of the peace treaties were mainly decided by **Woodrow Wilson**, the then President of the United States, **Lloyd George**, the Prime Minister of Britain and **George Clemenceau** and then the Prime Minister of France.

Main terms of the treaty were as follows:

- Germany was held responsible for the war and was to pay 33 billion dollars as war compensation to the Allies.
- The fertile and mineral rich land of Rhine valley was to be taken by Allied powers.
- Germany was forced to give up her colonies and other acquired areas in Africa and Europe.
- Germany was made to return Alsace Lorraine to France. Moreover, the Saar valley was ceded to France for 15 years.
- Most of the Polish territory held by Germany were returned to the new Republic of Poland.
- Germany was restricted to keep its military. It was allowed to keep only a small army of 1 lakh soldiers, 15000 navel men and 36 ships.

- Countries like Belgium, Poland, Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia were declared as independent countries.
- League of Nations, an international organisation was created for maintaining peace and harmony.

### Territorial Rearrangement

The peace treaties transformed the political map of Europe. Three ruling dynasties, *viz* the Romanov in Russia, the Hohenzollern in Germany and the Hapsburg in Austria-Hungary were destroyed. In Turkey, the Ottoman Empire came to an end. Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia, Finland, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania emerged as independent states.

### Formation of League of Nations

The unexpected outcome of the First World War convinced the world leaders to have such a mechanism that could prevent war. An important development that took place was the formation of the world level institution known as 'League of Nations'. The League of Nations was established on 10th January, 1920 having headquarter at Geneva in Switzerland.

It began with 42 founding members. The League had four permanent members i.e. Britain, France, Italy and Japan. Later Germany joined it as permanent member in 1926. In 1935 it had 58 members.

The primary goals of League of Nations included preventing wars through collective security and disarmament and settling international disputes through negotiations. Other important issues were proper labour conditions, just treatment of native inhabitants, prohibition of human and drug trafficking, arms trade, maintaining global health, protection of prisoners of war and minorities in Europe.

### CHECK POINT

- 1 Name an Asian country that was involved in militant nationalism.
- 2 What were two blocs dividing Europe before the First World War?
- 3 When was the Treaty of Versailles signed?
- 4 Which two nations were formed from the Austria-Hungarian Empire after the Treaty of Germain?

# TIMELINE

Year	Important Events		
1882	Triple Alliance between Germany, Austria-Hungary and Italy.	1917	The Russian revolution known as 'October Revolution' or 'Bolshevik Revolution'.
1907	Triple Entente between Britain, France and Russia.	1918	End of the First World War.
1914	Beginning of the First World War.	28th June, 1919	Signing of the Treaty of Versailles.
6th April, 1917	America declares war on Germany thereby joining the Allies.	10th September,	
		1919	Signing of the Treaty of Germany.
		10th January, 1919	Formation of the League of Nations.
		10th August, 1920	Signing of the League of Nations.

## SUMMARY

- The First World War (1914-1918) was fought between the Allied powers and the Central powers.
- Aggressive/Narrow Nationalism followed by arms race was responsible for the war.
- The whole of Europe except some nations got divided into two hostile camps i.e. **Triple Entente** and **Triple Alliance**.
- Immediate cause was the murder of Austrian Prince Archduke Ferdinand in Sarajevo town.
- Austria attacked Serbia on 28th July, 1914 which culminated into the World War.
- On Allies side, there were Serbia, Russia, England, France, Japan, Italy, America, etc. On the **Central Powers** side, there were Germany, Austria, Turkey, Bulgaria, etc.
- Germany was compelled to return Saar Ruhr to France and was forced to curtail her military power.
- Countries like Belgium, Poland, Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia, became independent.
- Results of the First World War included the after effect of the Treaty of Versailles, Territorial rearrangement, the huge loss of life, costliest war, emergence of the USA as a world power, the rise of Nazi and Facist dictatorship, etc.
- League of Nations was formed on 10th January, 1920 with its headquarters at Geneva in Switzerland. All member states were asked to refer any international disputes to it.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a Short Questions [2 Marks each]

1. During which years the First World War took place?

**Ans.** Between 1914 and 1918 the First World War took place.

2. Explain briefly the term 'Militant Nationalism'.

**Ans.** Militant Nationalism is high degree of love for one's own nation and hatred towards other nations. It is an aggressive policy to achieve national goals.

3. How did militant nationalism added to the causes of the First World War?

**Ans.** Militant nationalism increased rivalry and competitiveness among nations. This resulted in gaining military strength by acquiring or developing more weapons.

4. Why military strength among nations grew?

**Ans.** Military strength among nations grew because of its comparison with national prestige. National prestige was counted on its military strength, so each nation went after it.

5. How did the race for armaments divided Europe?

**Ans.** Race for armaments fueled rivalry and competition. Countries like Germany, England, France began to build strong army and navy. Race for arms created alliances that divided Europe.

6. Why major European nations were interested in creating colonies in least developed nation?

**Ans.** Major nations were in need of raw materials and natural resources and they can get them easily from the least developed nation.

7. Which two country built up a huge colonial empire in Asia and Africa?

**Ans.** England and France built up a huge colonial empire in Asia and Africa.

8. Name the two rival blocs formed in Europe before First World War.

**Ans.** The two rival blocs were Allied powers consisted of Serbia, Russia, France, England, Japan, etc and the Central powers consisted of Germany, Austria, Italy, Turkey, Bulgaria etc.

9. How did the division of Europe resulted in the First World War?

**Ans.** Europe was divided into rival blocs known as 'Triple Alliance' and 'Triple Entente'. These blocs showed rivalry by initiating arms race and capturing colonies of Asia and Africa that resulted in the First World War.

10. Why was the place Sarajevo got highlighted?

**Ans.** Sarajevo was the capital of Bosnia and the heir prince of the throne of Austria-Hungary came there with his wife. He was assassinated there and the First World War started.

11. How did the Sarajevo crisis in 1914 lead to the First World War?

**Ans.** Archduke Francis Ferdinand, the heir to the throne of Austria was assassinated at Sarajevo, capital of Bosnia on 28th June, 1914. The assassination was organised by a secret society called 'Black Hand' or 'Union of Death' formed by extremist Serbian nationalists. Due to this, Austria declared war on Serbia and the First World War started.

12. What was the immediate cause of the First World War? (2013)

**Ans.** The Sarajevo crisis was the immediate cause of the First World War. It was related with the assassination of the heir to throne of Austria, Archduke Francis Ferdinand and his wife on 28th June, 1914, in Sarajevo, the capital of Bosnia.

13. Japan attacked which country during the First World War?

**Ans.** Japan declared war on Germany to free her colonies from Germany in the far East.

14. Name the countries of the Triple Alliance (1882). State the rival bloc that was formed. (2012)

**Ans.** Triple Alliance was formed by German, Austria-Hungary and Italy. The rival bloc was Triple Entente which was formed by Russia, France and Britain.

15. Name the two rival blocs formed in Europe before First World War. (2015)

**Ans.** Triple Alliance and Triple Entente were the two rival blocs formed before the First World War.

**16.** Name the countries that formed the Allied powers.

**Ans.** The nations which formed the Allied powers were Britain, France, America and Russia.

**17.** Why Italy attacked Germany?

**Ans.** When Bulgaria and Turkey joined Germany in the war, Italy broke the Triple Alliance and joined in Triple Entente and then attacked Germany after some time of neutrality.

**18.** How did France benefit by attacking Germany?

**Ans.** France wanted to get back the province of Alsace and Lorraine from Germany and after the war these were returned to France by the Treaty of Versailles.

**19.** Why Germany began to improve its naval force?

**Ans.** Germany began to built a powerful navy to make herself equal to that of the naval power of Britain.

**20.** Mention any two terms of the Treaty of Versailles signed on 28th June, 1919. [2014]

**Ans.** The main terms of the Treaty of Versailles were as follows:

- (i) The Treaty declared Germany guilty of aggression.
- (ii) The area of the Rhine valley was to be demilitarised and the German Territory West of Rhine was to be occupied by the Allied Troops for 15 years.

**21.** What happened to Syria, Palestine and Mesopotamia in the Treaty of Versailles?

**Ans.** A different treaty was signed which made Syria a country of France while Palestine and Mesopotamia was given to Britain.

**22.** How much Germany have to pay as war reparation in the charge according to the Treaty of Versailles? [2010]

**Ans.** Germany was asked to pay to the Victor nations a war indemnity of 33 billion dollars for reparations according to the Treaty of Versailles.

**23.** Mention any two important consequences of the First World War. [2009]

**Ans.** The two important consequences of the First World War were as follows:

- (i) Establishment of the League of Nations.
- (ii) Saar valley was returned to France from Germany for 15 years.

**24.** Bolshevik Revolution is related to which country in 1917.

**Ans.** Bolshevik revolution is the revolution in Russia. The new Bolshevik Government of Lenin signed a peace treaty, 'Treaty of Brest-Litovsk' with Germany and ended the hostilities between the two countries.

**25.** Why did Russia withdrew from the war?

**Ans.** The Bolshevik Revolution in 1917 established a Communist Government under the leadership of Lenin. Lenin signed a peace treaty with Germany and withdrew Russia from the war.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

**1.** There were many causes that culminated into the First World War. Explain the following questions.

- (i) Militant/Aggressive Nationalism. [3]
- (ii) Formation of two blocs in Europe. [3]
- (iii) Expansionist policies of European Nations. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory part page no. 115.

(ii) With the greed of colonies in least developed parts of the world, the European nations started groupism and faction politics to gain foreign lands. Many nations were in need of raw materials and foreign markets. So, the nations started taking interest in the formation of blocs. **Triple Alliance** (Germany, Austria, Italy) and **Triple Entente** (Russia, France, Britain) were formed which finally fought against each other in 1914.

(iii) All European nations started expansionist policies to gain grounds in foreign lands. They tried to grab colonies in least developed countries through political tactics. They made colonies in African and Asian nations for market and raw materials.

In the 19th century energised by the Industrial Revolution and under pressure from a rapidly growing population, Europe launched a new period of colonial expansion, inspired by the discovery of new markets. Necessity of new areas for the settlement of Europe's poor migrants and the desire to civilise the barbarian nations motivated Europeans to adopt expansionist policies.

**2.** The world witnessed a ‘Great War’ in the year between 1914-1918. In this context answer the following questions.

- (i) Discuss any three reasons which led to the war in 1914. [3]
- (ii) Mention three clauses of the Treaty of Versailles. [3]
- (iii) Explain how the Treaty of Versailles was responsible for the outbreak of the Second World War. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Reasons for the war in 1914 were as follows:

- Militant Nationalism which aggravated the mechanism of keeping armies and navies and also the establishment of a class of military and naval officers.
- Division of Europe into two hostile powers was equally responsible for the war.
- There was a mad race for armaments in the name of self-defence and preservation of peace.

(ii) Three clauses of the Treaty of Versailles were as follows:

- Germany was to pay 33 billion dollars as a fine, to the Allies.
- Its coal mines were ceded to France for 15 years.
- The Germany army and navy were dramatically reduced.

(iii) Peace settlement at Paris was made in a spirit of revenge. As a result of the discussions at the Paris conference on 28th June, 1919 the Treaty of Versailles was signed. The German felt that too much injustice had been done to them. The victorious powers had deprived Germany of huge tracts of its territories. Germany was burdened with an immense war indemnity. It was impossible for a German race to forget the consequences of the war, which they had lost so humiliatingly. Thus, the Treaty was considered responsible for the outbreak of Second World War.

**3.** With reference to the First World War, answer the following questions.

- (i) Enumerate any three causes of the First World War [3]
- (ii) Explain the formation of the League of Nations? [3]
- (iii) Mention three points under the Treaty of Versailles which affected Germany. [4]

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 115 and 116.**

- (ii) The objectives of the League of Nations were as follows:
  - Any member-state was to keep away from entering into any secret treaties of alliances.

- They were also not supposed to maintain armies or warships etc.

- The states were to respect each other's independence.
- To promote cultural, social and economic cooperation among the member-states.

(iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 117.**

**4.** The war that broke out in 1914 was different from the previous wars in many ways. In this context, explain the following points briefly.

[2015]

- (i) Militant Nationalism as a cause of the war. [3]
- (ii) How did the Treaty of Versailles seek to cripple Germany's military strength? [3]
- (iii) What was the territorial rearrangement of Europe as a result of this war? [4]

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 115.**

- (ii) The German army was disbanded. She was allowed to keep only 1 lakh soldiers. The airforce and submarines were also banned. Her navy was limited to 15,000 navy men and 36 ships.

Germany had to pay a war indemnity of 33 billion dollars to the Allies, to be paid in yearly installments for 42 years. This heavy debt crippled Germany and made it impossible to maintain its military strength.

(iii) The political map of the world, especially that of the Europe, was transformed after the Peace of Treaties.

- The old empires like German, the Austrian and Russian were shattered.
- Many new states such as Poland, Czechoslovakia, Romania and Yugoslavia were created.

Before First World War empires of Russia, Germany, Turkey, Austria etc., were ruled by the royal dynasties. But after the war, democratic governments were established in these areas.

Thus, after the end of war began a democratic era, with the people given more political rights, justice and opportunities of participation in the decision-making.

**5.** With reference to the consequences of the First World War, answer the following.

- (i) Germany after the Treaty of Versailles. [3]
- (ii) Allies after the First World War. [3]
- (iii) Position of Central powers. [4]

**Ans.** (i) The Treaty of Versailles imposed huge war reparations from Germany. It had to give away its mineral rich lands of Rhine valley, Ruhr and Saar to the Allies. Germany was also restricted to keep military and naval forces. The Treaty of Versailles proved humiliating for Germany.

- (ii) Britain and France gained the fertile lands and coal mines of Germany. They also got control over German colonies. They took huge war indemnity from Germany and felt secure for destroying the naval fleet of Germany. The Allies were in a much stronger position than the Central powers.
- (iii) The countries that were collectively known as Central powers had to sign peace treaties. The alliance with its name gave the central powers atleast one very impotant strategic advantage over the Allies they were tighting. It was much easier for the Germans and Austro-Hungarians to move troops. It also made easy to move equipment and supplies from one battle front to another because they could do much of this on their domestic railway networks.

**6.** The 1914 and 1939 Wars the engulfed almost the entire world, known as World Wars due to its unprecedeted impact and damage. In this context, answer the following:

- (i) Explain the immediate cause of the First World War. [2017]
- (ii) Explain the consequences of the First World War.
- (iii) Mention any four terms of the Treaty of Versailles which affected Germany after World War I. [2017]

**Ans.** (i) The immediate cause of the First World War was the Sarajevo Crisis. The crisis took place on 28th June, 1914, when the crown prince of Austria, Archduke Francis Ferdinand and his wife were assassinated at Sarajevo (Capital city of Bosnia). It was traced that the assassination was planned by the 'Black Hand' – patriotic terrorists of a secret society in Serbia – because they wanted to unite all Serbians under a single Serbian state. However, Austria sent them an ultimatum. The Serbian government refused to accept some of the demands, resulting in Austria declaring war against Serbia.

- (ii) Following were the consequences of the First World War:
  - World War I cost the participating countries a lot of money. Germany and the Great Britain spent about 60% of the money, their economy produced. Countries had to raise taxes and borrow money from their citizens.

- World War I brought an end to four monarchies – Czar Nicholas II of Russia, Kaiser Wilhelm of Germany, Emperor Charles of Austria and the Sultan of Ottoman Empire had to step down.
- World War I changed society completely. Birth rates went down because millions of young men died. Civilians lost their homes and fled to other countries.

**(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 117.**

**7.** With reference to the two major World Wars in the 20th century, answer the following questions. [2018]

- (i) Explain briefly the causes of World War I with reference to nationalism and imperialism. (3)
- (ii) Explain briefly the territorial rearrangements as a result of World War I. (3)
- (iii) State any four causes that led to the Second World War. (4)

**Ans.** (i) Causes of World War with reference to nationalism and imperialism were:

- Militant Nationalism was one of the major reasons of the First World War. It included building a huge army and appointing a powerful class of military and naval officers.
- France and Britain built large colonial empires in Asia and Africa. Germany, Italy and Japan competed with other powers to establish their colonies.
- Colonies added to the power and prestige of the European nations. This led to clash of interests among these countries.

(ii) Territorial rearrangements as a result of World War I were:

- This war marked the end of three ruling dynasties in Europe, Romanov in Russia, Hohenzollern in Germany and Habsburg in Austria-Hungary.
- The rule of the Ottoman empire came to an end in Italy. Austria and Hungary became two separate states. Thus, monarchy in many countries collapsed.
- Many independent states emerged during the war, like Finland, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, and Yugoslavia.

(iii) Four causes that led to the Second World War were:

- There was dissatisfaction in Italy and Germany with the terms of the treaty of Versailles.
- Rise of Fascism and Nazism in Italy and Germany respectively. Both opposed democracy and believed in totalitarian state.

- The Policy of Appeasement by Britain and France towards Germany and Italy which led to Second World War.
- League of Nations was created to prevent war and maintain peace in the world. But its purpose failed.

### C Picture Based Questions

[10 Marks each]

- 1.** The murder of prince of Austria in Sarajevo brought the war near. Explain the following with reference to the picture given below.

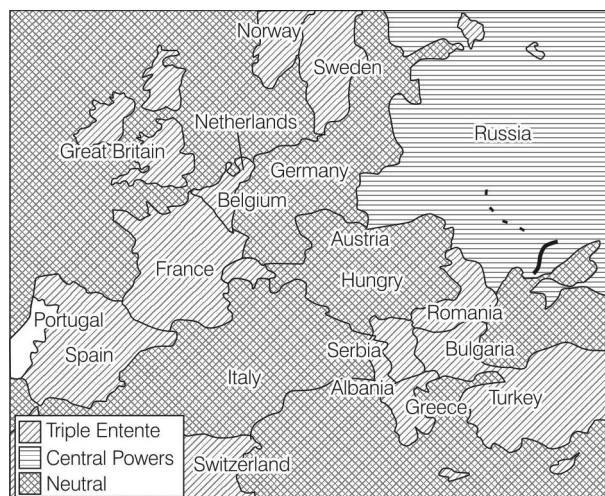


- (i) Describe the picture. [3]  
(ii) The Allies [3]  
(iii) The Central powers [4]

- Ans.** (i) The picture shows the murder of the Austrian Archduke Francis Ferdinand. The Austrian prince Archduke Francis Ferdinand was assassinated in the Sarajevo city capital of Bosnia on 28th June, 1914. The murderer was a Serbian from a terrorist outfit. Austria blamed Serbia and declared war on Serbia on 28th July, 1914. Serbia was supported by Russia.
- (ii) The Allies were the bloc that was led by France, Serbia, Russia, England, Japan, Italy, America. The Allies provided military support to any members whenever it was required. Germany was afraid that Britain would attempt to destroy the German fleet which was posing a Challenge to the British Navy. Germany objected strongly against the policy of alliances.
- (iii) The Central powers were headed by Germany. Austria blamed Serbia for the death of its prince. When Austria attacked Serbia, Russia gave the support to Serbia. The Central powers included Germany, Austria, Turkey and Bulgaria. All four were located between the Russian Empire in the

East and France and US in the West. The alliances made between these four nations were a result of Germany's inability to gain power on the 'World Stage'.

- 2.** Study the picture given below and answer the questions that follow.



- (i) Why Germany and France fought? [3]  
(ii) Why England attacked Germany over the attack of Germany on Belgium? [3]  
(iii) How the 'Allies' fought? [4]

- Ans.** (i) France wanted to get back the provinces of Alsace and Lorraine which were famous for its iron deposits. Germany was not prepared to return it to France. Both the countries wanted to make its hold on Morocco in Africa. Germany wanted Morocco as an independent state but France wanted to control it. Morocco crisis became a reason for the tension between the two countries.
- (ii) Germany came across Belgium and entered the Southern parts of France. The French army along with the British Army met the German forces in the Battle of Marne which was only 15 miles from Paris. However, after it the German forces were unable to go. On this pretext, Britain also waged war on Germany and first time used tanks to destroy German army.
- (iii) The Allies were more powerful than the Central powers. Many of the countries of the Central powers bloc were not well equipped with modern weapons and huge naval warships. Many nations of the Allies had large standing army with huge amount of arms. The Allied powers launch a huge military offensive against the central powers. All Allies' War aims changed over the course of the conflict in response to military and diplomatic developments and to pressure from the US to make them clear as a basis for negotiating peace.

# **CHAPTER TEST**

## **Short Questions**

**[2 Marks each]**

1. Name the two Alliances which divided Europe into two hostile blocs.
2. How militant nationalism became a cause for the First World War?
3. What was the immediate cause of the First World War?
4. Why was the League of Nations formed?
5. What was the effect of Treaty of Versailles on Austria-Hungary?
6. Define armament race in the year 19th century.
7. Name five major powers that were involved in the First World War.
8. Which country declared war on Serbia and when?
9. With which country Bolshevik Revolution is related?
10. Name any two Balkan countries.

## **Structured Questions**

**[10 Marks each]**

1. With reference to the Treaty of Versailles, explain the following.
  - (i) How much Germany had to pay? [3]
  - (ii) How was Germany destroyed after the war? [3]
  - (iii) What were the outcome of the Treaty of Versailles? [4]
2. With reference to the First World War, answer the following questions.
  - (i) The three causes of it. [3]
  - (ii) Changes in the political map of the world. [3]
  - (iii) Failure of League of Nations. [4]
3. The Sarajevo crisis became the immediate cause that initiated the First World War. In this context, answer the following.
  - (i) Explain the Sarajevo crisis. [3]
  - (ii) Austria's reaction to the crisis. [3]
  - (iii) Reactionary steps taken by major European powers like Germany and Russia. [4]
4. With reference to the results of the First World War, answer the following.
  - (i) Describe the Treaty of Versailles. [3]
  - (ii) Formation of the League of Nations and its objectives. [3]
  - (iii) Territorial rearrangement after the Treaty of Versailles. [4]
5. The division of Europe created rivalry among the nations. In this context, explain the following.
  - (i) The two power blocs in Europe before the First World War. [3]
  - (ii) Race for the armaments. [3]
  - (iii) Aggressive nationalism shown by European nations. [4]

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

1. With reference to the two major World Wars in the 20th century, answer the following questions.
  - (i) Explain briefly the causes of World War I with reference to nationalism and imperialism.
  - (ii) Explain briefly the territorial rearrangements as a result of World War I.
  - (iii) State any four causes that led to the Second World War.

## 2017

2. The 1914 and 1939 Wars that engulfed almost the entire world, were known as World Wars due to its unprecedented impact and damage. In this context, answer the following.
  - (i) Explain the immediate cause of the First World War.
  - (ii) Explain the consequences of the Second World War with reference to the Cold War.
  - (iii) Mention any four terms of the Treaty of Versailles which affected Germany after World War I.

## 2015

3. Name the two rival blocs formed in Europe before First World War.
4. The war that broke out in 1914 was different from the previous wars in many ways. In this context, discuss the following points briefly.
  - (i) Militant nationalism as a cause of the war.
  - (ii) How did the Treaty of Versailles seek to cripple Germany's military strength?
  - (iii) What was the territorial rearrangement of Europe as a result of this war?

## 2014

5. Mention any two terms of the Treaty of Versailles signed on 28th June, 1919.
6. State two factors that were responsible for the failure of the League of Nations.

## 2013

7. What was the immediate cause of the First World War?

## 2012

8. Name the signatory countries of the Triple Alliance (1882). State the rival bloc that was formed.

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

# Rise of Dictatorship : Fascism and Nazism

During the First World War, America gave the slogan 'Make the World safe for democracy'. It was also the thought of other nations who participated in the war. The massive destruction brought by the war affected social, political and economic life of Europe. After the war, many countries became free as the monarchical system abolished there. European countries suffered from unemployment, social unrest and different nationalists aspiration, etc. These led to emergence of parties with extreme ideologies like socialist, communist, Fascist and Nazi parties. In Italy and Germany, leaders like **Benito Mussolini** and **Adolf Hitler** attracted people with their charisma and established dictatorship. In Italy, the authoritarian rule was known as Fascism and in Germany, it was known as Nazism.

## Fascism

The word 'Fascism' derives from the Italian word 'Fascio' which means a bundle of lay. It suggested strength through unity. Fascism means an anti-democratic type of government, where the power of the state is vested in one man. It is compulsory for all to accept his policies and actions. Many intellectuals and the common people were not happy with democratic set-up, so they started favouring these 'one man' rule.

## Rise and Rule of Mussolini

Benito Mussolini started his career as a journalist and rose to be the Prime Minister of Italy. Initially, he was a socialist, but later became a dictator after the First World War. He fought in the First World War but returned severely wounded. Then onwards, he became anti-socialist and advocated dictatorship. In 1919, democracy was introduced in Italy. There was total instability and disorder between 1919 to 1922 as no single party gained clear majority. In 1922, the Italian communists called a strike. Mussolini declared that if the government failed to take a decisive step, then the facist would prevent the strike.

King Victor Emmanuel III offered the post of Prime Minister to Mussolini. Mussolini accepted the offer and on 30th October, 1922 he became the Prime Minister of Italy. Italy was defeated in the Second World War, ending the career and the life of Mussolini. In 1945, he was executed which ended Fascism in Italy.

## Causes Behind the Rise of Fascism in Italy

Fascism emerged as a national movement in Italy to provide solutions to the continuing problems of the time. Following are taken as important causes for the rise of Fascism:

### Dissatisfaction after the Treaty of Versailles

Italy joined the Allies in the First World War to gain territories of Turkey and Germany. But the **Treaty of Versailles** failed to give its Southern Tyrol, Trentino, coastal areas of Dalmatia and Albania.

### Economy of Italy

First World War made Italy weak in economic field. The war ruined the life of common people including the soldiers. Trade and business got ruined leading to large-scale unemployment. There was shortage of foodgrains that led to price rise. War debts increased. All these conditions made the situation worst.

### Inefficient Government

Between 1919 and 1922, more than 6 coalition governments were formed in Italy. The government was divided into different policies and could not find any solutions for unemployment, strikes and riots. People wanted bold and efficient government which led to the birth of Fascism.

### Threat of Communism

The communists and other socialist parties made the atmosphere of Italy explosive. The communists inspired people with their revolutionary ideas. The peasants extorted the land of the landlords and the workmen organised strikes, broke machines and captured factories. Lawlessness and uncertainty spread everywhere. People became tired of these things. They wanted a stable government which would establish peace and prosperity for them. This social scenario supported Mussolini and his Fascist Party.

### Failure of League of Nation

The Treaty of Versailles was important due to the rise of international institution to shed the future wars in Europe. But many nations which were crushed and was asked to pay huge war **indemnity**<sup>1</sup> were so unhappy that they never gave importance to the League of Nation. Russia did not participate in its formation. The victorious nations like Italy were not happy in redistribution of areas and colonies among each other. So many nations were unhappy with this world organisation.

### Benito Mussolini

Mussolini was born in a small town Predappio in Italy. His father was a blacksmith and socialist. His mother was a catholic school teacher. His early political view was heavily influenced by his father's view. He was a leading member of the Italian Socialist Party. He was expelled from the Party due to his opposition of the neutral standpoint taken by the Socialist Party during First World War. He denounced the Party and later founded the Fascist Movement in Italy. He formed the Fascist party and a conference was held at Naples in October, 1922.



He announced that if the demands of the Fascists were not fulfilled, he would attack Rome with his volunteers. Unlike Hitler who was jailed in capturing Berlin, Mussolini marched and captured Rome. Mussolini established his one-party dictatorship and remained in power until his death in 1945.

### CHECK POINT 01

- 1 Which country gave the Slogan 'Make the World safe for democracy'?
- 2 With what name the authoritarian rule was known in Germany?
- 3 Italy joined the Allies in the First World War to gain which territories?
- 4 Which title was assumed by Mussolini?

### Nazism

Germany fought the First World War alongside the Austrian Empire and against the Allies (England, France and Russia). The Allies strengthened by the US entry in 1917 defeated Germany and the Central Powers in November 1918. It gave the parliamentary parties an opportunity to recast German polity. The Constitution Assembly was formed to frame the constitution. The new constitution was introduced on 10th August, 1919. It set-up a democratic republic, Weimar republic. Weimar republic was unable to pursue consistent policies of recovery or stop riots. As a result people began to lose faith in democracy.

<sup>1</sup> Indemnity It means protection against damage or loss.

Hitler saw this as an opportunity to capture power in the German political world. People lost confidence in the democratic parliamentary system, which seemed to offer no solutions. Moreover Germans became increasingly worried of the spread of communist influence in Germany after the Bolshevik Revolution in Russia. Hitler played on this fear by stating that Russia would dominate Germany and only Nazism would provide Germany a stable administration and could check to growing influence of communism. This crisis in the economy, polity and society formed the background to Hitler's rise to power.

### Hitler's Rise to Power

In the First World War, Hitler joined the army and earned medal for bravery. Germany's defeat and the humiliating Versailles Treaty made him join the German Worker's Party in 1919. He took over the organisation and renamed it as National Socialist German Workers Party, which was later known as Nazi Party (1920).

#### Adolf Hitler

He was Born in Austria in 1889. He was chancellor of Germany from 1933 to 1945 and served as a dictator. Hitler sought lebensraum (living space) for the German people. His aggressive foreign policy was considered to be the primary cause of the Second World War. Under his leadership and racially motivated ideology, the Nazi regime was responsible for the **genocide<sup>2</sup>** of at least 5.5 million Jews and millions of other victims whom he and his followers thought as socially undesirable.



'Mein Kampf' (My struggle) was the autobiography of Hitler which laid out Hitler's plan for transforming German society into one based on race.

### Causes behind the Rise of Nazism

The main causes behind the rise of Nazism were as follows:

#### Humiliation of Germany in Signing Treaty of Versailles

Germans got humiliated after the imposing of harsh treaty over it. Germany was forced to cede large and important territory to France, Belgium, Poland and Denmark. Her overseas colonies were shared by the victorious nations. Reparations and war indemnity worth 33 billion dollars were fetched from it. Its army was minimised to one lakh only. This gave an opportunity to Hitler to encourage the people and disobey the signed treaty.

#### Poor Economic Condition

With the end of the First World War, all nations involved in the war became weak economically. Agricultural production, foreign investments, colonies, trade contracts, etc were ruined. The foreign nations raised tariffs on the entry of German goods. The rate of unemployment increased considerably. He asked the industrialists to support him as he would stop communists and the nationalisation of industries. In economic reform, Hitler launched the First Five Plan to increase production and improve the economy. These were as follows:

- (i) Factories were setup to provide work to the laboures.
- (ii) Industrial and agricultural production and trade were encouraged.
- (iii) Strikes were banned.
- (iv) A food corporation was created.
- (v) Imports and exports were controlled to maintain favourable trade balance.

Hitler gave the responsibility of economic recovery to the economist Hjalmar Schacht. He wanted full production and full employment through a state-funded work-creation programme.

#### Fear of Communism in Western Europe

After the Bolshevik Revolution in Russia, even the countries of Europe like Britain thought that only the rising of Hitler could stop the influences of Russia. This gave Hitler a chance to stop the communist influence.

Russian Revolution of 1917 even influenced German people. Hitler roused the national feeling among the people and tried to instigate them against communists.

#### Anti-Semitic Propaganda

In the First World War, Germany was badly hit. It was the propaganda of Hitler that the Jews had conspired with the Allies during the war. The Jews were dominant in the German economy. Hitler showed that the German people could be free from the exploitation at the hands of the Jews.

In Nazi Germany, Jews remained the worst sufferers. Jews had been stereotyped as killers of Christ and usurers. Until medieval times, they were barred from owning land. Their main occupations were trade and moneylending. Jews lived in separately marked areas called **ghettos**.

Hitlers hatred of Jews was based on pseudoscientific theories of race, which could be solved only through their total elimination. From 1933 to 1938, the Nazis terrorised, pauperised and segregated the Jews.

<sup>2</sup> Genocide It refers to the deliberate killing of a large group of people.

### Personality of Hitler

Hitler was a powerful orator. His passionate speech moved the people. He promised to build a strong nation, undo the injustice of the Versailles Treaty and restore the dignity of the German people. He promised a secure future for youth and to weed all foreign influences and resist all foreign conspiracies against Germany. Further Nazi propaganda<sup>3</sup> projected Hitler as messiah, who had arrived people to rescue from their distress. People attracted towards Hitler as their dignity and pride had been shattered and they were living in a time of acute economic and political crisis.

### Similarity Between the Ideologies of Fascism and Nazism

Following were the main similarities between the ideologies of Fascism and Nazism:

- Both favoured totalitarian rule.
- They both were against democratic political system.
- Both believed in state supremacy, which could suppress Fundamental Rights and individual freedom.
- Both wanted to uphold one party and one leader.
- Both believe in aggressive nationalism and imperialism.
- Both regarded war as an instrument of national interests.
- Both wanted to uphold anti-communist and anti-democratic rule.

### Comparative Study Between Nazism and Fascism

- Fascism was in vogue<sup>4</sup> between 1919 and 1945, while Nazism became popular between 1933 to 1945.
- Fascism is a term that was originally referred to the fascists of Italy under Mussolini, while Nazism is an ideological concept of the Nazi party of Hitler.

- Fascism believes in the 'Corporatism' of all elements in the society to form an organic state, while Nazism emphasised on racism.
- Fascism gave more importance to the state, while Nazism considered 'Aryanism' as more important.

### CHECK POINT 02

- 1 When did Hitler become the dictator of Germany?
- 2 Name the act which gave Hitler the power to sideline the parliament.
- 3 Name the leader associated with Fascism and Nazism.
- 4 Which ideology believed in mass killings and why?

## TIME LINE

Year	Important Events
1914	Beginning of First World War.
1917	America joins the First World War.
1918	End of First World War.
1919	Treaty of Versailles by Germany and Italy.
1920	Formation of the Nazi party in Germany.
1922	Mussolini became the Prime Minister of Italy.
1923	Hitler put into jail where he wrote his autobiography 'Mein Kampf'.
1932	The Nazi party failed to get majority.
1933	Hitler formed Nazi government.
1939	Beginning of Second World War.
1945	End of Second World War.

<sup>3</sup> Propaganda It means information which a political organisation publishes in order to influence people.

<sup>4</sup> Vogue It refers to the prevailing fashion or style at a particular time.

## Summary

- After the First World War dictatorship was established in Germany and Italy.
- Economic and social conditions of Italy helped the Fascists to grow.
- Fascism means the rule of a supreme leader.
- Benito Mussolini captured supreme power in Italy.
- The different causes of rise of Facism were dissatisfaction after the Treaty of Versailles, economy of Italy, inefficient government, threat of communism and failure of the League of Nation.
- Germans faced humiliation at the hands of the Allies during the signing of the Treaty of Versailles.
- Huge war indemnity followed by reparation of war was levied upon Germany.
- Communism started gaining ground in Germany and there was fear of its spread in the whole of Europe.
- To stop communism Hitler was chosen by the German and also by the foreign people.
- Hitler convinced the people that all problems were due to lack of powerful government at the top. He urged the people to support him to regain the lost glory of Germany.
- Millions of German became his follower and he showed them optimism which was needed at that time.
- Hitler came to power in 1933. He combined the post of Chancellors and President.
- The causes behind the rise of Nazism were humiliation of Germany in signing Treaty of Versailles, poor economic conditions, fear of communism anti-semitic propaganda and above all the charismatic leadership of Hitler.
- There were many similarities between the views of Hitler and Mussolini regarding their foreign policies (like, aggressive foreign policy, opposition to Britain and France etc).
- Both the ideologies of Fascism and Nazism had similarities, viz both supported 'One party, One Leader'; both ignored the importance of the League of Nations, both opposed Communism and adopted Imperialism and Capitalism, etc.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a) Short Questions [2 Marks each]

1. Why many European nations lost faith in democracy?

**Ans.** Many nations of Europe started believing in ‘one man-one party rule’ due to the lack of previous strong leadership in their countries.

2. What is the meaning of ‘Fascism?’ (2015)

**Ans.** Fascism means an anti-democratic type of government where the power of state is vested in one man.

3. State two underlying principles of Fascism. (2011)

**Ans.** The two underlying principles of Fascism were as follows:

- (i) Opposition has no space in government.
- (ii) It highlighted that “Italy got nothing from the colonial dinner” at the Treaty of Versailles.

4. Why Fascism was prevalent in Italy?

**Ans.** Italy did not get its worth in the Treaty of Versailles and on the other hand, it was economically ruined after the losses in the war. There was total instability and disorders. Thus, Fascism grew here.

5. When was democracy introduced in Italy?

**Ans.** After the First World War, democracy was introduced in Italy in 1919.

6. Why was a conference held by Fascists at Naples?

**Ans.** In October, 1922, over 40,000 armed volunteer gathered in Naples and Mussolini announced that if the demands of the Fascists were not fulfilled, they would attack Rome.

7. Who was called ‘Il Duce’?

**Ans.** Mussolini was called ‘Il Duce’ which means the leader.

8. Why the League of Nations failed to keep dictators under control?

**Ans.** Many nations thought that this institution was framed during the Treaty of Versailles and so was not just. Then they ignored the League of Nations.

9. What was the standpoint taken by the League of Nations towards Italy?

**Ans.** League of Nations declared Italy to be an aggressive nation and the member states agreed to impose restriction on economic sanction of Italy except coal and oil.

10. Describe any two features of Fascism.

**Ans.** The two features of Fascism are as follows:

- (i) Fascism was the supporter of one leader.
- (ii) Fascism supported the expansionist and aggressive nationalism.

11. List any two features of Nazism.

**Ans.** The two features of Nazism are as follows:

- (i) The Nazis were the follower of Nazism and thought that the Aryans race was superior among all.
- (ii) The Nazis followed its own policies and flouted openly the signed ‘Treaty of Versailles’.

12. Name the two groups of Nazi party army.

**Ans.** The two groups of Nazi party army were Brown shirts and Black shirts.

13. Name the book which was composed by Adolf Hitler.

**Ans.** The book which was composed by Adolf Hitler was ‘Mein Kampf’ meaning my struggle.

14. Why did the relations between Italy and other European nations strain?

**Ans.** Italy captured Abyssinia and left the membership of the League of Nation. It annoyed France and Britain and relations became bitter.

15. What was the situation of Germany after the First World War?

**Ans.** Germany lost the war at the hands of the Allies and the army were asked to reduce at a very lower level. Important regions were given to France.

16. How Treaty of Versailles affected Germany?

**Ans.** Germany was made the main convict of the war among all other defeated nations. It was asked to pay for the reparation and indemnity worth 33 millions and forced to give important territories to the Allies.

17. How was Nazi party formed?

**Ans.** Adolf Hitler, fought in German army in 1919, he joined a small group called ‘The German Workers Party’ based in Munich. Soon he became its leader and changed its name to the Nationalist Socialist German Workers’ Party or Nazi Party.

- 18.** Give two similarities in the foreign policies of Mussolini and Hitler. *[2012]*

**Ans.** The two similarities in the foreign policies of Mussolini and Hitler are as follows:

- Mussolini and Hitler both were against democracy and gave importance to capture regions.
- Both the leaders followed policies against the France and Britain.

- 19.** Mention the underlying similarities between Fascism and Nazism. *[2010]*

*Or* State the similarities between Nazism and Fascism. *[2018, 2007]*

**Ans.** Similarities between Nazism and Fascism were as follows:

- Both were anti-people and anti-democratic.
- Both advocated aggressive nationalism and imperialism.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

- 1.** ‘Dictatorship established in two nations of Europe.’ Explain the following questions.

- Failure of the League of Nations. *[3]*
- Treaty of Versailles (1919). *[3]*
- Economic crisis after the First World War. *[4]*

**Ans.** (i) League of Nations was formed while signing the Treaty of Versailles in 1919. Many victorious nations signed it along with defeated ones. League of Nations did not have universal acceptance, Russia did not accept the treaty. Many clauses were not practical and many unjust clauses became a burden for some weak and victorious nations. Germany openly flouted the treaty and followed expansionist policies.

(ii) Treaty of Versailles (1919) was signed to ‘make the world safe for democracy.’ After the war, monarchical governments were abolished and republics were formed. This treaty was not based on justice as per Germany and Italy. Both nations thought that they were cheated due to the greed of the victorious nations. Many of the provisions were humiliating to Germany.

(iii) After the First World War, many nations were badly hit. Whole Europe fell into the economic crisis. Germany came under the grip of unemployment and poverty. Inflation, price-rise, ruin of German trade and industry coupled with

world depression created an economic disaster of the worst form in Germany. America’s factories and countrysides were unharmed and performed better than ever. In the late 1920s, the German economy stabilised somewhat, but after the American stock market crash in 1929, the Great depression spread to Germany. From 1929 into the early 1930s, depression again wreaked havoc in German Society.

- 2.** Fascism was the supporter of anti-democratic policies. Answer the following questions.

- Thinking of a Fascist.
- Attitude of Fascism towards democracy.
- Mussolini.

**Ans.** (i) Many people who believed in Fascism were fascinated by their supreme leader. Many of them were eager to listen to the speeches of Mussolini. Their motto was “Everything for the state, everything within the state and nothing outside the state.” It was the need of Italy to get governed by a single leader and to obey his orders. Many people were against the rising communism and so they gave their support openly so as to get rid of communistic influence. This was the thinking of a Fascist.

(ii) Democracy was established in 1919 in Italy after the First World War and no one in Italy was happy due to the weak leadership. Italy was badly hit due to the First World War and unemployment and poor economy made them believe that they would be good only under strong leadership.

Many Italians believed that if Fascists would rule they would control the capitalists, industrialists, labourers, landlords, peasants and artisans. Weak leaders were responsible for their conditions. Italy got nothing from the Versailles Treaty even if it emerged victorious.

(iii) Refer to the chapter theory within box page no. 127.

- 3.** ‘Nazism was formed to regain the last glory of Germany.’ Answer the following questions.

- Treaty of Versailles and its effect on Germany. *[3]*
- State the condition of post war Germany. *[3]*
- Weak Government in post war Germany. *[4]*

**Ans.** (i) Treaty of Versailles proved very humiliating and was badly incorporated by the unjust terms and conditions. Germany had to cede many important territories and colonies to its enemies and neighbours. This was followed by the rising unemployment and poverty in Germany. Many of the people were dissatisfied over the division of Germany into two parts for the benefit of Poland.

- (ii) Germany was not allowed to trade with other foreign European nation. If some allowed, it then high tariffs were levied upon it for the import of goods. Huge loss of man and money devastated Germany. Important mines of iron and coal was taken by other nations, so losses in natural resources made production of machine made goods quite impossible. Unemployment was emerging swiftly.
- (iii) Germany had to face many economic problems after the First World War. The Government of Germany, Kaiser William II could not able to control the condition and was forced to resign. Then, the Constituent Assembly was formed on 19th January, 1919 to frame the Constitution, it was introduced on 10th August, 1919. However, this Constitution established a Democratic Republic in Germany, which faced massive problems and as a result of its failure gave birth to dictatorship or Nazism in Germany, under the leadership of Adolf Hitler from 1920s.
- 4.** Germany and Italy was ruled by dictators in the post First World War. Explain the following questions.
- Economic reforms of Hitler. [3]
  - Comparative study between Nazism and Fascism. [3]
  - Similarity between the ideologies of Fascism and Nazism. [4]

- Ans.** (i) Hitler launched the First Five Plan to increase production and improve the economy. Following steps were taken in this regard were as follows:
- Factories were set-up to provide work to the labourers.
  - Industrial and agricultural production and trade were encouraged.
  - Strikes were banned.
  - A food corporation was created.
  - Imports and exports were controlled to maintain favourable trade balance.
- (ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 129.**
- (iii) The main similarities between the ideologies of Fascism and Nazism are as follows:
- Both Favoured totalitarian rule.
  - Both believed in state supremacy, which could suppress Fundamental Rights and individual freedom.
  - To uphold the idea of one party and one leader.
  - Both believed in aggressive nationalism and imperialism.

- War regarded as an instrument of national interests.
- Both favoured anti-communist and anti-democratic rule.

### C Picture Based Questions

[10 Marks each]

- 1.** Study the picture given below and answer the following questions. [2013]



- Identify the leader in the picture. [3]
- Study any four factors that led to the rise of dictatorships in Germany. [4]
- Why did he invaded Poland? [3]

- Ans.** (i) The above picture belongs to Adolf Hitler, the German Chancellor. He became the chancellor of Germany in 1933. Acquiring power, he set out to dismantle the structures of democratic rule. The Nazi party controlled Germany under the leadership of Hitler and adopted the slogan 'One person, one empire and one leader'.
- (ii) Four factors that led to the rise of dictatorship in Germany were following:
- Treaty of Versailles was unjust to Germany. Many leaders at the time of signing the treaty also believed this.
  - Political instability followed by poor economic condition during the post war period, made the citizens ready for a rule of dictators.
  - Threat of communism, the rising power of the communism in Russia made every nation of Europe fearful.
  - Hitler promised to restore the dignity of the German people and create opportunities for the unemployed people in Germany.

- (iii) Hitler invaded Poland because he thought the Polish state is persecuting those Germans, who lived in Poland. The series of border violations proved that the Polish no longer were willing to respect the German frontier. Further the demand of Danzig for roadways to connect East Prussia with Germany was rejected by Poland. Poland made a military alliance with UK and France. All these factors agitated Hitler and he attacked Poland in August 1939.

- 2.** Study the picture and answer the following questions.



- (i) Identify the two personalities in the picture. What were the names of the parties founded by them? **[3]**
- (ii) How were these two responsible for Second World War? **[4]**
- (iii) State two similarities between Fascism and Nazism. **[3]**

**Ans.** (i) The two personalities in the given picture are Benito Mussolini and Adolf Hitler. The national Fascist party in Italy was founded by Benito Mussolini. Adolf Hitler founded the National Socialist German Worker's Party or Nazi Party in Germany.

(ii) The expansionary policies of winning territories and the dictatorship rule followed by Hitler and Mussolini are the two causes which responsible for Second World War. Hitler rejected the Treaty of Versailles and annexed Austrian Sudetenland, Czechoslovakia etc. He wanted to regain the old glory of Germany. Like him, Mussolini also wanted to revive the old glory of Roman Empire. Following an aggressive policy he captured Abyssinia and Albania. Their policy gave a severe blow to the aim of the League of Nations and created an atmosphere of hostility in world polities.

(iii) The two similarities between Fascism and Nazism are as follows:

- Both of them had a totalitarian rule. They were ruled by the dictatorship of Hitler and Mussolini.

- Both of them followed aggressive nationalism. They wanted to regain the old glory of their country. For this they captured foreign lands and expanded their empire.

- 3.** Answer the questions that follow based on the picture given below. **[2016]**



- (i) Identify the leaders in the picture. Give two examples to state that the leader followed an expansionist policy. **[3]**
- (ii) State three factors that led to the rise of Fascism. **[3]**
- (iii) State four similarities between the ideologies of Nazism and Fascism. **[4]**

**Ans.** (i) Benito Mussolini has been depicted in the given picture.

Two examples to state that the leader followed an expansionist policy are following:

- He used to say 'Italy must expand or perish'. He regained the Island of Rhodes, Dodecanese as well as the city of Fiume.
- He turned Albania into a protectorate of Italy and entered into commercial and diplomatic treaties with France and Russia. He captured Abyssinia in 1936.

- (ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 127.
- (iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 129.

# **CHAPTER TEST**

## **Short Questions**

**[2 Marks each]**

- 1.** Name the two countries in Europe where dictatorship was established.
- 2.** Why Germany faced economic problems due to Treaty of Versailles?
- 3.** Who invited Mussolini in Italy to form a new government?
- 4.** Where was Hitler born? Where he first formed his party?
- 5.** State two dissimilarities between the Nazism and Fascism.
- 6.** State two similarities between the Nazism and Fascism.
- 7.** What was the result of the rise of the two dictators in Europe?

## **Structured Questions**

**[10 Marks each]**

- 1.** Nazism and Fascism were against the rising support of communism. Explain the following questions.

- (i) Why European nations were against the communism and socialism? **[3]**
- (ii) Why people of Italy and Germany liked supreme leader's rule? **[3]**
- (iii) What were the political condition of both the nation? **[4]**

- 2.** Both Hitler and Mussolini gained power by violence. Explain the following questions.

- (i) March on Rome by Fascists. **[3]**
- (ii) March on Berlin and its effects. **[3]**
- (iii) Humiliating Treaty Terms. **[4]**

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

1. State the similarities between Nazism and Fascism.

## 2016

2. Study the picture and answer the following questions.



- (i) Identify the leader in the picture. Give two examples to state that the leader followed an expansionist policy.
- (ii) State three factors that led to the rise of Fascism.
- (iii) State four similarities between the ideologies of Nazism and Fascism.

## 2015

3. What is the meaning of 'Fascism'?

## 2013

4. Study the picture given below and answer the following questions.



- (i) Identify the leader in the picture.
- (ii) State any four factors that led to the rise of dictatorship in Germany and Italy.
- (iii) Why did he invaded Poland? State two similarities between Fascism and Nazism.

## 2012

5. Give two similarities in the foreign policies of Mussolini and Hitler.

## 2011

6. State two underlying principles of Fascism.

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

# The Second World War

A lot of events throughout the world led to the beginning of Second World War. In various ways, Second World War was a direct result of the **turmoil**<sup>1</sup> left behind by First World War. The League of Nations failed to establish peace in the world. The Treaty of Versailles was set aside and expansionist policies were prevailed.

The use of two atomic bombs in two cities of Japan and its disastrous effect proved Second World War more fatal than the First World War.



Map of the Europe during Second World War

<sup>1</sup> Turmoil A state of great disturbance, confusion or uncertainty.

## Causes Behind the Second World War

In 1918, the First World War was come to end. The world heaved a sigh of relief, but it was not known that after 20 years the world faced more disastrous war than the first one. The Second World War took place in 1939 and lasted upto 1945. The main causes of the Second World War were as follows:

### Dissatisfaction with the Treaty of Versailles

The Treaty of Versailles was a peace treaty, which was signed at the end of the First World War. But it led to gross dissatisfaction among the countries, especially, Germany and Italy. Germany had been forced to sign this treaty and had to pay heavy war compensation. On the other hand, Italy was not favoured by Allies for the compensation of war. So, the Italians felt that they had won the war but lost the peace. The Treaty of Versailles was a dictated and imposed treaty by the victorious countries on the defeated countries. Thus, the frustrated people started turning towards **totalitarian<sup>2</sup>** ideas and **authoritarian<sup>3</sup>** regimes.

### Rise of Fascism in Italy

Fascism was a political ideology and mass movement that dominated many parts of central, Southern and Eastern Europe. Italy joined the First World War from the side of the Allies to capture its wishful regions but got nothing out of the Treaty of Versailles. Dictatorship got established in Italy under the powerful leadership of **Benito Mussolini**. Mussolini focussed on recovering the lost glory of the old Roman Empire. He came out with changes in administration and followed an aggressive policy. Italy captured Abyssinia and Albania. The League of nations declared Italy aggressor and imposed economic sanctions on it. But Italy did not show any interest in League of Nations and created enemy in the world.

### Rise of Nazism in Germany

In 1933, Adolf Hitler came into power. Soon in 1934, he was proclaimed the leader (Führer) and became dictator of Germany. Hitler probably took the biggest gamble of his career, when he sent his army to the **demilitarised<sup>4</sup>** Zone of the Rhineland, which was demilitarised by the Treaty of Versailles and occupied this territory easily. He looked to restore Germany's power by expanding his empire.

He took over Austria and then Czechoslovakia. Germany laid her claim on the province of Sudetenland because majority of the people were Germans. Finally, it was captured without any difficulty.

In 1939, Hitler invaded Poland, then Britain and France gave an ultimatum to Germany. Nazis became enthusiastic under Hitler and thought they could achieve the goal of being a world power in little span of time. But this made the whole Europe divided into two power blocs.

### Appeasement Policy

It is a diplomatic policy of making political or material concessions to an enemy power in order to avoid conflict. Britain and France tried to make Germany and Hitler happy rather than try to stop him. They hoped that by meeting his demand, he would be satisfied and there would not be any war. Unfortunately, the policy of appeasement back fired. It only made Hitler bolder and gave him time to build up his army.

In April, 1938, Britain signed with Italy 'A Gentleman's Pact'. It was believed that Mussolini was satisfied and would dissociate himself from Hitler. European politics between March 1938 and March 1939 was dominated by the implementation of British Prime Minister Neville Chamberlain.

### Failure of the League of Nations

The League of Nations was setup to maintain peace in the world. It was intended that all countries would be members of the League and that if there were disputes between countries, they could be settled by negotiation rather than by force. There was a lack of cooperation among the member-nations and they wanted to use the League for their own benefits.

When Italy annexed Abyssinia, Japan annexed Manchuria and Germany annexed Austria and Czechoslovakia, the League of Nations could not take any action against them. In December 1939, Soviet Union was declared guilty of aggression against Finland and expelled from the League of Nations.

The member-nations lost their faith in the League and started preparing the war materials on a large scale.

<sup>2</sup> Totalitarian Relating to a system of government that is centralised and dictatorial.

<sup>3</sup> Authoritarian Favouring complete obedience to authority as opposed to individual freedom.

<sup>4</sup> Demilitarise To remove or forbid military troops in an area.

## Japanese Invasion of China

Japan and China fought the First World War on the side of the Allies. After the War, Japan became ambitious and started developing its army. In 1931, Japan attacked over China and seized Manchuria and renamed it as Manchukuo, an independent state. Japan with drew the League and penetrated far into Northern China. In 1937 again both the nations were in the battle ground.

## Hitler's Invasion of Poland

Under the Treaty of Versailles, Germany was divided into two parts. In order to give a land-route to Poland up to the sea, the port of Danzig was handed over to Poland. In consequence of this, Hitler attacked Poland on 1st September, 1939. France and Britain gave an ultimatum to Germany. In reply, Germany attacked France. On 3rd September, 1939, Britain and France declared war against Germany. Thus, the invasion of Poland marked the beginning of the Second World War.

## Attack on Pearl Harbour

Pearl Harbour was a US naval base near Honolulu, Hawaii. Hundreds of Japanese fighter planes descended on the base, where they managed to destroy or damage nearly 20 American naval vessels, including 8 enormous battleships and over 300 airplanes. The day after the assault, President Franklin D Roosevelt asked Congress to declare war on Japan. The attack on Pearl Harbour was a surprise, but Japan and the United States had been edging towards war for decades.

## Bombings on Hiroshima and Nagasaki

The Americans started their offensive against Japan to liberate the islands in the South West Pacific. Long before the invasion, scientists were working on the most powerful weapon ever conceived—the ‘Atom Bomb’. The first such bomb was detonated in a desert near New Mexico.

In 1945, days before the first bomb was dropped on Japan, American planes dropped leaflets warning about the deadly weapon and urging the Japanese people and the Government to end the fighting. On 6th August, 1945, the first atomic bomb ever to be used on humans, was dropped on Hiroshima. Despite the terrible destruction, the Japanese still refused to surrender.

On 9th August 1945, another bomb was dropped on Nagasaki. On 2nd September, 1945, Japan surrendered unconditionally. This marked the end of the Second World War.

### CHECK POINT 01

- 1 In 1938, Britain signed ‘A Gentleman’s Pact’ with which country?
- 2 With what purpose, ‘The League of Nations’ was formed?
- 3 When did Japan attack on China?
- 4 In which year Hitler invaded Poland?

## Consequences of the Second World War

### Defeat of Axis Powers

Up to the middle of 1942, Axis Powers met with remarkable success and captured large territories in Europe, Africa and Asia. However, in November 1942, Allied Forces recaptured African territories lost by France. This was followed by their victory over Italy. Italy made an unconditional surrender and signed an armistice.

In March 1945, the Allied forces moved across the Rhine and dealt a death-blow to the German forces. Hitler was so disappointed that he committed suicide on 30th April, 1945.

The Allied Forces, after Germany’s defeat, turned their attention towards Japan. Japan had occupied Hong Kong, Philippines, Singapore, Myanmar, parts of new Guinea and Indonesia. After bombings on Hiroshima and Nagasaki, Japan offered to surrender on the terms of Potsdam declaration on 10th August and the war came to an end.

After the war, the Axis Powers had to face the following consequences:

- Germany was divided into zones under the army of each of the Allied Powers.
- The Federal Republic of Germany (West Germany) was administered by UK, France and the USA.
- German Democratic Republic (East Germany) was administered by the Soviet Union.
- Japan and Italy also became very weak. American army occupy Japan in 1952. All lands acquired by Japan since 1895 were taken away.

## Formation of the United Nations

Another consequence of the Second World War was the formation of the United Nations (UN). After the First World War, the League of Nations was formed but it had several problems which led to Second World War. The immense loss of man and money made every nation serious to prevent any future wars. They did not want further involvement and emergences of such kinds of wars.

Consequently, the three big leaders, Frank D Roosevelt (US, President), Winston Churchill (Britain, Prime Minister) and Josef Stalin (Russia, Premier) met at Yalta in Crimea in February, 1945 to discuss about international peace. This meeting further led to the formation of United Nations on 24th October, 1945.

The Allies made sure to improve the UN, especially by splitting the power among five major countries i.e. United Kingdom (Britain), USA, China, France and Russia (USSR) instead of just two or three as in the League of Nations. The UN headquarters are located at New York, USA. At present, there are 193 members. Its basic objectives are international peace and security, creating faith in human rights and dignity of the humans.

### Charter of the UN

The three big leaders decided that all peace-loving nations would meet at San Francisco to finalise the Charter of the United Nations Organisation (UNO). In June 1945, the UN Charter was signed at San Francisco by 50 nations. Poland was 51st nation to sign in October, 1945. The charter was ratified by founder members (Big Five), who became its permanent members. The charter came into force on 24th October, 1945. So, 24th October, is celebrated as UN Day every year.

## The Cold War

Although, Russia and USA fought together in the Second World War against the Axis Powers, but a split got created between Russia and USA after the end of the war. The dropping of bombs surprised the world with technological

development of United States of America. Both of the countries had ability to influence events in any part of the world. Both had possession of nuclear weapons. In such circumstances, a direct war between the two rivals was a rare possibility, as none of them would want to risk war and gain politically by creating catastrophe<sup>5</sup> for their societies.

After the Second World War, Britain and France declined as superpowers and two new states, the USA and the USSR emerged as two powerful blocs.

### CHECK POINT 02

- 1 Mention any one consequence of the Second World War.
- 2 On which two Japanese cities, atom bomb were dropped during Second World War?
- 3 Why do we celebrate 24th October as UN Day every year?

## TIMELINE

Year	Important Events
1922	Mussolini formed the government in Italy.
1933	Adolf Hitler came into power.
1939	Hitler invaded Poland.
1940	Hitler invaded Norway and Denmark.
1940	Paris captured by Germany.
1941	Japan attacked on Pearl Harbour.
1943	Italy surrendered.
1944	Rome was conquered.
1945	Hitler committed suicide.
1945	Atom bombed on Hiroshima and Nagasaki.
1945	United nations formed.

<sup>5</sup> Catastrophe An event causing great and usually sudden damage or suffering.

## Summary

- The Second World War was the direct result of the turmoil created by the First World War.
- Italy and Germany were unhappy over the unjust or humiliating treatments at the hands of the Allied powers.
- The **Treaty of Versailles** was a peace treaty which signed at the end the First World War. But it lead to gross dissatisfaction among the countries, especially Germany and Italy.
- **Benito Mussolini** formed dictatorship in Italy by the Fascists party's help.
- Mussolini focussed on recovering the lost glory of the old Roman Empire. He captured Abyssinia and Albania and changed the administrative policies of Italy.
- **Adolf Hitler** became the Chancellor of Germany in 1933 and grabbed the status of Supreme Leader.
- Hitler probably took the biggest gamble of his career when he sent his army to the demilitarised zone of the Rhineland.
- Hitler invaded Poland and also claimed on the province of Sudetenland because majority of the people were Germans.
- **Appeasement policy** was practiced by England and France to forgive Germany over small faults.
- League of Nations failed to address the problems of nations and each nations tried to solve disputes in their own way.
- When Italy annexed Abyssinia, Japan annexed Manchuria and Germany annexed Austria and Czechoslovakia, the **League of Nations** would not take any action against them.
- Japan followed expansion policy to grab Manchurian Island from China.
- Germany attacked Poland without proper ultimatum and in reply Britain and France attacked Germany. Therefore, the attack over Poland is considered as the start of the Second World War.
- In reply of air attack over Pearl Harbour America dropped first atomic bomb over Hiroshima.
- Second bomb was dropped in Nagasaki which made Japan surrender.
- The Second World War started in 1939 and ended in 1945 with the death of Hitler and unconditional surrender of Japan.
- United Nation was set-up for world peace in 24th October, 1945.
- Cold War began in the world between the USA and the USSR.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a Short Questions [2 Marks each]

1. Which two countries were mainly dissatisfied over the Treaty of Versailles?

**Ans.** Germany and Italy were mainly dissatisfied over the Treaty of Versailles.

2. Why Germany became aggressive after the Treaty of Versailles?

**Ans.** Germany became aggressive due to the humiliation at the hands of the Allies. So, it started to get rid of this treaty.

3. What is meant by Nazism?

**Ans.** Nazism is a set of political beliefs associated with the Nazi party of Germany. It started in the 1920s. The party gained power in 1933.

4. Why did Italy attack Abyssinia?

**Ans.** Italy attacked Abyssinia following imperialistic attitude. Further, Italy wanted to control mineral-rich Abyssinia.

5. Why did Germany capture Rhineland?

**Ans.** Germany wanted to gain the lost military power so Germany sent his army to capture the Rhineland. Hitler early occupied the Rhineland that had been demilitarised by the Treaty of Versailles.

6. When did Germany annex Austria?

**Ans.** Germany annexed Austria in 1938. Hitler invaded Austria on the ground that Austria had a vast German population.

7. Who followed the policy of appeasement and against whom?

**Ans.** Britain and France followed the policy of appeasement against Germany as they were unwilling to contemplate war.

8. State the factors of Policy of Appeasement. *[2011]*

*Or* State the significance of the Policy of Appeasement as a cause for the Second World War. *[2017]*

**Ans.** It is a diplomatic policy of making political or material concessions to an enemy power in order to avoid conflict. Britain and France tried to make Germany and Hitler happy with this policy. They hoped that by meeting his demand, he would be satisfied and there

would not be any war. But this policy proved dangerous for world peace. It emboldened Germany, Italy and Japan which led to another destructive war.

9. State two reasons why Britain and France followed the appeasement towards Germany in 1930s. *[2007]*

**Ans.** The two reasons are as follows:

- Britain and France felt that the Germany had a real cause of grievances and if their grievances were removed they would not disturb others.
- Both wanted to check the Communist ideology of Russia. So, that they appeased Germany by ignoring its imperialist attitude.

10. State two factors which were responsible for the failure of the League of Nations. *[2014]*

**Ans.** The two factors which were responsible for failure of this League are as follows:

- Lack of cooperation among the member-nations and they used League as grinding their own axis.
- The League had no army to depend upon.

11. Give the reason as to why Japan invaded China? *[2017]*

*Or* What was the expansion policy of Japan?

**Ans.** Japan during First World War supported Allies, but soon became ambitious and started developing its army. In 1931, Japan attacked over China and captured Manchuria. Japan also captured many nations of the South-East regions such Malaya, Burma, Singapore, Philippines etc.

12. What was the immediate cause of the Second World War?

**Ans.** The invasion of Poland by Germany became the immediate cause of the Second World War. On 1st September 1939, German troops stormed Poland. On 3rd September, Britain and France declared war on Germany.

13. Name the countries which were annexed by Germany.

**Ans.** With the start of the Second World War, Germany annexed Norway, Denmark, Holland, Belgium, Poland and France.

**14.** What was the issue between Germany and Poland that was a cause of Second World War?

**Ans.** Many Germans were living in Poland and Hitler wanted to free them by annexing Poland. Part of Danzing was demanded back by Germany which was taken after the First World War.

**15.** Which all countries formed the 'Axis powers'?

**Ans.** Germany, Italy and Japan formed part of the Axis powers.

**16.** Name the countries that formed the Axis Bloc, during the World War II. *[2018]*

**Ans.** Germany, Italy and Japan formed the Axis Bloc, during the World War II.

**17.** How did USA enter the Second World War and why?

**Ans.** America remained neutral even when the world war was going on. 7th December, 1941, Japan surprisingly attacked the Pearl Harbour of Hawaii Island through aircrafts. This made USA join the war.

**18.** How did Germany surrendered to the Allies?

**Ans.** Germany conquered many nations, so that it attacked on Russia, but Hitler's forces were trapped due to cold weather of Russia. Germany fought on two fronts at same time on one side Britain and USA and on the other side Russia was attacking. Seeing his defeat, Hitler committed suicide. Thus, the German forces surrendered to the Allies unconditionally on 7th May, 1945.

**19.** Why did America drop the atom bombs on the cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki? *[2006]*

**Ans.** America was surprisingly attacked by Japan on Pearl Harbour, in the Pacific ocean on 7th December, 1941. Immediately after this America declared War on Japan and two atomic bombs were dropped on two cities of Japan.

**20.** Name the bombs which were dropped on the two cities of Japan.

**Ans.** USA dropped the atom bomb named 'Little Boy' on the city of Hiroshima on 6th August, 1945. After three days USA dropped another atom bomb called 'Fat Man' on the naval base of Nagasaki on 9th August, 1945.

**21.** Mention any two consequences of Second World War.

**Ans.** Two consequences of Second World War are following:

(i) After surrendering of Italy, Germany and Japan, most of the captured nations were liberated by the Allied powers. Both the Axis and Allied faced economically turmoil, but soon Allied came up through this.

(ii) Japan and Italy became very weak, so that the American General Mc Arthur was given complete control of Japan. Thus, the Allied powers maintained the world at peace.

**22.** What was the positive effect of the Second World War?

**Ans.** The formation of United Nations is considered by many scholars to be the positive effect of the Second World War. It still is a world organisation which works for maintaining world peace and also for world's cultural development.

**23.** What made Japan surrender to the Allies in August, 1945? *[2016]*

**Ans.** Bombing at Hiroshima and Nagasaki, made Japan surrender to the Allies in August, 1945.

**24.** What were the losses due to the occurrence of the Second World War?

**Ans.** More than 50 million people died in this war from various nations. Atomic bombs killed half of the population of two cities of Japan. Every nation taking part was economically weakened and the world saw disastrous effects of atomic bombs.

**25.** Why United Nations was set-up?

**Ans.** The world saw two World Wars and every nations lost more than they have gained out of it. So, to bring an end to the wars and to establish peace in the world, the United Nations was set-up.

**26.** How did the United Nations form?

**Ans.** Three big leaders of Allied powers, Roosevelt, Churchill and Stalin met at Yalta in Crimea to discuss international peace. The meeting was further made a path for the formation of United Nations. On 24th October, 1945, the United Nations came into existence.

**27.** How the world got divided again after the Second World War?

**Ans.** The capitalist bloc under the United States of America formed one bloc and the other bloc was formed by United Soviet Socialist Russia. Thus, began the war of policies, ideas and influence.

**28.** How many divisions were faced by the Germany after defeat in the Second World War?

**Ans.** As a result of the defeat of Germany in the Second World War, Germany was divided into four zones and its capital Berlin was divided into four sectors. The sectors assigned to the British, American and French joined together to form the West Berlin thereby leaving the Eastern Germany were all alone

under Russia. Berlin lay deep in Eastern Germany it fell in Russian occupation zone. So, Russian influence was much greater than the three Western power zones.

**29.** What is meant by the term Cold War? [2013]

**Ans.** Cold War is a war where the two groups fight over policies, their influences, ideas, types of public administration and their areas of influence. It is neither a war nor is a peaceful situation.

**30.** Why the Cold War emerged after the Second World War? Which two superpowers were the main opponents?

**Ans.** The USA and the USSR were the two opponents of the Cold War. United States of America and United Soviet Socialist of Russia became enemy after the Second World War for the differences in their policies.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

**1.** Second World War took place in Europe after 20 years since the end of the First World War. Explain the following questions.  
 (i) Humiliating Treaty of Versailles. [3]  
 (ii) Clash of Interests. [3]  
 (iii) Drawbacks in the League of Nations. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Treaty of Versailles was signed soon after the First World War in 1919. It was considered unjust and humiliating for its harsh terms upon the defeated nations.

Many nations did not like it and nations like Italy and Germany were strong opponents in standing against it. Many nations were divided giving space for some other nations.

(ii) Many nations followed aggressive nationalism and it became a race to win over foreign lands in Europe. Germany, Japan waged war to grab areas which were lost from them during the First World War. Japan attacked Manchuria and many cities fell into the hands of the Japanese.  
 (iii) League of Nations was set-up to make peace over the world. It was decided by world leaders to make such international organisation that would be resolving all the international disputes.

The League lacked universal representation. The permanent members opposed decision which were against their own interests.

It has no military force to act against any wrong actions, Germany and Italy started foreign aggression to regain the lost regions and the world followed it later.

**2.** Axis powers and allied Powers were the two blocs that were against each other in Europe. Explain the following.

- (i) Hitler's invasion of Poland [3]
- (ii) Significance of Appeasement Policy [3]
- (iii) Japanese Invasion of China. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 139.

(ii) Following were the significance of appeasement policy:

- The Appeasement Policy caused World War II because it allowed Hitler and the Nazis to build Germany's military power until it was strong enough to fight a major war.
- Appeasement emboldened Germany, making it think the allies would never have the will to fight.
- It made Germany much more aggressive and encourages it to take the steps that eventually led to war.

(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 139.

**3.** State how each of the following factors were the causes of the Second World War. [2011]

- (i) The Failure of the League of Nations. [3]
- (ii) The Aggressive Nationalism of Germany. [3]
- (iii) The Policy of Appeasement. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 138.

(ii) Germany, under the Nazi's Government of Hitler wanted to revive its past glory and also to avenge the humiliating Treaty of Versailles. Hitler declared re-armament in 1936 and started regaining its lost territories on all frontiers.

He annexed Austria, occupied Rhineland and dismembered Czechoslovakia. He also set his eyes on Danzing and Poland. This aggressive policy of Germany was the main cause of the Second World War. When it attacked Poland to stop Germany, Britain and France declared a war on Germany.

(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 138.

- 4.** With the surrender of Japan, the Second World War was finally over. The war had far reaching consequences, against this background, write short notes on.
- Effect of Second World War on Japan. [3]
  - The Division of Germany. [3]
  - Formation of the United Nations. [4]

**Ans.** (i) After Second World War, Japan became very weak and was decided to be governed by conquering forces. It was to be occupied by America till 1952. After that Japan was to resume managing their own affairs.

The Emperor Hirohito was left on the throne, though some of its power was retained by the Japanese Parliament. Japan was reduced to the pre-1895 territorial extent and the lands acquired after that were taken away from her.

- (ii) The last German armies surrendered on 7th May, 1945 and the next day was celebrated as the day of celebration of victory.

The victors divided Germany into two zones each under the army of allied nations. These zones were:

- Federal Republic of Germany (FRG), commonly known as the West Germany, was administered by United Kingdom, France and the USA with Bonn as the capital.
- German Democratic Republic (GDR), known as East Germany, was administered by the Soviet Union with East Berlin as the capital.

(iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 140.**

- 5.** With reference to the causes of the Second World War, answer the following questions. *[2014]*
- Explain how the ideologies of Fascism and Nazism led to the Second World War. [3]
  - How did the Japanese invasion on China create conditions for the outbreak of the war? [3]
  - Explain the consequences of the Second World War with reference to the formation of the United Nations. [4]

**Ans.** (i) The ideologies of Facism and Nazism led to Second World War in following ways:

- Fascism and Nazism developed out of a general crisis of the European Political System connected with the rise of the mass participation.
- The Fascist-Nazi Political revolutions stemmed from profound anxieties about the disintegration of the social order and of the national or racial unit.

- Both the ideologies believed in the leadership of one party, one man.
- Japan's ambition to control far East was one of the causes of the war. It intervened in Manchuria in 1931 and in spite of the League's opposition, occupied it. That marked the beginning of undeclared war on China by Japan.

Japan joined Berlin-Rome Axis to form the Berlin-Rome-Tokyo Axis to further its policy of expansion. In 1933, it left the League and started occupying the British and American properties in China. Britain and France felt that this appeasement policy could be used to weaken China and thus, started following the same. Thus, a war was inevitable under such circumstances.

(iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 139 and 140.**

- 6.** With reference to the consequences of the Second World War, answer the following questions.

- Write a brief note on the formation of the United Nations. [3]
- How did Germany was hitted badly? [3]
- What happened to the victorious nations? [2]

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 140.**

- (ii) Germany was hitted badly due to following reasons:

- In March 1945, the allied forces moved across the Rhine and dealt a death-blow to the German forces. Hitler was so disappointed that he committed suicide on 30th April, 1945.
- Germany was divided into zones under the army of each of the allied powers.
- Divided parts were administered by allied powers.

(iii) After Second World War following were the result with Victorious nations:

- The United States became a major superpower.
- Great Britain retained her place as a superpower, but was diminished.
- France recovered her lost provinces and remained as a regional power. Belgium was guaranteed her place as an independent nation.
- Japan realised her ability to project influence through military and started to build up her army and navy.

### C Picture Based Questions

[10 Marks each]

1. Study the map given below carefully and answer the following questions.



- (i) Why Germany faced strong fight in Western front? [3]  
(ii) Why Russia was attacked by Germany? [3]  
(iii) What was the immediate cause of the Second World War? [4]

- Ans.** (i) Germany and France were old rivals as they had also fought against each other in the First World War. Many nations were against the harsh terms of the Treaty of Versailles and no one came against Germany except France and Britain. So, Germany faced strong fight from France and Britain on the Western side of itself during the war.  
(ii) Russia and Germany signed a Non-Aggression Pact in 1939, Poland was between the two friendly nations. It is considered that Hitler wanted to win whole of Europe and in its mission he attacked Russia. It was the cold weather which stopped the

Germans from reaching Moscow and its vast areas on the Western side, it faced tough battle by France and Britain.

(iii) Poland was accused of committing cruelty against the Germans staying there. They wanted to be in Germany, so, Hitler wanted to grab Poland without any reply from Poland against the previous ultimatum of Germany. Germany attacked Poland and in reply France and Britain declared war on Germany. Poland was given a way upto sea at port Danzing in the Terms of Treaty of Versailles. Hitler considered it as humiliation and wanted to regain the lost land. This war on Poland by Germans is considered as the immediate cause of the Second World War.

2. Study the picture given below and answer the questions that follow.



- (i) Identify the leader in the picture. Explain the rise of Nazism in Germany. [3]  
(ii) Explain the Hitler's invasion of Poland. [3]  
(iii) Why did Britain and France appease Hitler? [4]
- Ans.** (i) The picture belongs to German Dictator, Adolf Hitler. For rise of Nazism in Germany, refer to chapter theory page no. 138.  
(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 139.  
(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 138.

# **CHAPTER TEST**

## **Short Questions**

[2 Marks each]

1. How did Italy get disappointed with the signing of the Treaty of Versailles?
2. How did Germany react against the unjust terms of the Treaty of Versailles?
3. How dictatorship in Europe became a major cause of the Second World War?
4. How Germany transformed itself in Hitler's rule?
5. Why did Britain follow appeasement policy?
6. Why did Poland become important nation to win over by Germany?
7. How Germany got earlier Victory in the Second World War?
8. Why did Manchuria become famous?
9. What is Cold War and how did it affect over world politics?
10. Why United Nations was set-up after the Second World War?
11. Why was Pearl Harbour was important and for whom?
12. Why was Japan attacked by America?

## **Structured Questions**

[10 Marks each]

1. Germany was badly hit by the Treaty of Versailles. Explain the following questions.
  - (i) Why it is said that Germany was hit hard in Treaty of 1919? [3]
  - (ii) Why Italy went against the Allies? [3]
  - (iii) Why Japan followed imperialism? [4]
2. Attack on Poland by Germany is known as the immediate cause of the Second World War. Explain the following questions.
  - (i) Effects of war on Germany. [3]
  - (ii) Effects of war over Japan. [3]
  - (iii) Use of weapons in this war. [4]

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

- 1.** Name the countries that formed the Axis Bloc, during the World War II.

## 2017

- 2.** State the significance of the Policy of Appeasement as a cause for the Second World War.
- 3.** Give the reason as to why Japan invaded China?

## 2016

- 4.** What made Japan surrender to the Allies in August, 1945?

## 2015

- 5.** What is the meaning of Fascism?

## 2014

- 6.** State two factors which were responsible for the failure of the League of Nations.
- 7.** With reference to the causes of the Second World War, answer the following questions.
  - (i) (a) Explain how the ideologies of Fascism and Nazism led to the Second World War.  
(b) How did the Japanese invasion on China create conditions for the outbreak of the war?
  - (ii) Explain the consequences of the Second World War with reference to the formation of the United Nations.

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

# The United Nations and its Major Agencies

Between 1914 to 1945, the world saw two World Wars. The Second World War was more disastrous and had more widespread destruction than that of the First World War. In order to check such destruction, the world leaders realised the importance of **peaceful existence<sup>1</sup>** for all nations. In an attempt to avoid future war and to promote world peace, the world leaders realised that there should be a world organisation. After discussion in many conferences, **United Nations** was set-up on 24th October, 1945 at San Francisco. The organisation today works for the world peace and cultural and economic development for all. The headquarters of United Nations is situated at New York City in the USA. At present, there are 193 member countries.

## Purposes and Objectives of the United Nations

The purpose and objectives of the United Nations have been outlined in the Preamble to the UN Charter. The purposes of the UN can be divided into four groups i.e. Security, Justice, Welfare and Human Rights.

The purposes of the United Nations are as follows:

- To maintain international peace and security.
- To take effective collective measures for the prevention and removal of threats to the peace for the suppression of acts of aggression or other breaches of the peace.
- To bring about by peaceful means in conformity with the principles of justice and international law, adjustment or settlement of international disputes or situations which might lead to a breach of the peace.
- To develop friendly relations among nations based on respect for the principle of equal rights and self-determination of peoples.
- To take other appropriate measures to strengthen universal peace.
- To achieve international co-operation in solving international problems of an economic, social, cultural or humanitarian character. Promoting and encouraging respect for human rights and for fundamental freedoms for all without any distinction as in race, sex, language or religion.
- To be a centre for harmonising the actions of nations in the attainment of these common ends.

<sup>1</sup> Peaceful Existence Peaceful living without any dispute.

**CHECK POINT 01**

- 1 When and where does the UN was set-up?
- 2 How many countries are the member of the UN?
- 3 Mention any one objective of the UN.

## Composition and Functions of Important Organs of UN

The United Nations has 6 organs. But as per the latest syllabus, we will explain only 3 organs. These are as follows:

### 1. The General Assembly

It is one of the important organs of the United Nations. It is known as **the Parliament of the United Nations** because all the member nations are member of it and therefore, it represents all nations of the world. All members of the United Nations have one vote each.

#### Session and its Composition

Regular Session of the General Assembly begins each year on the third Tuesday in September and continues until the third week of December. At every New Session, the assembly elects a new President, 21 Vice-Presidents and the Chairman of each of the 6 main committees. Special sessions at the request of the Security Counsellor by a special request by a majority of members are held.

Important decisions are taken by 2/3rd majority. Simple decisions are taken by a simple majority.

#### Powers and Functions

According to the charter, the following functions are performed by the General Assembly:

- Consider and make recommendations on the general principles of co-operation for maintaining international peace and security, including disarmament.
- Discuss any question relating to international peace and security except where a dispute or situation is currently being discussed by the Security Council and make recommendations on it.
- Discuss with the same exception and make recommendations on any questions within the scope of the charter or affecting the powers and functions of any organ of the United Nations.
- Initiate studies and make recommendations to promote international political co-operation, the development

and codification of international law, the realisation of human rights and fundamental freedoms and international collaboration in the economic, social, humanitarian, cultural, educational and health fields.

- Make recommendations for the peaceful settlement of any situation that might impair friendly relations among nations.
- To receive and consider reports from the Security Council and other United Nations organs.
- Consider and approve the United Nations budget and establish the financial assessments of member states.
- The assembly elect the members of other principal organs of the United Nations, namely; the non-permanent members of the Security Council, members of the Economic and Social Council and judges of the International Court of Justice. The assembly also elects members to its subsidiary organs and to the executive boards and governing councils of the United Nations agencies, funds and programmes.
- To appoint the Secretary-General on the recommendation of the Security Council.

### 2. The Security Council

The Security Council is the executive body of the United Nations. A representative of each member of the Security Council has to remain in the headquarters of the UN.

#### Composition

It consists of 15 members. It has 5 permanent members i.e. China, France, Russia, Britain and the United States of America and 10 non-permanent members i.e. 5 members from Afro-Asian nations, 2 members from Latin American nations, 2 members from West European nation and 1 member from East European nation.

These non-permanent members get elected by a 2/3rd majority for a 2 years term. Any member retiring is not eligible to be re-elected. Veto power can be exercised only by any permanent member exclusively.

Any decision is taken by the affirmative votes of all permanent members.

#### Veto Power

Each of the 5 permanent members has the power to veto a decision. By application of this right, a permanent member may reject any decision at the Security Council. Any decision of this council is held once a month, but in case of Emergency, it can be held whenever required.

### Powers and Functions

Under the United Nations Charter, the functions and powers of the Security Council are as follows:

- To maintain international peace and security in accordance with the principles and purposes of the United Nations.
- To investigate any dispute or situation which might lead to international friction.
- To recommend methods of adjusting such disputes or the terms of settlement.
- To formulate plans for the establishment of a system to regulate armaments.
- To determine the existence of a threat to the peace or act of aggression and to recommend what action should be taken.
- To call on members to apply economic sanctions and other measures not involving the use of, force to prevent or stop aggression.
- To take military action against an aggressor.
- To recommend the admission of new members.
- To exercise the trusteeship functions of the United Nations in **strategic areas<sup>2</sup>**.
- To recommend the General Assembly, the appointment of the Secretary-General and together with the assembly, to elect the Judges of the International Court of Justice.

### 3. The International Court of Justice

It is the principal judicial organ of the UN. It was established in June 1945 by the Charter of the UN and began to work in April 1946.

Its headquarters is at the Hague (Netherlands). Out of the 6 principal organs of the United Nations, it is the only 1 not located in New York in USA. Its official languages are English and French.

The court has a dual role to settle in accordance with international law, to settle the legal disputes submitted to it by the states, to give advisory opinions on legal questions referred to it, to modify international laws, etc.

### Composition and Qualifications

The court comprises of 15 Judges elected for a term of 9 years by the UN General Assembly and Security Council sitting independently. Elections are held every 3 years for 1/3rd of the seats. A retired judge may be re-elected. The President and Vice-President of the court are elected for a term of three years.

The judges must possess the qualifications required in their respective countries for appointment to the highest judicial offices or should be a jurist of recognised competence in international law. Any judge can be impeached only by unanimous votes of all the other judges.

### Powers and Functions

- Only the member states may apply and appear before the International Court of Justice. The court decides cases in accordance with international treaties and conventions in force and is competent to entertain a dispute if the parties so involved agree for it.
- To settle, in accordance with international law, legal disputes submitted by states.
- The advisory procedure of the court is open only to its 5 organs and 16 other authorised agencies of the UN family. The court plays a significant role in the codification of International laws. The court may recommend appropriate procedures/methods of settlement during or at the end of the case.

### CHECK POINT 02

- 1 Name the important organs of the UN.
- 2 Which are the official languages of the International Court of Justice?
- 3 What is the term of a Judge of the International Court of Justice?

### Major Agencies of the UN

There are 18 specialised agencies and 14 major programmes to achieve economic and social progress. The major agencies of the UN are as follows:

#### The United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund (UNICEF)

UNICEF stands for United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund. Later on, its name was changed to United Nations Children's Fund, but its acronym continued. It was created by the General Assembly during its first session to provide long range benefits to the children of all developing countries. It is governed by a 36 members executive board. Its headquarters is in New York.

<sup>2</sup> Strategic Areas Area of importance for any nation in respect to others.

The agency depends on voluntary contributions made by different governments, by private agencies, through sale of greeting cards and via other fund raising campaigns, to finance its projects. UNICEF was also awarded the Nobel Prize for Peace (1965) and the Indira Gandhi Prize for Peace (1989).

### **Functions of UNICEF**

The functions of UNICEF are as follows:

- It works for the protection of children in respect of their survival, health and well being. It also supports child-immunisation programmes.
- It provides funds for training the personnel, including health and sanitation workers, teachers and nutritionists, etc.
- It provides technical supplies, equipments and other aids to villages.
- It assists governments to plan, develop and extend community services.
- It provides help to children and mothers in case of emergencies.
- It makes efforts to prevent diseases like tuberculosis, malaria, eye diseases, skin diseases, etc.

### **World Health Organisation (WHO)**

It is the specialised agency for health, established on 7th April, 1948 with the objective of achieving the highest possible level of health for all. Its headquarters is at Geneva in Switzerland. Its main aim is to help the government raise the standards of public health and medical research.

### **Functions of WHO**

The functions of WHO are as follows:

- It helps countries to improve their health system by building up infrastructure.
- It gives important drugs needed for medical care.
- It launches programmes to immunise children against 6 major diseases such as measles, diphtheria, tetanus, tuberculosis, polio and whooping cough.
- It promotes research to cure and prevent diseases.
- It works towards providing safe drinking water and adequate waste disposal.
- It organises conferences, seminars and training activities for health care personnel.
- It aims at fighting diseases and preventing them from spreading.
- It publishes health journals to create health consciousness among people.

### **United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO)**

It was established on 4th November, 1946 with the main objective to contribute the peace and security in the world, by promoting collaboration among nations through education, science, culture and communication. Its headquarters is at Paris. All members of the UN are automatically entitled to membership of UNESCO.

### **Functions of UNESCO**

The main functions of UNESCO are as follows:

- Removal of illiteracy by encouraging adult education, distance education and open school education.
- Financial assistance for the education of disabled children. It also lays special emphasis on the education of women and girls.
- Encouragement of scientific education by providing regional training centres.
- Advices about the production of textbooks, syllabus and teacher-training.
- Helps to set-up library systems and also gives fellowships.

### **Scientific Activities**

Scientific activities undertaken by UNESCO are as follows:

- It promotes research in the fields like Geology, Mathematics, Physics and Oceanography.
- It helps in correcting the imbalances in scientific and technological manpower, so existing.
- It encourages the study of Social Sciences in order to focus attention on combating all forms of discrimination, improving the status of women and helping the youth in solving their problems.
- It also organises conferences to bring scientists together.
- It circulates information through journals. 'Courier' is the official monthly magazine of UNESCO.

### **Preservation of Cultural Heritage**

Following are the measures taken by UNESCO to preserve the cultural heritage:

- It provides technical advice and assistance, equipments and funds for the preservation of monuments and other works of art.
- It aims to protect the world inheritance of books, works of art and rare manuscripts. It also helps in translating rare manuscripts.

- It promotes cultural exchange between people of different countries by sponsoring travelling, art exhibitions and similar activities.
- It gives encouragement to artistic creations in Literature and Fine Arts. UNESCO is also lending its hands to India so as to restore the Taj Mahal.

### CHECK POINT 03

- 1 How many members are there in the executive board of UNICEF?
- 2 When was the WHO established?
- 3 Where is the headquarters of UNESCO?

## TIMELINE

Years	Important Events
1941	The London Declaration
1941	The Atlantic Charter
1942	The Washington Declaration
1943	The Moscow Declaration
1944	The Dumbarton Oaks Conference
1945	The Yalta Conference
1945	The San Francisco Conference
1945	Establishment of the United Nations

## SUMMARY

- Second World War, failure of League of Nations, rise of dictatorships in European nations, invention of deadly weapons led to the set-up of the world body i.e. the United Nations.
- The purposes of the United Nations are to maintain international peace and security, to develop friendly relations among nations, to achieve international co-operation, etc.
- The compositions of United Nations are as follows:  
The General Assembly  
The Security Council  
The International Court of Justice
- The General Assembly is also known as the 'Parliament of the United Nations'. All Members to the UN are automatically the part of the General Assembly and each member has one vote.
- At every new session of the General Assembly a new President, 21 Vice-Presidents and a Chairman of each of the 6 committees are selected.
- Important functions of the General Assembly are to make recommendations on the general principles of co-operation for maintaining international peace and security, discuss any question relating to international peace and security, make recommendations for peaceful settlement of disputes, etc.
- The Security Council is the executive body of the United Nations. It has 15 members. All permanent members are its all time members. Other non-permanent members are chosen among members of the General Assembly for 2 years.
- Different types of functions are performed by the Security Council. Important among them are to maintain

international peace and security, to investigate any dispute or situation which can cause friction, to formulate system to regulate armaments, to take military action against an aggressor, to recommend new member's entry, to recommend to the General Assembly, the appointment of the Secretary-General, to elect judges of the International Court of Justice, etc.

- The International Court of Justice works for the settlement of disputes which are submitted to it by the member states. It has 15 judges elected for a term of 9 years. They are chosen from all nations by merit.
- UNICEF stands for United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund. Later it changed into United Nations Children's Fund, but its acronym continued.
- Among the functions of UNICEF, important are to work for the protection of children in respect of survival, health and well being, provides technical supplies, equipments and other aids to villages. Its headquarters is at New York.
- WHO stands for World Health Organisation. Its headquarters is at Geneva in Switzerland. Its main aim is to help the government to raise the standards of public health and medical research.
- UNESCO stands for United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation. Its headquarters is at Paris in France.
- UNESCO aims for the promotion of collaboration among nations through education, science, culture and communication, removal of illiteracy by encouraging adult education, establishing library systems, etc.
- Many measures are taken by UNESCO to preserve the cultural heritage of the world. It upholds the freedom of press in all nations.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a Short Questions [2 Marks each]

1. Describe briefly the need to have a world level body after the Second World War.

**Ans.** The world saw two disastrous World Wars and its impact on the world. Loss of men and money made world leaders convinced that peace was highly needed. For the peaceful existence of all nations, a world body was needed which would reduce the threat of war and could prevent future wars.

2. When and where was the United Nations formed?

**Ans.** United Nations was formed at San Francisco in USA on 24th October, 1945. It was set-up to give peace a chance in solving world's disputes.

3. Explain three objectives of the United Nations.  
[2009]

**Ans.** The three objectives of the United Nations are as follows:

- (i) To develop friendly relations among nations.
- (ii) To maintain international peace and security and to that end to take effective collective measures.
- (iii) To harmonise the actions of nations in the attainment of these common aims.

4. What are the official languages of the UN and explain the flag of the United Nation?

**Ans.** Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian and Spanish are the official languages of the UNO. The UN flag is light blue in colour and is portrayed in white. At its centre is UN Emblem, a polar map of the world, embraced by twin olive branches.

5. What is meant by the General Assembly of the United Nation?

**Ans.** The General Assembly of the United Nations is known as 'the Parliament of the United Nations'. All the member of nations are member of the General Assembly and have one vote each.

6. Explain any three powers and functions of the General Assembly.

**Ans.** Three powers and functions of the General Assembly are following:

- (i) It considers and makes recommendations on the general principles of co-operation for maintaining international peace and security, including disarmament.

- (ii) It makes recommendations for the peaceful settlement of any situation that might impair friendly relations among nations.

- (iii) It receives and considers reports from the Security Council and other United Nations Organs.

7. Mention the big five countries that constitute the permanent members of the Security Council (USA).

**Ans.** The five permanent members of the Security Council are Britain, France, Russia, China and the United States of America (USA).

8. The UN, apart from its main organs also work through its allied agencies. In this context, mention two functions of the Security Council in maintaining peace.

**Ans.** Two functions of the Security Council in maintaining peace are as follows:

- (i) The Security Council can investigate any dispute which might lead to International friction.
- (ii) It can call on members to apply economic sanctions, to prevent or stop aggression, etc.

9. What is meant by the term 'Veto Power' which is enjoyed by the permanent members of the Security Council?

**Ans.** A negative vote which is cast by any of the permanent body of the Security Council is called 'Veto'. This means that by applying this right, a permanent member may reject any decision of the Security Council.

10. Name the principal judicial organ of UN. Explain briefly its composition.

**Ans.** The International Court of Justice is the principal judicial organ of the UN. The court consists of 15 judges elected for a period of 9 years and can get re-elected. The court elects its President and Vice-President for 3 years of time.

11. Mention any three functions of the International Court of Justice.

**Ans.** Three functions of the International Court of Justice are as follows:

- (i) The court plays a significant role in the codification of International law.

(ii) The court's jurisdiction extends to disputes pertaining to the interpretation of International law.

(iii) The court decides cases in accordance with international treaties and conventions in force.

**12.** Who appoints the Secretary General of the United Nations?

**Ans.** The Secretary General of the United Nations is appointed by the General Assembly on the recommendation of the Security Council for 5 years. He may be re-elected also.

**13.** Which agency of the UN looks after the interests of the children in the world? What was the original purpose of setting up this agency?

**Ans.** United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund (UNICEF) looks after the interests of the children's in the world. The original purpose of setting up this agency is to protect children from adversity and by preparing them for life. It tries to save children from the courage of war and wants to promote social progress and better standard of like for them.

**14.** State the full forms of the following agencies of the United Nations. UNICEF and UNESCO.

*[2018, 2016]*

**Ans.** UNICEF stands for United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund.

UNESCO stands for United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation.

**15.** Explain the three vital roles that the WHO plays in combating diseases.

*[2010]*

**Ans.** Vital roles that the WHO plays in combating diseases are as follows:

(i) It helps the countries to build up infrastructure in the health sectors.

(ii) It promotes research to cure and prevent diseases.

(iii) It gives important drugs needed for medical care. For example, it launched a programme to immunise children against six major diseases.

**16.** Where is the headquarters of the WHO located? Mention any one function of the Security Council.

**Ans.** The headquarters of the WHO is located at Geneva in Switzerland. The Security Council formulates plans for the establishment of a system to regulate armaments.

**17.** Write the expanded form of UNESCO. Mention two of its functions in the field of education.

*Or* Mention any two functions of UNESCO in the field of education.

*[2017]*

**Ans.** UNESCO stands for United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation. The functions of UNESCO in the field of education are as follows

- (i) It provides financial assistance for the education of disabled children.
- (ii) It works for the removal of illiteracy by encouraging adult education, distance education and the open school system.

**18.** Mention any two scientific activities of UNESCO.

**Ans.** Two scientific activities of UNESCO are following:

- It promotes research in the fields like Geology, Mathematics, Physics and Oceanography.
- It helps in correcting the imbalance in scientific and technological manpower, so existing.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

**1.** United Nations is the world body in governance of world nations. In this respect, answer the following questions.

(i) Explain any three aims or objectives of the United Nations.

*[3]*

(ii) Write briefly the powers and functions of the United Nations General Assembly.

*[3]*

(iii) Describe the composition of the Security Council of the United Nations.

*[4]*

**Ans.** (i) Three aims and objectives of the United Nations are as follows:

(a) To save the world from future wars.

(b) To make the world safe for democracy.

(c) To secure economic and social development.

(ii) Powers and functions of the United Nations General Assembly are as follows:

- To discuss any question relating to international peace and security.

- To receive reports from the Security Council and other organisation.

- To elect non-permanent members of the Security Council.

- Elect judges of the International Court of Justice.

- To appoint Secretary General for the UN.

(iii) Security Council has 15 members out of which 5 members are permanent i.e. China, France, Russia, Britain and USA. Other 10 members are selected amongst members of the General Assembly for the

period of 2 years through 2/3rd majority. All members have 1 vote while the Veto power rests with only the permanent members of the Security Council. India is trying to get permanent membership in the Security Council.

- 2.** The United Nations was established to be an effective peace keeping international organisation. In this context, explain the following questions.

- (i) Its objectives and purposes. [3] [2015]
- (ii) The meaning of Human Rights as incorporated in the Human Charter. [3]
- (iii) Name the agency that the UN set-up to deliver relief to children and mothers after Second World War. State any three of its functions. [4]

**Ans.** (i) The objectives of the United Nations are to maintain international peace and security; to save the world from any future wars; to implement the principles mentioned in the charter, to make social and economic progress.

- The purposes of the United Nations are to take effective collective measures for the prevention and removal of threats to the peace, suppression of aggressor nations.
- To develop friendly relations among nations for equal rights and self-determination of people.
- To achieve international cooperation in solving international problems of an economic, social, cultural or humanitarian character.

(ii) On 10th December, 1948, the General Assembly of the United Nations adopted and proclaimed the Universal Declaration of the Human Rights in which the Articles 1 and 2 are the most important.

**Article 1** All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights. They are endowed with reason and conscience and should act towards one another with spirit of brotherhood.

**Article 2** Everyone is entitled to all the rights and freedom a set forth in this declaration, without distinction of any kind, such as race, colour, sex, language, religion, political or other opinion, national or social origin, property, birth or other status. Furthermore, no distinction should be made on the basis of the political, jurisdiction or international status of the country or territory to which a person belongs, whether it be independent, trust, non-self governing or under any other limitation of sovereignty.

(iii) United Nations Children's Emergency Fund (UNICEF) is the agencies that the UN set-up to deliver relief to children and mothers after the Second World War. Its functions are as follows:

- Providing funds to strengthen the training and study of national personnel, who are giving service in health and sanitation, teaching fields, nutrition experts and child welfare specialists.
- It assists governments to plan, develop and extend in both rural and urban environment the low cost community based services in maternal and child health care.
- Providing assistance for long-term programme for children and meeting needs of mothers and children in emergencies arising due to natural disasters, epidemics or civil strife.

**3.** The United Nations Organisation was established to maintain peace and 'promote social progress and better standards of life in larger freedom'. With reference to this, explain the following questions. [2013]

- (i) The composition of the Security Council. [3]
- (ii) The functions of the Security Council related to maintaining world peace. [3]
- (iii) The role of UNESCO in the development of science and technology. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Refer chapter theory page no. 150.

- (ii) The functions of the Security Council related to maintaining world peace are as follows:
  - The Security Council investigates, any dispute or situation which might lead to International friction.
  - It recommends methods of adjusting any such dispute and the terms of settlement.
  - The Council can call on members to apply economic sanctions and other measures not involving the use of force to prevent or stop aggression.
- (iii) The scientific and technological activities undertaken by the UNESCO are as follows:
  - It organises seminars and conferences of scientists of various countries and circulates information through journals, press and exhibition.
  - It promotes research in the fields of Geology, Mathematics, Physics and Oceanography.
  - It helps in correcting the imbalance in scientific and technological manpower that exists.
  - It encourages the study of Social Science in order to focus attention on combatting all forms of discrimination.

**4.** It was the hope founding fathers of the United Nations that with the goodwill and co-operation of all member-states, it would be able to function effectively. With reference to this, answer the following questions. [2009]

(i) Explain the composition of the Security Council. [3]

(ii) Mention any three objectives of the United Nations. [3]

(iii) Write the expanded form of the UNICEF and state three functions of this agency. [4]

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 150.**

(ii) The three objectives of the United Nations are as follows:

- (a) To save the world from any other world war.
- (b) To promote respect for Human Rights Fundamental Freedom.
- (c) To establish such a condition under which justice and respect for international law and treaties can be maintained.

(iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 151 and 152.**

**5.** The United Nations apart from its main organs also work through its allied agencies. In this context, answer the following questions.

(i) Write the expanded form of UNESCO. Mention two of its functions in the field of education.

(ii) Explain three vital roles that the WHO plays in combating diseases.

(iii) Mention four functions of the Security Council in maintaining peace.

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 152.**

(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 152.**

(iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 151.**

**6.** The world has seen the damages caused by the two World Wars. The aim of the United Nations Organisation is to save the succeeding generations from the scourge of another war. With reference to this answer the following questions.

(i) Explain any three functions of the General Assembly.

(ii) Mention three important functions of the UNESCO.

(iii) Discuss the role of the Security Council in maintaining world peace.

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 150.**

(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 152.**

(iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 151.**

**7.** With reference to the United Nations and its related agencies, answer the following questions. [2016]

(i) Explain any three functions of the WHO. [3]

(ii) State the composition of the International Court of Justice. [3]

(iii) State any four functions of the General Assembly. [4]

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 152.**

(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 151.**

(iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 150.**

**8.** The horrors of the two World Wars, led to the formation of the United Nations Organisations, while the formation of the Non-Aligned Movement followed later. In this context, answer the following. [2017]

(i) Mention any three aims and objectives of the United Nations Organisation.

(ii) Explain any three functions of the Security Council.

(iii) Explain any four factors that led to the formation of the Non-Aligned Movement.

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 149.**

(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 151.**

(iii) Four factors that led to the formation of the Non-Aligned Movement were as follows:

- **Asian Relations Conference (1947)** Asian Relations Conference was held in Delhi in March, 1947 by the world leaders. Its aim was to show the world that Asian nations are not the puppet in the hands of the superpowers and that they would exist independently in the maintenance of peace.
- **Arms Race** America showed her dominancy by dropping of the two atomic bombs over Japan. This was unexpected and many countries were worried about the lack of arms in comparison to America and other superpowers. Newly independent nations were influenced by the fear of arms so they too participated in the arms race. The race of armaments are made the Non-Aligned Movement as a mass movement.
- **Right of Independent Foreign Policy** All the newly independent nations were busy in maintaining international relations among nations. So, they formed unity and sought to follow non-alignment. They were anxious to practice some foreign policies which could not be influenced by the two superpowers.

- Bandung Conference** The Bandung conference of 1955 was held to keep newly independent nations aloof from the world politics and try to settle their disputes by practicing the five principles of mutual co-existence or 'Panchsheel'. Jawaharlal Nehru along with President Sukarno of Indonesia and Chou-En-Lai of China participated in taking further the path of Non-Aligned Movement.
- 9.** With reference to the United Nations and its specialised Agencies, answer the following questions. [2018]

- Mention any three functions of the International Court of Justice. (3)
- State the composition of the General Assembly. (3)
- State any two functions of the UNICEF and any two functions of WHO. (4)

- Ans.** (i) Three functions of the International Court of Justice are:
- The court decides cases in accordance with international treaties and conventions in force and is competent to entertain a dispute if the parties so involved agree for it.
  - To settle, in accordance with international law, legal disputes submitted by states.
  - Court can give its advisory opinion only when present member nations request the court to give its advisory opinion.
- (ii) The General Assembly is the main organ of the UNO, and all members of the UNO are members of General Assembly. Each state has five representatives in the General Assembly, but each state has one vote. All 193 member countries of the UNO are members of the General Assembly.
- (iii) Two functions of UNICEF are:
- It works for the protection of children in respect of their survival, health and well beings. It also supports child immunisation programmes.
  - It provides technical supplies, equipments and other aids to villages.

Two functions of WHO are:

- It helps countries to improve their health system by building up infrastructure.
- It gives important drugs needed for medical care.

### C Picture Based Questions

[10 Marks each]

- 1.** Study the picture and answer the questions that follows. (2012)



- Identify the organisation associated with the given Emblem. Mention the functions of any one organ of this organisation.
- Where is the headquarters of this Organisation located? Mention its objectives.
- Name the principal judicial organ of this organisation and explain its composition.

- Ans.** (i) The organisation is United Nations, which is associated with the above Emblem. For the functions of Security Council as the organ of United Nations, refer to chapter theory page no. 151.
- (ii) The headquarters of the United Nations is in New York City.  
For its objectives, refer to chapter theory page no. 149.
- (iii) The principal judicial organ of the United Nations is the International Court of Justice. Its headquarters is at the Hague (Netherlands).  
For its composition, refer to chapter theory page no. 151.

- 2.** Study the picture and answer the following questions.

- Mention three scientific activities undertaken by UNESCO.
- What measures are taken by UNESCO to preserve the cultural heritage?
- Explain the functions of UNESCO.



- Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 152.  
(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 152 and 153.  
(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 152.

# **CHAPTER TEST**

## **Short Questions**

**[2 Marks each]**

- 1.** Name the international organisation which was set-up after First World War.
- 2.** How many nations are there in the General Assembly? Are they form part of the Security Council?
- 3.** Mention the functions which are performed by the Security Council.
- 4.** Why did the UNESCO came into existence?
- 5.** Give the main functions of the UN General Assembly.
- 6.** How do UNESCO work for the good of the children?
- 7.** What is the main aim of WHO?

## **Structured Questions**

**[10 Marks each]**

- 1.** UN works through major agencies. Explain the following.
  - (i) Functions of UNICEF [3]
  - (ii) Functions of WHO [3]
  - (iii) Functions of UNESCO [4]
- 2.** UN works for World Heritage. Explain the following questions.
  - (i) Describe the growing need of the preservation of culture of the world. [3]
  - (ii) How important is the work of UNESCO? [3]
  - (iii) Describe the scientific activities undertaken by UNESCO. [4]
- 3.** In the absence of UN the world would not have been so peaceful. Explain the following.
  - (i) Importance of UN [3]
  - (ii) Powers of UN [3]
  - (iii) Any one organ of UN. [4]

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

- 1.** With reference to the United Nations and its specialised Agencies, answer the following questions.
  - (i) Mention any three functions of the International Court of Justice.
  - (ii) State the composition of the General Assembly.
  - (iii) State any two functions of the UNICEF and any two functions of WHO.

## 2017

- 2.** Mention any two functions of UNESCO in the field of education?
- 3.** The horrors of the two World Wars, led to the formation of the United Nations Organisation, while the formation of the Non-Aligned Movement followed later. In this context, answer the following.
  - (a) Mention any three aims and objectives of the United Nations Organisation.
  - (b) Explain any three functions of the Security Council.
  - (c) Explain any four factors that led to the formation of the Non-Aligned Movement.

## 2016

- 4.** State the full forms of the following agencies of the United Nations are UNICEF and UNESCO.
- 5.** Give any two examples of Human Rights Violations.
- 6.** With reference to the United Nations and its related agencies, answer the following questions.
  - (a) Explain any three functions of the WHO.
  - (b) State the composition of the International Court of Justice.
  - (c) State any four functions of the General Assembly.

## 2015

- 7.** The United Nations was established to be an effective peace keeping international organisation. In this context, explain the following.
  - (i) Its objectives and purposes.
  - (ii) The meaning of Human Rights as incorporated in the Human Charter.
  - (iii) Name the agency that the UN set-up to deliver relief to children and mothers after Second World War. State any three of its functions.

## 2014

- 8.** Mention two functions of the General Assembly.
- 9.** State two factors which were responsible for the failure of the League of Nations.

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

## **2013**

**10.** The United Nations Organisation was established to maintain peace and 'promote social progress and better standards of life in larger freedom'. With reference to this, explain the following.

- (i) The composition of the Security Council.
- (ii) The functions of the Security Council related for maintaining World Peace.
- (iii) The role of UNESCO in the development of Science and Technology.

**11.** Who appoints the Secretary General of the United Nations?

**12.** Study the picture and answer the following questions.



- (i) Identify the organisation associated with the above Emblem. Mention any three principles of the organisation.
- (ii) Where is the headquarters of this organisation located? Who can become its member?
- (iii) Name the principle organs of this organisation and explain its composition.

# The Non-Aligned Movement

The term Non-Alignment was commonly used to describe the Foreign Policy of those nations that desired not to align themselves with either of the two power blocs. These newly independent nations led to the beginning of the **Non-Aligned Movement** which today constitutes almost all the countries of the Third World.

## Features of the Non-Alignment

The main features of Non-Alignment are as follows:

- It is not aligned to any power blocs and it is against military alliances like NATO (North-Atlantic Treaty Organisation), SEATO (South-East Asia Treaty Organisation), Warsaw Pact, etc.
- It is the belief that each country has the complete freedom to take independent Foreign Policy decisions.
- It stands for action rather than passivism and it judges an issue on merit and is for the freedom and justice of people.
- It actively participates in the politics among nations.

## Objectives of NAM

Its main objectives were as follows:

- The newly independent nations should remain non-aligned and preserve their independence because of being weak.
- No participation in foreign conflicts without having any interest involved.
- Colonialism and imperialism stands for exploitation, so these policies should be buried for the development of all newly independent nations.
- The Non-Aligned Movement act as mediators to prevent war and bring peace in world when the two power blocs will arise out of their interests in world politics. When there will be no involvement of NAM led countries in the conflicts, then they would be heard by the two blocs led nations at the time of disputes.
- All NAM led countries should be away from the race of arms and have full faith in co-operation and peaceful existence.

- All NAM led countries got independence in recent years, so they should condemn racial discrimination in South Africa and in other nations.
- The non-aligned countries should keep away from the politics of the two blocs. This will fetch the economic aids and technologies from both of the power blocs.
- The NAM led countries wanted to have economic relations and essential steps for the economic and social development.
- The NAM led countries showed love towards the human rights and were considered necessary for the development of individuals.

### Non-Aligned Movement Summit

First ever, the Non-Aligned Movement Summit was held in September, 1961 at Belgrade in Yugoslavia. It was attended by 25 Afro-Asian nations and one European nation. Jawaharlal Nehru played an important role in formulating the aims and policies of NAM. The second summit of the NAM took place in Cairo on 1964 where the number of Non-Aligned countries increased to 47. They all discussed the matters which were the problems of newly independent countries of Asia, Africa and Latin America.

## Role of Jawaharlal Nehru in Non-Aligned Movement

Much before the emergence of NAM as a movement, Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru dreamt of a world order based on peace, equality and free of domination of superpowers.

At the Asian Relations Conference held in New Delhi, in the March of 1947, Jawaharlal Nehru highlighted the dangers arising out of the hostility between the two power blocs. Nehru not only declared free India as a Non-Aligned country, he also advised all newly independent countries to stay away from the power blocs. He was confident that the Non-Aligned countries would play a positive role to check the superpowers which help to reduce tension in the world.

Jawaharlal Nehru advised all Afro-Asian nations to keep themselves away from the influence of the two military blocs headed by USA and USSR. Jawaharlal was too much convinced that all the newly independent nations of Asia and Africa should not join either of the two power blocs and focus on self development with mutual co-operation. All the newly independent nations had a very painful experience of colonial rule and after independence they were influenced by self-reliant policies. So, Nehru was too much assertive in making a world body minus the two superpowers of that time.

Under his guidance, India played a major role for world peace and supported the rights of all those people who were fighting against exploitation and imperialism.

### Bandung Conference

The Bandung Conference of 1955 was held to keep newly independent nations distant from the world politics and try to settle their disputes by practicing the **five principles of mutual co-existence** or 'Panchsheel'. Jawaharlal Nehru along with President Sukarno of Indonesia and Chou-En-Lai of China participated in taking further the path of Non-Aligned Movement.

### Principles of Panchsheel

In 1954, India and China signed an agreement of peaceful co-existence. The five principles of peaceful co-existence or principles of Panchsheel concept was given by Pandit Nehru to save sovereignty and territorial integrity of the newly independent nations from Foreign powers.

These five principles were as follows:

- (i) Mutual non-interference in each other's internal affairs.
- (ii) Mutual non-aggression.
- (iii) Equality for mutual benefit.
- (iv) Mutual respect for each others territorial integrity and sovereignty.
- (v) Peaceful co-existence.

### Achievements of NAM

The main achievements of NAM are as follows:

1. NAM helped in solving tensions between the two power blocs and brought an end to the Cold War.
2. NAM acted against the arms race of the superpowers during the Cold War era.
3. NAM supported the cause of international peace, justice and freedom.
4. NAM countries emphasised on the New International Economic Order (NIEO).

## The Main Architects of Non-Aligned Movement

Non-Alignment as a movement traces its roots to first Prime Minister of India, Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru, who gave the idea of an organisation of newly independent states of Africa and Asia in a radio speech as early as 1946.

The main architects of Non-Aligned Movement were as follows:

- (i) Prime Minister Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru of India.
- (ii) President Sukarno of Indonesia.
- (iii) President Josip Broz Tito of Yugoslavia.
- (iv) President Colonel Gamal Abdel Nasser of Egypt.
- (v) President Kwame Nkrumah of Ghana.

**CHECK POINT**

- 1 What does NATO stand for?
- 2 In which year Bandung Conference held?
- 3 The Panchsheel Agreement was signed between which countries?
- 4 In which year Belgrade Conference held?
- 5 What does NIEO stand for?

## SUMMARY

- The strategy to follow a Non-Aligned policy and to protect the independence of the self is known as the Non-Aligned Movement.
- Bandung Conference was held in 1955, in Indonesia, which led to the foundation of the Non-Aligned Movement.
- India along with China formed the Panchsheel policy which puts pressure on peaceful existence of all nations.
- The First Summit of NAM took place at Belgrade in September, 1961. It was participated by 25 countries of the world.
- NAM began a political movement against imperialism and racialism of Western countries.
- All NAM nations remained away from the arms race and have full faith in co-operation and peaceful existence.
- All NAM countries showed love towards protection of human rights and development of all.
- All NAM supports the cause of International peace, justice and freedom.
- All the non-aligned countries condemned the social discrimination of South Africa i.e. apartheid.
- Jawaharlal Nehru met Marshal Tito of Yugoslavia, President Nasser of Egypt at Belgrade, in 1956 and gave the practical shape to Non-Aligned Movement.
- Second summit took place in Ciaro, in 1964 and number of countries rose to 47.
- With the help of all other nations, the NAM led nations solved the tensions between the two power blocs and brought an end to the Cold War.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a Short Questions [2 Marks each]

1. What is meant by the term ‘Non-Alignment’?  
*[2015]*

**Ans.** Non-Alignment refers to the international policy of a sovereign state on the basis of which it does not align itself with any of the power blocs.

2. Explain briefly the need for a Non-Aligned Movement.

**Ans.** After the Second World War, the Cold War arose and the world remained influenced by the two superpowers and their respective power blocs. So, the independent nations of least developed countries made a policy to remain uninfluenced by the Non-Aligned Movement.

3. What are the features of Non-Aligned Movement? Explain any two.

**Ans.** Two features of Non-Aligned Movement are as follows:

- (i) It is not aligned to any power blocs.
- (ii) It is against military alliances like NATO, Warsaw Pact etc.

4. What were the factors responsible for NAM? State any three of them.

**Ans.** Factors responsible for NAM were as follows:

- (i) Global tension caused by the Cold War.
- (ii) Restructuring of the international economic order.
- (iii) Struggle against imperialism and neo-colonisation.

5. Name the two architects of NAM. *[2013]*

**Ans.** The two architects of NAM were as follows:

- (i) Marshall Joseph Bronze Tito
- (ii) Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru

6. Mention any two social objectives of NAM.

**Ans.** NAM led to end of imperialism, helping the United Nations, supporting peace and actions against Human Rights violations.

7. State any two objectives of NAM.

**Ans.** Two objectives of NAM are as follows:

- (i) To eliminate causes that could lead to war.
- (ii) To support sovereign equality of all the states.

8. Why the two superpowers tried to influence other weak nations?

**Ans.** America and Russia both wanted to show the world their respective dominance. They tried to attract them by aids and ideas. They wanted to polarise all weak nations into their favour. Both the superpowers were competing against each other.

9. Why did Nehru more emphasis on not to join the power blocs?

**Ans.** Jawaharlal was too much convinced that all the newly independent nations of Asia and Africa should not join either of the two power blocs and focus on self-development with mutual co-operation. All the newly independent nations had a very painful experience of colonial rule and after independence they were influenced by self-reliant policies. So, Nehru was too much assertive in making a world body minus the two superpowers of that time.

10. State two features of ‘Panchsheel’.

**Ans.** The two features of Panchsheel are as follows:

- (i) Mutual non-interference in each other's domestic affairs.
- (ii) Equality for mutual benefit.

11. What are the basic principles of the Non-Aligned Movement or Panchsheel? *[2018, 2011]*

**Ans.** The basic principles of Non-Aligned Movement are as follows:

- (i) Mutual non-interference in each other's internal affairs.
- (ii) Mutual non-aggression.
- (iii) Equality for mutual benefit.
- (iv) Mutual respect for each other's territorial integrity and sovereignty.
- (v) Peaceful co-existence.

12. Who proclaimed the principle of ‘Panchsheel’?

**Ans.** Panchsheel was proclaimed by the Chinese premier Chou-En-Lai and Jawaharlal Nehru of India.

13. Describe the Belgrade Conference.

**Ans.** Belgrade Conference was the first Non-Aligned Summit. It was held at Belgrade in Yugoslavia in 1961. It was participated by 25 Afro-Asian nations.

- 14.** When and where was the first summit of Non-Aligned Movement held?

**Ans.** First Non-Aligned Movement summit was held in September, 1961 at Belgrade, in Yugoslavia.

- 15.** In which NAM summit, the number of its members were increased to 47?

**Ans.** In the second summit of NAM, the number of its members were increased to 47. The summit took place at Cairo in Egypt, in 1964. They all discussed the matters which were the problems of newly independent countries of Asia, Africa and Latin America.

- 16.** State any three achievements of NAM.

**Ans.** Three achievements of NAM are as follows:

- It helped in solving tensions between the two power blocs and brought an end to the Cold War.
- It acted against the arms race of the superpowers.
- It supported the cause of international peace, justice and freedom.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

- 1.** With reference to the Non-Aligned Movement, explain the following. [2014]

- 'Non-Alignment'. [3]
- Two factors responsible for its formation. [3]
- Role of Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru. [4]

**Ans.** (i) It is the International Policy of the sovereign state according to which, it does not align itself with any of the power blocs. Non-Alignment stands for action rather than passivism and it judges an issue on merit and is for the freedom and justice of people.

- (ii) Two factors responsible for the formation of Non-Aligned Movement were as follows:

(a) Asian Relations Conference (1947) Asian Relations Conference was held in Delhi in March, 1947 by the world leaders. Its aim was to show the world that Asian nations are not the puppet in the hands of the superpowers and that they would exist independently in the maintenance of peace.

(b) Arms Race America showed her dominancy by dropping of the two atomic bombs over Japan. This was unexpected and many countries were worried about the lack of arms in comparison to

America and other superpowers. Newly independent nations were influenced by the fear of arms so they too participated in the arms race. The race of armaments made the Non-Aligned Movement as a mass movement.

- (iii) India was the first country, which initiated the policy of NAM, under the leadership of Jawaharlal Nehru. He was the greatest spokesperson, who talked about the neutrality of Asian and African states in the Cold War era, as a threat to world peace and opposed alliances which could encourage imperialism.

Nehru believed in disarmament and abolition of stockpiles of nuclear weapons and considered them to be the real threat to the human race.

- 2.** The concept of Non-Aligned Movement came into existence during the Cold War period, when Asian and African nations decided to remain non-aligned and did not join any of the power blocs. Answer the following questions.

- Discuss the main features of Non-Aligned Movement. [3]
- Any three principles of Panchsheel. [3]
- Any three objectives of NAM. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Among the features of Non-Aligned Movement, important ones are as follows:

(a) The non-aligned nations remained against military alliances like NATO, SEATO and Warsaw Pact.

(b) Non-alignment stands for action rather than passivism and it judges an issue on merit.

(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 163.

(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 162 and 163.

- 3.** With reference to the Non-Aligned Movement, state. [2009]

(i) The names of the architects of the Non-Aligned Movement. What is meant by Non-Alignment? [3]

(ii) The role of Nehru in the Non-Aligned Movement. [3]

(iii) Mention any four objectives of the Non-Aligned Movement. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 163, 164 and 162.

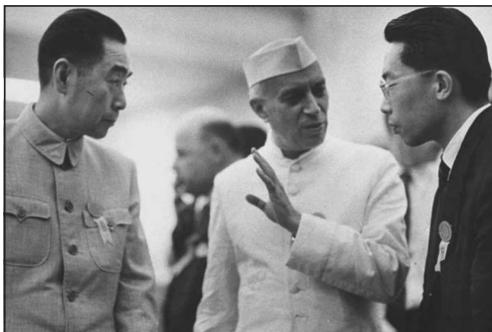
(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 163.

(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 162 and 163.

### C Picture Based Questions

[10 Marks each]

- 1.** Study the picture and answer the following questions.



- (i) Why the leaders of the least developed nations had gathered there?
- (ii) What was the importance of the formation of a world body?
- (iii) Why the people of the developing countries are against the imperialism of the superpowers?
- (iv) What was the result of the gathering of these people?

**Ans.** (i) The leaders of the least developed nations have gathered at Bandung to form the Non-Aligned Movement. They have planned to form a world body which would be away from the power blocs of the two superpowers. Many became independent from the imperialist nations, so they were anxious for free governance.

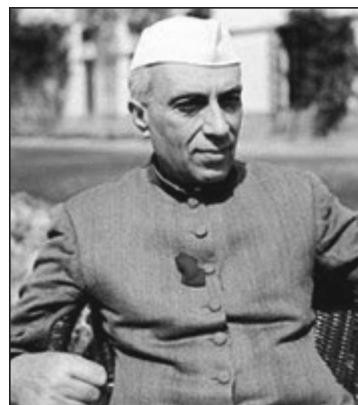
(ii) A world body was a collection of nations having common motive and common purpose. They all wanted to detach from the influences of the two superpowers. Many new policies of self-development and respect for fellow nations were initiated under it.

(iii) The developing countries were once the colonies of the colonial powers of the world. Many were convinced that the imperialists were the synonyms

of exploitation and humiliation. The people wanted to get governed by self chosen leaders and not by the sayings of any of the superpower.

(iv) These leaders had shaped the foreign policy of their nations in a new way. It was asserted that development could be done in a way which suited their land and people. So, they made a world body i.e., NAM and remained un-influenced by the superpowers and withheld their sovereignty.

- 2.** Study the picture carefully and answer the questions with respect to him.



- (i) Identify the personality in the given picture. Name the two hostile power blocs against which the NAM started.
- (ii) Discuss the role of Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru in NAM.
- (iii) How did the Panchsheel agreement relate to the Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru?

**Ans.** (i) The given picture is of the first Prime Minister of India, Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru.

The two hostile power blocs against which the NAM started were as follows:

- (a) USA
- (b) USSR

(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 163.

(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 163.

# **CHAPTER TEST**

## **Short Questions**

**[2 Marks each]**

- 1.** What do you mean by Non-Aligned Movement?
- 2.** Which all factors contributed to the rise of Non-Aligned Movement?
- 3.** Which all nations came forward to form the NAM?
- 4.** When and where was Panchsheel formed?
- 5.** What are the prime objectives of NAM?
- 6.** When was the first NAM summit held and where?
- 7.** How Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru played an important role in NAM?

## **Structured Questions**

**[10 Marks each]**

- 1.** Self development was the prime motive of the formation of Non-Aligned Movement. Answer the following in relation to this.
  - (i) Why did development become the prime importance of the newly independent nation?
  - (ii) How was the objective of the Non-Aligned Movement fulfilled?
  - (iii) Explain the affects of joining any superpowers.
- 2.** Jawaharlal Nehru and other leaders wanted to practice self rule in world politics. Answer the following questions in relation to this.
  - (i) Why the motto of the newly independent nations was self rule through NAM?
  - (ii) Many joined the superpowers. Why did they do so? How India benefitted due to following its own policies?
  - (iii) How world politics changed after the formation of NAM?

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

- 1.** What are the basic principles of the Non-Aligned Movement or Panchsheel?

## 2017

- 2.** The horrors of the two World Wars, led to the formation of the United Nations Organisation, while the formation of the Non-Aligned Movement followed later. In this context, answer the following.
- (i) Mention any three aims and objectives of the United Nations Organisation.
  - (ii) Explain any three functions of the Security Council.
  - (iii) Explain any four factors that led to the formation of the Non-Aligned Movement.

## 2015

- 3.** What is meant by the term 'Non-Aligned Movement' ?

## 2014

- 4.** With reference to the Non-Aligned Movement, explain the following.
- (i) Non Alignment.
  - (ii) Two factors responsible for its formation.
  - (iii) Role of Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru.

## 2013

- 5.** Name the two architects of NAM?

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.



# CIVICS

1. The Union Legislature
2. The Union Executive: The President and Vice-President
3. The Prime Minister and Council of Ministers
4. The Supreme Court
5. The High Courts and Subordinate Courts



# The Union Legislature

## Meaning of the Union Legislature

The legislature is the law-making body of a political unit. This law-making is usually done by the national government that has power to enact, amend and repeal (cancel) the policies. In Indian democratic political system, the union legislature is called **Parliament** and the set up is known as parliamentary form of government. According to the Constitution, the Parliament of India consists of three bodies i.e. the President, the Council of States also called **Rajya Sabha** and the House of the People also called **Lok Sabha**. Both Hindi names Rajya Sabha and Lok Sabha were adopted in 1954 by the Parliament. The Rajya Sabha is the Upper House and the Lok Sabha is the Lower House. The former represents the States and Union Territories of the India while the later represents the people of India as a whole.

## Types of Government

According to the political scientists, there are two types of government i.e. **Unitary** and **Federal**. In Unitary type of government, the Centre is powerful and regional governments derive their authority from national government. On the other hand, the Federal government means distribution of power between Centre and States by the Constitution itself and both operate in their respective **jurisdictions**<sup>1</sup> independently.

## Federal Set-up in India

The term federation is derived from a Latin word *foedus*, which means treaty or agreement. Thus, a federation is a new state which is formed through a treaty or an agreement such as states in US, provinces in Canada, etc. The Constitution of India provides for a federal system of government in the country.

## Federal Features of the Constitution of India

The federal features of the Constitution of India are as follows:

**Dual Government** The constitution establishes double set of government, i.e. union at the centre and the states at the **periphery**.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Jurisdiction The official power to make legal decisions and judgements.

<sup>2</sup> Periphery The outer limits or edge of an area or object.

**Division of Powers** The constitution divided the powers between the Centre and States in terms of lists, i.e. Union List, State List and Concurrent List in the 7th schedule.

**Independent Judiciary** There should be an independent judiciary headed by Supreme Court, for the purpose of protecting the supremacy of the constitution and to settle down the disputes between the centre and the states.

**Bicameralism** The Constitution of India provides for a **bicameral legislature<sup>3</sup>** to protect the interests of the states against the undue interference of the centre.

## Unitary Features of the Constitution of India

Besides the above federal features, the Constitution of India provides some unitary features which are as follows:

**Single Constitution** There is a single Constitution for the union and states in India. No state except Jammu and Kashmir has its own separate Constitution.

**Strong Centre** There is provision in the Indian Constitution for the exercise of control by the union both over the administration and legislation of the states.

**Emergency Provisions** The Constitution of India provides for emergency power, which enables the federal government to acquire the strength of unitary system in emergencies.

**Flexibility of the Constitution** In the matter of constitutional amendment, the part assigned to the states is minor, as compared to the union. In most matters, the states need not to be consulted before amending the constitution. Thus, the power to initiate an amendment to the constitution lies only with the centre.

**Single Citizenship** There is single citizenship in India.

**Integrated Judiciary** India has an integrated judiciary, which means that the Supreme Court controls the judicial administration in the country.

### CHECK POINT 01

- 1 Mention the organ, which makes laws for the people of India.
- 2 What is meant by the federal set-up in India?
- 3 Mention any one unitary feature of the Constitution of India.

<sup>3</sup> **Bicameral legislature** In government, bicameralism is the practice of having two parliamentary chambers, i.e. the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha.

<sup>4</sup> **Deadlock** A situation, typically one including opposing parties in which no progress can be made.

## Lok Sabha

The Lok Sabha is called the *House of the People*. It is the popular House of the Parliament. The members are directly elected by the people of India.

### Term

The normal duration of the Lok Sabha is 5 years, but it may be dissolved earlier by the President. The normal duration may be extended by an act passed by the Parliament during a period of Emergency. During the proclamation of an Emergency, the term of Parliament may be extended to 1 year at a time. The new Lok Sabha must be elected within 6 months once the emergency is declared.

### Composition

The total strength of Lok Sabha is 552. Out of this, 530 members are elected by the people from different states, while 20 members are from the Union Territories and 2 members are nominated by the President from Anglo-Indian community. At present, the Lok Sabha consists of 545 members. Out of these, 530 are from states, 13 are from Union Territories. The President of India nominates two Anglo-Indian Community's members to the Lok Sabha.

### Qualifications

The qualifications for the membership of the Lok Sabha are as follows:

- The candidate must be a citizen of India.
- The candidate must have attained the age of 25 years.
- The candidate must have his/her name in the electoral rolls in any part of the country.

### Special Powers of the Lok Sabha

The Lok Sabha has certain special powers and functions.

These are as follows:

- A **Money Bill** can be introduced only in the Lok Sabha.
- Only the Lok Sabha can vote on the demands for grants in the budget.
- The Council of Ministers is collectively responsible only to the Lok Sabha. Thus, the Lok Sabha alone can vote a minister out of office.
- Only the Lok Sabha has the Power to pass a resolution for the discontinuance of the national emergency.
- The Speaker of the Lok Sabha presides over the joint sitting of the Houses.
- If a **deadlock<sup>4</sup>** occurs between both the Houses over an Ordinary Bill, the Bill of the Lok Sabha normally prevails, as its strength is more than double to that of the Rajya Sabha.

## Speaker of the Lok Sabha

The presiding<sup>5</sup> officer of the Lok Sabha is the Speaker. The Speaker of Lok Sabha is elected from its members by a simple majority of its members present in the house. Usually, a member belonging to ruling party becomes the Speaker. The Speaker is elected for a term of five years.

## Deputy Speaker

The Deputy Speaker of the Lok Sabha is the vice-presiding officer of the Lok Sabha, the lower house of the Parliament of India. He/she acts as the presiding officer in case of leave or absence caused by death or illness of the Speaker of Lok Sabha.

Deputy Speaker is also elected in the same manner as Speaker. The Speaker and Deputy Speaker normally hold office during the life of the House, but may leave office earlier.

## Powers and Functions of the Speaker and Deputy Speaker

Powers and functions of the Speaker are as follows:

- The Speaker presides over the meetings of the House, except when a resolution for his/her removal is being considered.
- The Speaker has the final power to maintain order in the House and to interpret its rules of procedure.
- He/she can ask a member to withdraw from the House for disorderly behaviour or may even suspend a member from the service of the House on a motion for gross disorderly behaviour.
- He/she decides whether a Bill is a Money Bill or not.
- The Speaker presides over a joint sitting of the two Houses of Parliament.
- The Speaker appoints the Chairman of all Parliamentary Committees.
- The Speaker nominates personnel for parliamentary delegations to other countries.
- Each House of the Parliament shall have a separate secretariat staff. The secretariat is under the control of the Speaker or Chairman as the case may be.
- The Deputy Speaker presides over the House (Lok Sabha) in the absence of the Speaker and exercises all the powers that are exercised by the Speaker.
- He/she is the Chairman of the Budget Committee, which approves the budget proposals of the secretariat of the Lok Sabha.

- He/she has a right to speak in the House, take part in its deliberations and vote as a member, but he/she can do all this only when the Speaker is presiding. Generally, the Deputy Speaker is chosen from the members of the opposition.

## Removal Procedure of the Speaker and Deputy Speaker

The Speaker and Deputy Speaker may be removed from their position in the following circumstances:

- Ceasing to be a member of the House.
- The Speaker writing a resignation to the Deputy Speaker and *vice-versa*.
- By a resolution passed by a majority of all the current members of the House.
- Whenever the Lok Sabha is dissolved, the Speaker and Deputy Speaker shall vacate his/her office only after the new speaker is elected by the new Lok Sabha in its first meeting.

## Fine Charged for Disqualification

According to the Constitution, if anyone votes before oath or affirmation, when he/she knows, that he/she is not qualified for membership or is disqualified, he/she is liable to be fined an amount of ₹ 500 for each day that he/she sits and votes in such manner.

### CHECK POINT 02

- 1 What is the presiding officer of the Lok Sabha called?
- 2 How is the Deputy Speaker of the Lok Sabha elected?
- 3 State any one exclusive power of Lok Sabha.

## Rajya Sabha

The Rajya Sabha is also called the Council of States. It is the Upper House of the Indian Parliament.

### Term

The Rajya Sabha never dissolves because it is a permanent body. But one-third (1/3rd) of its members are retired on the expiration of every second year, in accordance with provisions made by Parliament. The members of Rajya Sabha are elected for a term of 6 years.

### Composition

The total strength of the Rajya Sabha is 250, out of which 12 members are nominated by the President of India and the remaining 238 are those who represent the States and the Union Territories.

<sup>5</sup> Preside Be in the position of authority in a meeting.

The 12 nominated members are distinguished people in the fields of Literature, Science, Art and Social Service. The larger population of the states have more representatives in the Rajya Sabha and smaller population states have less members in Rajya Sabha. At present, there are 245 members in the Rajya Sabha.

### Election of Members

The Parliament has prescribed that the members of Rajya Sabha are indirectly elected by members of an Electoral College for that territory, on the basis of proportional representation by means of the single transferable vote.

### Qualifications

The qualifications for the membership of the Rajya Sabha are as follows:

- The candidate should be a citizen of India.
- The candidate should not be less than 30 years of age.
- The candidate should have such other qualifications as may be prescribed by the Parliament from time-to-time.

### Presiding Officers

The Constitution stipulates (specify) that the Vice-President of India is the Ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha. A Deputy Chairman of the Rajya Sabha is to be chosen by the members from among themselves.

### Removal of Presiding Officers

The Deputy Chairman may be removed from his/her office by a resolution of the Rajya Sabha. This resolution passed by the majority of the current members of the Rajya Sabha, after 14 days prior notice has been given to move the resolution. It may be noted that the Chairman of the Council may be removed only if he/she is removed from the office of the Vice-President.

### Special Powers of the Rajya Sabha

The Rajya Sabha has certain special powers and functions. These are as follows:

- Parliament can assume temporary power to legislate on State List subjects (Article 249). It is done only if Rajya Sabha passes a resolution, which is supported by two-third (2/3rd) majority of its members present and voting.
- The establishment of All-India Services also depends on the Rajya Sabha. The House will pass a resolution which is supported by two-third (2/3rd) majority of its members, present and voting.

- During the Emergency, if the Lok Sabha is dissolved then Rajya Sabha becomes the sole de-facto (effective) and de-jure (legal) because Rajya Sabha is a permanent body.
- The Constitution Amendment Bill has to be passed in each House by the specified special majority. Thus, the Rajya Sabha can prevent a Constitutional Amendment even if the Bill has been passed by the Lok Sabha.

### Joint Sitting

Joint sitting of both Houses is possible in the following cases:

- If after a Bill passed by one House (originating House) transmitted to other.
- If the House rejects the Bill, the President may call for a joint sitting of the two Houses.
- If the originating House does not accept the amendments.
- If the other House takes no action on the Bill and keeps it lying on the table and 6 months elapse from the date of reception of the Bill, the President may summon a joint sitting. Generally, the Speaker of Lok Sabha presides over a joint sitting.
- If Speaker is absent then Deputy Speaker presides it.

## Powers and Functions of the Parliament

In the parliamentary form of government, the executive power is in the hands of the group of members of the Parliament. Some important powers of the Parliament are discussed below:

### Legislative Powers

The Parliament can alone make laws on the following:

- The Parliament has exclusive power to make laws on all 100 subjects of Union List such as foreign affairs, atomic energy, defence, banking, etc.
- The Parliament can legislate the 61 subjects of State List only when:
  - (i) There is Emergency in the country or President Rule or a State Emergency.
  - (ii) If two or more States ask for making a law. But this law will be applicable to States which have so requested.
  - (iii) If State List become the national importance or it requires to fulfil international commitments.
- The Parliament along with State Assemblies make laws on the 52 subjects of Concurrent List such as, forest, criminal law, electricity, etc. If there is a conflict between the Union and States, then Union law will prevail and law made by State Assembly will become null and void.
- The Parliament makes law on Residuary Subjects. All subjects which are not mentioned in either Union List, State List or Concurrent List come under it.

- The President has power to promulgate (circulate) an ordinance<sup>6</sup> at a time when the Parliament is not in session. All ordinance must be put up before the Parliament. These ordinances have the same force and effect as an Act of Parliament, but are temporary in nature. Ordinance ceases to operate after 6 weeks from the re-assembly of Parliament, unless they are approved by the Houses.
- The Parliament may alter the name or boundary of the state. It can also form a new state by merging or separating a part of territory of a state.

## Financial Powers

The financial powers of the Parliament are as follows:

- No money can be spent or no tax can be imposed without the approval of the Parliament.
- The Parliament passes the budget which contains the estimates of receipts and expenditure of the government for the financial year.
- The salaries and allowances of ministers and members of Parliament are determined by the Parliament.

## Judicial Powers

The judicial powers of the Parliament are as follows:

- The Parliament has the power to elect and impeach the President. For the impeachment of the President, the charges must be placed before one House and supported by two-third (2/3rd) of the majority. These charges are investigated by second House and if accepted by a similar majority in second House, the President stands impeached.
- The Parliament can remove the Judges of the Supreme Court, the High Court, the Chief Election Commissioner, Comptroller and Auditor General of India, when a resolution to do so is passed.
- The Parliament has the power to make laws about the jurisdiction and composition of the Supreme Court. It also creates a common High Court for two or more states.

## Electoral Powers

The electoral powers of the Parliament are as follows:

- The Parliament along with Legislative Assemblies of state elects the President.
- Both Houses of the Parliament elect the Vice-President of India.

## Amendment of the Constitution

A bill for amendment can be initiated in either house of Parliament by a majority of total membership as well as by

two-third majority of members present in voting. In some cases, amendments need ratification from half of the Legislative Assemblies of the states.

## Control over the Executive

The Parliament controls the executive through the following powers:

**Interpellation or Inquiry** The Parliament can ask questions to the government about its policies and performance.

**Adjournment Motion** To bring matters of urgent public importance, the Parliament can bring Adjournment motion.

**Vote of No-Confidence** If a government does not follow the provisions of the constitution, the Parliament can show No-Confidence to the government.

**Monetary Control** The Parliament can bring cut motion during the budget session to disapprove any monetary policy of the government. It also examines the report of Comptroller and Auditor-General (CAG).

**Censure Motion** It can bring Censure motion over the policies of the government.

### CHECK POINT 03

- What judicial power does the Parliament posses? Mention any one.
- Mention any one electoral power of the Parliament.
- Write the other name of The Rajya Sabha.

## Parliamentary Procedures

There are some parliamentary proceedings, which are as follows:

### Sessions of the Parliament

There are usually three sessions in a year which are as follows:

- The Budget Session (February to May)
- The Autumn or Monsoon Session (July to September)
- The Winter Session (November to December)

### Summoning of the Session

The President of India summons<sup>7</sup> each House of the Parliament time-to-time for meetings. The Constitution states that, there should not be a gap of more than 6

<sup>6</sup> Ordinance An authoritative order.

<sup>7</sup> Summons Issuing an order to the parliamentarians for conducting sessions or meeting of Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha.

months between two consecutive sittings of the Parliament.

### Quorum for the Session

Quorum is the minimum number of members required to be present in the House before it can transact (organise) any business. It is one-tenth (1/10th) of the total number of members in each House including the presiding officers.

### End of the Session

There are three types of procedure which ends the session. These are as follows:

- (i) **Adjournment** It is a postponement of the sitting of the House. The Speaker has the power to adjourn the House *sine-die*<sup>8</sup>. Once the House is adjourned sine-die, he/she is empowered to call it again.
- (ii) **Prorogation** It means the termination of a session of the Houses by an order made by the President.
- (iii) **Dissolution** It means end of the life of the Lok Sabha either by an order made by the President or on the expiration of the period of 5 years from the date of its first meeting.

### Motions of the Parliament

The term motion means any proposal made for the purpose of *eliciting*<sup>9</sup> a decision of the House.

There are some motions in the Parliament, which are as follows:

- (i) **Adjournment Motion** It is introduced in the Parliament to draw attention of the House to a definite matter of urgent public importance and needs the support of 50 members to be admitted. As it interrupts the normal business of the House, it is regarded as an extraordinary device.
- (ii) **No-Confidence Motion** The Lok Sabha can remove the Government from office by passing the No-Confidence Motion. It means that the Government stays in office so long as it enjoys confidence of the majority of members of the Lok Sabha. It can be moved against the entire Council of Ministers. It needs the support of 50 members to be admitted.

(iii) **Censure Motion** It moves against an individual minister or a group of ministers. It is moved for censuring the Council of Ministers for specific policies and actions. If it is passed, the Council of Ministers need not to resign from the office.

### Question Hour

It is one of the important device of the members of Parliament to seek information concerning the matter of public importance.

There are three types of questions which are as follows:

- (i) **Starred Question** It is one which is distinguished by an asterisk.<sup>10</sup> It requires an oral answer and hence, supplementary questions can follow.
- (ii) **Unstarred Question** It is one which is not distinguished by an asterisk. It requires a written answer and hence, supplementary questions cannot follow.
- (iii) **Short Notice Question** It is one which is asked by giving a notice of less than 10 days. It is answered orally.

### Zero Hour

Unlike the question hour, the zero hour is not mentioned in the rules of procedure. Thus, it is an informal device available to the members of the Parliament to raise matters without any prior notice. Zero hour begins at 12 O'clock immediately after the question hour and lasts until the agenda for the day is taken up. In other words, the time gap between the question hour and the agenda is known as zero hour.

### Half-an-Hour Discussion

It means for raising a discussion on a matter of sufficient public importance, which has been subjected to a lot of debate and the answer to which needs elucidation<sup>11</sup> on a matter of fact.

### Short-Duration Discussion

It is also known as two hour discussion as the time allotted for such a discussion should not exceed two hours. The members of the Parliament can raise such discussions on a matter of urgent public importance. This device has been in existence since 1953.

<sup>8</sup> Sine-die Without assigning a day for a further meeting or hearing.

<sup>9</sup> Elicit Evoke or draw out from someone.

<sup>10</sup> Asterisk It is a symbol (\*) used for distinguishing the starred question in Question Hour.

<sup>11</sup> Elucidation Explanation that makes something clear or clarify.

## Guillotine

On the last of the allotted days at the appointed time the Speaker puts every necessary question to dispose off all the outstanding matters in connection with the demands for grants. This is known as **guillotine**.

## Legislative Procedure of the Parliament

The legislative procedure is a complicated one. It differs in case of Ordinary and Money Bills. A law in making or a legislative proposal is called a Bill. It passes through many stages before it becomes a law.

### Stages of Passing a Bill

A Bill passes through certain stages in each House before being presented to the President for his/her assent (approval). These stages are as follows.

**First Reading** After the introduction of a Bill, a brief speech is made regarding the aims and objectives of the Bill. This stage is known as the first reading.

**Second Reading** After introduction of the Bill, it may be taken into consideration or it may be referred to a select committee. The principles of the Bill and its general provisions are now discussed.

**Third Reading** At this stage, referred Bill is considered and its provisions are also checked. Finally, committee submits its report to the House. A general discussion on the Bill now takes place and formal voting for acceptance or rejection of the Bill is held.

**Assent of the President** When the Bill is passed in both the Houses of the Parliament, then it is sent for the assent of the President. The President may either assent to the Bill or withhold his/her assent or return the Bill for reconsideration (except Money Bill). If the same Bill without any change comes back, then the President has to give his/her assent. Now, the Bill finally becomes a law after receiving the President's assent.

### Some Important Bills

There are some important Bills that have been elaborated below:

**Ordinary Bill** It can be introduced in either Houses of the Parliament. The Constitution of India provides an Ordinary Bill that must be passed by both the Houses of the parliament.

**Money Bill** A Bill shall be deemed to be a Money Bill, if it deals with the following provisions:

- It deals only with imposition or abolition of tax.

- It deals the borrowing of money by the Government of India.

- It deals with custody and maintenance of Consolidated Fund and Contingency Fund of India.

**Financial Bill** These bills deal with fiscal matters, that is revenue or expenditure. A Financial Bill may be Money Bill (decided by the Speaker of the Lok Sabha), if it includes the matter which is enumerated in the Article 110 in the Constitution of India.

It is presented with the documents having the following heads:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rates of income tax</li> <li>• Custom tax</li> <li>• Excise service tax</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wealth tax</li> <li>• Income tax</li> </ul> |
|---|--|

There is no restriction that the Financial Bill can be introduced in Lok Sabha only. This means that the Financial Bill can be referred to a joint committee of the Houses while Money Bill cannot be referred to a joint committee of the Houses.

**Amendment Bill** The Constitutional Amendment Bill can be introduced in either Houses of the Parliament. The Amendment Bill can be elaborated through following points:

- Each House has to pass the Bill by a more than 50% of its majority, which is not less than two-third (2/3rd) of the members present and voting.
- There is no provision of joint sitting and the President has to give his/her assent.

## Anti-Defection Law

It was passed in 1985 by the 52nd Constitutional Amendment, which added a new schedule (10th Schedule) to the Constitution. The main objective of the law was to abolish the evils of political defection. The 10th Schedule contains the following provisions with respect to the disqualification of members of Parliament and the State Legislatures on the grounds of defection:

- A **member of a House** belonging to any political party becomes disqualified, if he/she voluntarily gives up his/her membership of such political party.
- An **independent member** of a House becomes disqualified to remain a member of the House, if he/she joins any political party after such election.
- A **nominated member** of a House becomes disqualified for being a member of House, if he/she joins any political party, after the expiration of 6 months. This means he/she may join any political party within 6 months of taking his/her seat in the House without inviting this disqualification.

To limit defection, in 1985, the 52nd Amendment brought in the Anti-Defection Law according to which defection could take place only if one fourth (1/4th) members of a party walked away.

However, this law was unable to curb defection. Thus, the 91st Constitutional Amendment, 2003 brought in a new law according to which a member loses the membership of the House and is disqualified from holding any political office, if he/she defects. The decision of presiding officer is final in such cases.

### CHECK POINT 04

- 1 Why does the Parliament needs a quorum to transact its business?
- 2 Define the term Adjournment.
- 3 What is Motion? Mention any one motion.
- 4 Mention any one difference between the Money Bill and the Financial Bill.

## Summary

- The Parliament of India consists of the President, the **Rajya Sabha** (Upper House) and the **Lok Sabha** (Lower House).
- **Federal government** means distribution of power between Centre and States by the Constitution itself and both operate in their respective jurisdictions independently.
- Indian Constitution adopted both unitary and federal feature, therefore the Indian political structure is known as **Quasi-Federal**.
- Lok Sabha is the House of the People and it is the popular House of the Parliament. The members are directly elected by the people. The total strength of the Lok Sabha is 552 and 2 members are nominated by the President from Anglo-Indian Community.
- At present, the Lok Sabha consists of 545 members. Of these, 530 are from States, 13 from Union Territories and 2 from Anglo-Indian community. The normal tenure of the Lok Sabha is 5 years, but it may be dissolved earlier by the President.
- The **presiding officer** of the Lok Sabha is the Speaker, who is elected by the members from amongst themselves. A **Deputy Speaker** is also elected in the same manner as the Speaker. The Speaker and Deputy Speaker normally hold office during the life of the House.
- A Speaker decides whether a Bill is a Money Bill or not. He/she presides over joint sitting of the two Houses of the Parliament. The Deputy Speaker presides the Lok Sabha only in absence of the Speaker and exercises all the power of Speaker in the process.
- Lok Sabha has many special powers, such as **Money Bill** can be introduced only in Lok Sabha. Rajya Sabha cannot reject and amend it. The Union Budget is discussed in both Houses but vote on demand for grant can take place in Lok Sabha only. If a deadlock occurs between the both Houses over a Ordinary Bill, the will of the Lok Sabha normally prevails.
- Rajya Sabha is called the **Council of States**. Its total strength is 250, out of that 12 members are nominated by the President from the fields of Literature, Science, Art and Social Services.
- The Rajya Sabha is not dissolved because it is a permanent body. But one-third (1/3rd) of its members retire on the

expiration of every second year. The members of the Rajya Sabha are elected for a term of 6 years.

- The Constitution stipulates that **Vice-President** of India is **Ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha**. A Deputy Chairman of the Council of States is to be chosen by the members from among themselves.
- The Constitution only says that, there should not be a gap of more than 6 months between two consecutive sittings of the Parliament.
- The Parliament has legislative power to regulate the laws. The Parliament has exclusive power to make laws on all Union List. In case of Emergency, it make laws on State List and if there is some conflict in Concurrent List, then Union Legislature laws will prevail.
- The Parliament may alter the name or boundary of state. It can also form a new state by merging or separating a part of territory or a state. The Parliament can remove the Judges of the Supreme Court, the High Court, the Election Commissioner, CAG etc.
- The Parliament has power to create and abolish the Legislative Council in a state.
- There are usually three sessions in a year i.e. the Budget Session (February to May), the Autumn or Monsoon Session (July to September) and the Winter Session (November to December).
- Quorum is the minimum number of members required to be present in the House before it can transact (organise) any business.
- There are three types of procedure, which ends the session, which are as follows:  
(i) Adjournment                               (ii) Prorogation  
(iii) Dissolution
- Anti-Defection Law was passed in 1985 by the 52nd Constitutional Amendment. This amendment added the Tenth Schedule to the Constitution.
- However, this amendment was unable to curb defection, thus, the 91st Constitutional Amendment, 2003 brought in a new law according to which a member loses the membership of the House and is disqualified from holding any political office, if he/she defects.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a) Very Short Questions

[1 Mark each]

1. What do you understand by the Parliament?

**Ans.** The Parliament is the law-making body of a political unit, usually a national government that has power to enact, amend and repeal the public policy.

2. Name the law-making body of the Union Government. *(2012)*

**Ans.** The law-making body of the Union Government is the Parliament or Union Legislature.

3. Name the three components of the Indian Parliament. *(2011)*

**Ans.** Three components of the Indian Parliament are as follows:  
(i) The President      (ii) The Lok Sabha  
(iii) The Rajya Sabha

4. Name the two Houses of the Union Parliament. *(2015)*

**Ans.** The two Houses of the Union Parliament are as follows:  
(i) Lok Sabha      (ii) Rajya Sabha

5. When were the Hindi names of Council of States and House of the People adopted?

**Ans.** The Hindi names of Council of States and House of the People have been adopted by the Parliament in 1954. After this, the Council of States is called Rajya Sabha and House of People is called Lok Sabha.

6. What is the meaning of federal government?

**Ans.** The federal government means distribution of power between Centre and States by the Constitution itself and both operate in their respective jurisdiction independently.

7. Name the two types of authority in a federal set-up in India. *(2013)*

**Ans.** The two types of authority in a federal set-up in India are the Union and the State.

8. From where the term federation has been derived?

**Ans.** The term federation has been derived from the Latin word 'foedus' which means 'treaty' or 'agreement'.

9. Mention any one federal feature of the Constitution of India.

Or

State any one federal feature of the Indian Constitution. *(2017)*

**Ans.** There should be an independent judiciary headed by the Supreme Court for the purpose of protecting the supremacy of the Constitution and to settle down the disputes between Centre and the States.

10. What do you mean by bicameral legislature?

**Ans.** Bicameralism is the practice of having two legislative or parliamentary chambers. The relationship between the two chambers of a bicameral legislature can vary. In some cases, they have equal power, and in others, one chamber is clearly superior to the other.

11. Mention any one non-federal feature of the Constitution of India.

**Ans.** The Constitution of India provides emergency power to enable the federal government to acquire the strength of a unitary or non-federal system in emergencies.

12. What is meant by the Lok Sabha?

**Ans.** The Lok Sabha is called the House of the people. It is the popular House of the Parliament. Its members are directly elected by the people.

13. Mention one advantage of the Lok Sabha. *(2008)*

**Ans.** The Lok Sabha is called House of the People which means it is mirror and voice of the citizens and the members of it are directly elected by the people of the nation.

14. What is the normal term of office of the Lok Sabha? *(2016)*

**Ans.** The normal term of office of the Lok Sabha is 5 years.

15. How many members are nominated by the President to the Lok Sabha? Which community do they represent? *(2015)*

**Ans.** There are two members, who are nominated by the President to the Lok Sabha. They represent the Anglo-Indian Community.

16. Mention any one qualification to be a member of the Lok Sabha, other than being citizen of India.

**Ans.** The qualification of the member of the Lok Sabha other than citizen of India is that the candidate must have attained the age of 25 years.

17. An adult Indian citizen holding an office of profit under the State Government wishes to contest for election to the Lok Sabha. Is he/she eligible? Give a reason to justify your answer. *(2006)*

**Ans.** No, he/she is not eligible because according to the law, to be a member of Lok Sabha, he/she cannot hold an office of profit under the State Government or any offices.

**18.** How is the Speaker of the Lok Sabha elected? *[2013]*

**Ans.** The Speaker of the Lok Sabha is elected from amongst its own members

**19.** How do the officers of the Lok Sabha leave the office? Mention any one.

**Ans.** Both the officers (Speaker and Deputy Speaker) of the Lok Sabha leave the office, when they are removed from office by a resolution passed by a majority of all the current members of the House.

**20.** Who presides over the joint sessions of the two Houses of the Parliament ? *[2017]*

**Ans.** The Speaker of the Lok Sabha presides over the joint sessions of the two Houses of the Parliament.

**21.** When can the Speaker of the Lok Sabha cast his vote? *[2017]*

**Ans.** The Speaker of the Lok Sabha does not cast his vote in the house, except when there are equal votes on both sides, i.e. the treasury benches and the opposition.

**22.** State the minimum number of times the Lok Sabha must meet in a year. *[2014]*

**Ans.** The Lok Sabha meets 3 times in a year during:

- (i) Budget Session (ii) Autumn or Monsoon Session
- (iii) Winter Session

**23.** Why is the Rajya Sabha called a Permanent House? *[2014]*

**Ans.** The Rajya Sabha is called a Permanent House because its members are elected for a term of 6 years and one-third (1/3rd) of its total members retire at the end of every 2 years and the equal number of new members are elected to fill the vacancies.

**24.** What is the term of office of a Rajya Sabha member? *[2008]*

**Ans.** The term of office of a Rajya Sabha member is 6 years.

**25.** How are the Rajya Sabha members elected? *[2017]*

**Ans.** The members of Rajya Sabha are elected indirectly by the members of the State Legislative Assembly through the system of proportional representation by means of single transferable vote.

**26.** What is the strength of the Rajya Sabha at present?

**Ans.** At present, there are 245 members in the Rajya Sabha. Of these, 12 members are nominated by the President and rest are elected by their respective State Assembly and Union Territories.

**27.** Mr Gurudev was nominated by the President to the Rajya Sabha. Mention any one criterion on which the President would nominate him. And how many such members can the President nominate to the Rajya Sabha? *[2010]*

**Ans.** The one criterion on which the President would nominate a member in the Rajya Sabha is that the Legislative Assembly of the state concerned, passed a resolution by two-third (2/3rd) majority of those present and voting. There are 12 members which President can nominate to the Rajya Sabha.

**28.** Who is the Chairman of the Rajya Sabha? *[2015]*

*Or* Who is the ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha? *[2006]*

**Ans.** Vice-President of India is the ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha.

**29.** Who presides over the meeting of the Rajya Sabha in the absence of the Vice -president of India? *[2016]*

**Ans.** Deputy Chairperson.

**30.** In what manner the Deputy Chairman of the Rajya Sabha is removed?

**Ans.** The Deputy Chairman of the Rajya Sabha may be removed from his/her office by a resolution passed by Rajya Sabha.

**31.** State any one subject wherein the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha enjoy co-equal powers in legislation of laws. *[2016]*

**Ans.** Introduction and passage of constitutional amendment bill is the subject wherein the Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha enjoy co-equal powers in legislation of laws.

**32.** How many members can the President nominate to the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha? *[2009]*

**Ans.** The President can nominate two persons in Lok Sabha and 12 persons in Rajya Sabha.

**33.** Mention any one situation when both the Houses of Parliament meet for a joint session. *[2010]*

*Or* Mention the occasion on which the President addresses a joint session of Parliament? *[2012]*

**Ans.** When an Ordinary Bill is passed by originating House and second House rejects it, then, President may call for a joint sitting (session) of the two Houses.

**34.** Mention any one circumstance when the Parliament can make laws on a state subject. *[2011]*

**Ans.** When the State list is of national importance or it requires to fulfil international commitments. In that circumstance, the Parliament can make laws on a state subject.

**35.** What is meant by 'Residuary Power' of the Parliament? [2016]

**Ans.** Parliament has exclusive power to make any law with respect to any matter not enumerated in the three lists i.e. Union List, State List and Concurrent List. This power of legislation is known as 'Residuary Power.'

**36.** What are the financial powers of the Parliament? Mention any one.

**Ans.** No money can be spent or no tax can be imposed without the approval of the Parliament. This is the financial power of the Parliament.

**37.** Who has the power to make laws over the jurisdiction of Supreme Court?

**Ans.** The Parliament has the power to make laws about the jurisdiction and composition of Supreme Court.

**38.** What is meant by the term 'quorum'? [2018]

**Ans.** The quorum refers to the required number of members needed to be present in both the Houses of Parliament for passing a bill.

**39.** What is the maximum gap allowed between two parliamentary sessions? [2018]

**Ans.** The maximum gap allowed between two Parliamentary sessions is 6 months.

**40.** What is the required Quorum to hold the meetings of the Lok Sabha? [2015]

**Ans.** At least one-tenth (1/10th) of total strength are required Quorum to hold the meetings of the Lok Sabha.

**41.** What is meant by prorogation?

**Ans.** The prorogation means the termination of a session of the House by an order made by the President.

**42.** What happens if a vote of No-Confidence is passed against a minister in the Lok Sabha? [2015]

**Ans.** If a vote of No-Confidence is passed, then all the Council of Ministers have to resign in the Lok Sabha.

**43.** What is meant by the term question hour in the context of parliamentary procedures in India?

**Ans.** Question hour is one of the important devices of the member of Parliament to seek information concerning a matter of public importance.

**44.** What is a starred question?

**Ans.** A starred question is distinguished by an asterisk. It requires an oral answer and hence supplementary questions can follow.

**45.** What is the language of the Parliament?

**Ans.** Constitution of India declares Hindi and English as the languages for conducting the business of the Houses.

**46.** What is guillotine?

**Ans.** On the last of the allotted days at the appointed time, the Speaker puts every necessary question to dispose of all the outstanding matter in connection with the demand for grants. This is known as Guillotine.

**47.** Mention one provision of the Constitution which clearly establishes the supremacy of the Lok Sabha with regard to money bills. [2015]

**Ans.** Constitutional Article 110 says, money bills can only be introduced in the Lok Sabha. The Rajya Sabha cannot reject or amend it. It can only give suggestions and return within 14 days to the Lok Sabha.

**48.** Name the bill which cannot originate in the Rajya Sabha. [2018, 2012, 2006]

**Ans.** Money bill cannot originate in the Rajya Sabha. It originates only in Lok Sabha.

**49.** How long can the Rajya Sabha retain the money bill sent by the Lok Sabha? [2017]

**Ans.** The Rajya Sabha can retain the money bill up to 14 days.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

**1.** The Constitution of India provides for a federal system of government in the country. In this context, explain the following questions.

(i) What do you understand by federation? [3]

(ii) What are the federal features of the Indian Constitution? [3]

(iii) What are the unitary features of the Indian Constitution? [4]

**Ans.** (i) The term 'Federation' has been derived from the Latin word 'Foedus' which means treaty or agreement. Thus, a federation is a new state which is formed through a treaty or an agreement between the various names like in USA, it is called states, in Canada it is called provinces, etc. On the other hand, the federal government means distribution of powers between centre and states by the constitution itself and both operate in their respective jurisdictions independently.

(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 173 and 174.

(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 174.

**2.** With reference to the Indian Parliament, explain the following. [2014]

(i) The tenure of the members of the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha. [3]

(ii) The composition of the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha. [3]

- (iii) Its powers to make laws on subjects mentioned in the  
 (a) Union List      (b) Concurrent List [4]

**Ans.** (i) **Tenure of the Members of Lok Sabha** The Constitution has provided for a fixed term of 5 years. However, it can be dissolved earlier by President or can be extended for 1 year during Emergency by the Parliament.

**Tenure of the Members of Rajya Sabha** The Rajya Sabha is not dissolved because it is a permanent body. But its one-third (1/3rd) members retire on the expiration of every second year. The membership of the Rajya Sabha is for a period of 6 years.

(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 174 and 175.**

- (iii) (a) **Union List** The Parliament has exclusive powers to make laws on all the 100 subjects of the Union List. These are foreign affairs, atomic energy, defence, banking, etc. If Emergency is proclaimed throughout the country or in any state, then all the lists will come under the centre and Parliament will make laws on all the subject lists.  
 (b) **Concurrent List** The Parliament along with State Legislature make laws on the 52 subjects of Concurrent List such as forest, criminal law, electricity, etc. If there is a conflict between the union and states, then union law will prevail and law made by State Assembly will become null and void.

3. With reference to the Union Parliament, state the following questions. [2009]

- (i) Give three reasons to justify, why the Lok Sabha is considered to be more powerful than the Rajya Sabha. [3]  
 (ii) Three functions of the Speaker of the Lok Sabha. [3]  
 (iii) The procedure to be followed by the Union Parliament in passing the money bill. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Following are the three important reasons which justifies the powerful status enjoyed by the Lok Sabha:

- (a) Money bill can be introduced only in the Lok Sabha and not in the Rajya Sabha. The Rajya Sabha cannot amend or reject the money bill, it should return the bill to the Lok Sabha within the period of 14 days. The final power to decide whether a bill is money bill or not is also vested with the Presiding officer of the Lok Sabha i.e. Speaker.  
 (b) Rajya Sabha can only discuss the budget but cannot vote on the demand for grants.

- (c) The resolution for the discontinuance of the National Emergency can be passed only by the Lok Sabha and not by the Rajya Sabha.

(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 175.**

- (iii) A money bill can only originate in the Lok Sabha. The procedure is as follows:

- After its introduction in the Lok Sabha, the bill is discussed, debated and voted in the House.
- After being passed by the Lok Sabha, the bill is then sent to the Rajya Sabha for recommendations.
- The Rajya Sabha must return the bill within 14 days with or without recommendations.
- The bill then comes to the Lok Sabha, which may accept or reject any or all of the recommendations of the Rajya Sabha.
- After 14 days, if the bill is not returned, it is deemed to have been passed by both the Houses.

4. With reference to the Union Legislature, answer the following questions. [2016]

- (i) How is the Speaker of the Lok Sabha elected? State two disciplinary functions of the Speaker. [3]  
 (ii) Explain two conditions under which a member of Parliament can be disqualified under the anti-defection law. [3]  
 (iii) Give reasons to justify why the Lok Sabha is considered to be more powerful than the Rajya Sabha. [4]

**Ans.** (i) The Speaker of the Lok Sabha is elected from its own members soon after the newly elected House meets for the first time. Two disciplinary functions of the Speaker are as follows:

- (a) He/she maintains order and decorum (dignity) in the Lok Sabha for conducting its business and regulating its proceedings.  
 (b) The Speaker decides whether there is a case for a matter relating to a breach of privilege or contempt of the house.  
 (ii) Two important conditions under which a member of Parliament can be disqualified under 10th schedule are as follows:  
 (a) A member of a Parliament belonging to any political party becomes disqualified for being a member of the Parliament, if he/she has voluntarily given up his/her membership of such political party.  
 (b) If he/she votes or abstains from voting in such house contrary to any direction issued by the political party to which he/she belongs.  
 (iii) **Refer to structured Q. no. 3 (i).**

- 5.** The Rajya Sabha is the second chamber of the Indian Parliament and represents the interest of the states. In this context, explain the following questions. [2015]
- Its composition. [3]
  - Qualifications for membership. [3]
  - Term of the House and any two of its legislative powers. [4]

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 175 and 176.**  
(ii) Qualifications for the membership of Rajya Sabha are:

- He/she should be a citizen of India.
- He/she should be 30 years of age.
- He/she should have his/her name in the electoral list.
- He/she should not hold any office of profit under the government of India.

(iii) **Refer to structured question 2(i).**

The two of its legislative powers are as follows:

- The Parliament makes law on residuary subjects. All subjects which are not mentioned in either Union List, State List or Concurrent List come under it.
- The Parliament may alter the name or boundary of the state. It can also form a new state by merging or separating a part of territory of a state.

- 6.** As we know that the Rajya Sabha is a permanent office of the Parliament. In that relation, there are some questions given below.

- How is a member of the Rajya Sabha elected? [3]
- Who are the officers of the Rajya Sabha? [3]
- How are the officers of the Rajya Sabha removed? [4]

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 176.**  
(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 176.**  
(iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 176.**

- 7.** With reference to the Union Parliament, answer the following questions.

- What is the maximum strength of the Lok Sabha provided by the Constitution? How many members does the President nominate to the Lok Sabha? How the members of the Lok Sabha are elected? [3]
- The two Houses of the Parliament enjoy co-equal power in many spheres, explain it by giving any three examples. [3]

- Explain any four of the Rajya Sabha's exclusive powers in India's federal set-up. [4]

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 174.**

- Following are the matters, where the power and status of the Rajya Sabha are equal to that of the Lok Sabha:

**Introduction and Passage of the Bill** Both the Houses have power to introduce and pass the ordinary bills and constitutional amendment bills. Both introduce and pass the financial bills involving expenditure from the Consolidated Fund of India.

**Election and Removal of President and Vice-President**

Both the Houses participate in the election and impeachment of the President and election and removal of the Vice-President.

**Recommendation for Removal** Both the Houses make recommendation to the President for the removal of Chief Justice of India and of High Courts, Judges of SC and HC, Chief Election Commissioner and Comptroller and Auditor General.

- Refer to chapter theory page no. 176.**

- 8.** The powers and functions of the Indian Parliament are wide ranging. In this context, answer the following questions. [2017]

- Explain three ways by which the Legislature exercises control over the Executive. [3]
- Mention any three special powers of the Rajya Sabha that is usually not enjoyed by the other House. [3]
- Mention any two Judicial powers and any two Electoral powers of the Indian Parliament. [4]

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 177.**  
(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 176.**  
(iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 177.**

- 9.** Keeping in view the powers of the Union Parliament, answer the following questions. [2011]

- Mention three of its legislative powers. [3]
- Mention three of its financial powers. [3]
- Mention four of its administrative or executive powers. [4]

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no 176 and 177.**

(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no 177.**

- The four executive or administrative powers of the Parliament are as follows:

- Through the interpellation, the Parliament can bring to light the flaws or the inefficiency of the government.

- Budget is controlled through the introduction of Cut Motion. It means reduction to various demands for grants are made in the form of cut motion. It seeks to reduce the sums sought by government on the ground of economic matters.
- The Parliament exercise control through questions, supplementaries, resolution, adjournment motion, no-confidence motion, censure motion, etc.
- The cabinet formulates the policy, but Parliament has the right to discuss and criticise that policy and then appraise the public of an alternative point of view.

**10.** With reference to the Parliamentary Procedures, answer the following questions.

- (i) How many sessions are held in the Parliament? /3]
- (ii) How can a session be ended? /3]
- (iii) Mention any three motions of the Parliament. /4]

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 177 and 178.

- (ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 178.
- (iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 178.

**11.** With reference to the legislative procedure of the Parliament, answer the following questions.

- (i) How is an amendment bill passed. /3]
- (ii) If deadlock occurs on an ordinary bill, then what are the procedures to solve this? /3]
- (iii) Mention the stages of passing any kind of bill. /4]

**Ans.** (i) Constitution amendment bills must be passed in both the Houses of the Parliament separately by the special majority i.e. majority of more than 50% of the total strength including 2/3rd of the members present and voting.

- (ii) If a deadlock occurs between both the Houses over an ordinary bill, the Bill of the Lok Sabha normally prevails, as its strength is more than double than that of the Rajya Sabha.

(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 179.

**12.** Discuss the relationship between the two Houses of the Parliament with reference to the: /2013/

- (i) Money bills /3]
- (ii) Non-Money bills /3]
- (iii) Control over the executive /4]

**Ans.** (i) A money bill can originate in the Lok Sabha only. After the bill get passed by the Lok Sabha, it is then sent to Rajya Sabha for recommendations, which it must send back within 14 days.

The bill then comes to the Lok Sabha again, which is upon them to either accept or reject any of the recommendations. In financial matters, the Rajya Sabha has only an advisory role.

- (ii) A non-money bill may originate in either House. On disagreement between the two Houses, the bill is referred to a joint sitting of both the Houses. In such cases, both the Houses are placed on an equal footing, however due to larger strength, the will of the Lok Sabha prevails in the joint sitting.
- (iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 177.

**13.** With reference to the Union Parliament, answer the following questions. /2018/

- (i) How many members may be nominated to the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha? Give one reason as to why they may be nominated to the Lok Sabha. (3)
- (ii) Mention any three qualifications required for a member to be elected to the Lok Sabha. (3)
- (iii) What is meant by the term 'Session'? Name the three Sessions of the Union Parliament. (4)

**Ans.** (i) Two members in Lok Sabha and twelve members in Rajya Sabha are nominated from the Anglo-Indian Community. To give adequate representation to the Anglo-Indian community, the President nominates two members from this community to the Lok Sabha.

- (ii) Three qualifications required for a member to be elected to the Lok Sabha are following:
  - The candidate must be a citizen of India.
  - The candidate must have attained the age of 25 years.
  - The candidate must have his/her name in the electoral rolls in any part of the country.

(iii) A session of the Parliament begins with an official summon from the head of the state, i.e. the President of India. A session simply means that the Parliament is sitting and that is functioning and transacting its business. Three sessions of the Parliament are following:

- The Budget Session (February to May)
- Th Autumn or Monsoon Session (July to September)
- The Winter Session (November to December)

# **CHAPTER TEST**

## **Very Short Questions**

**[1 Mark each]**

- 1.** What is meant by unitary government?
- 2.** Why is the Lok Sabha called Lower House and Rajya Sabha Upper House?
- 3.** Mention any one qualification to be a member of Rajya Sabha.
- 4.** Name the body which elects the members of the Rajya Sabha.
- 5.** Write any two unique features of the Rajya Sabha.
- 6.** What do you understand by the composition of Rajya Sabha?
- 7.** Explain the term Quorum.
- 8.** Mention any two powers of the Speaker of Lok Sabha.
- 9.** How does the session of the Parliament end?
- 10.** What options are available to the President when a money bill is sent to him?

## **Structured Questions**

**[10 Marks each]**

- 1.** With reference to the Rajya Sabha and Lok Sabha, answer the following questions.
  - (i) Mention any three powers and functions of the Lok Sabha.
  - (ii) Differentiate between the powers of the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha.
  - (iii) As the Upper House of the Parliament, how does the Rajya Sabha enjoy its powers?
- 2.** In the view of the power and control of the Indian parliament explain the importance of:
  - (i) Question Hour
  - (ii) No-Confidence Motion
  - (iii) Short Duration Discussion

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

1. What is meant by the term 'quorum'?
2. What is the maximum gap allowed between two parliamentary sessions?
3. Name the bill which cannot originate in the Rajya Sabha.
4. With reference to the Union Parliament, answer the following questions.
  - (i) How many members may be nominated to the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha? Give one reason as to why they may be nominated to the Lok Sabha.
  - (ii) Mention any three qualifications required for a member to be elected to the Lok Sabha.
  - (iii) What is meant by the term 'Session'? Name the three Sessions of the Union Parliament.

## 2017

5. State any one federal feature of the Indian Constitution.
6. How are the Rajya Sabha members elected?
7. Who presides over the joint sessions of the two Houses of the Parliament?
8. When can the Speaker of the Lok Sabha cast his vote?
9. How long can the Rajya Sabha retain the money bill sent by the Lok Sabha?
10. The Powers and functions of the Indian Parliament are wide ranging. In this context, answer the following questions.
  - (i) Explain three ways by which the legislature exercises control over the executive.
  - (ii) Mention any three special powers of the Rajya Sabha that is usually not enjoyed by the other House.
  - (iii) Mention any two judicial powers and any two electoral powers of the Indian Parliament.

## 2016

11. What is meant by 'residuary powers' of the Parliament?
12. What is the normal term of office of the Lok Sabha?
13. State any one subject wherein the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha enjoy co-equal powers in legislation of laws.
14. Who presides over the meeting of the Rajya Sabha in the absence of the Vice-President of India?
15. With reference to the Union Legislature, answer the following questions.
  - (i) How is the Speaker of the Lok Sabha elected? State two disciplinary functions of the speaker.
  - (ii) Explain two conditions under which a member of Parliament can be disqualified under the Anti-Defection Law.
  - (iii) Give reasons to justify why the Lok Sabha is considered to be more powerful than the Rajya Sabha.

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

## **2015**

- 16.** Name the two Houses of the Union Parliament.
- 17.** How many members are nominated by the President to the Lok Sabha? Which community do they represent?
- 18.** What is the required Quorum to hold the meetings of the Lok Sabha?
- 19.** Mention one provision of the constitution which clearly establishes the supremacy of the Lok Sabha with regard to money bills.
- 20.** Who has the power to promulgate an ordinance at the centre? When can it be promulgated?
  
- 21.** Who is the Chairman of the Rajya Sabha?
- 22.** What happens, if a vote of no-confidence is passed against a minister in the Lok Sabha?
- 23.** The Rajya Sabha is the second chamber of the Indian Parliament and represents the interest of the States. In this context, explain the following questions.
  - (i) Its composition
  - (ii) Qualifications for membership
  - (iii) Term of the House and any two of its legislative powers

## **2014**

- 24.** Why is the Rajya Sabha called a 'permanent House'?
- 25.** State the minimum number of times the Lok Sabha must meet in a year.
- 26.** With reference to the Indian Parliament, explain the following.
  - (i) The tenure of the members of the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha.
  - (ii) The composition of the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha.
  - (iii) Its powers to make laws on subjects mentioned in the:
    - (a) Union List
    - (b) Concurrent List

## **2013**

- 27.** Name the two types of authority in a federal set-up in India.
- 28.** What is meant by term Universal Adult Franchise?
- 29.** How is the Speaker of the Lok Sabha elected?
- 30.** Discuss the relationship between the two Houses of the Parliament with reference to the:
  - (i) Money bills
  - (ii) Non-money bills
  - (iii) Control over the executive

# The Union Executive : The President and the Vice-President

## The President

The Constitution confers that the executive authority of the union is inherent or implicit in the President of India. The President is the head of the Indian State and the Supreme Commander of the Defence Forces of India. He/she is the first citizen of India and acts as the symbol of unity, integrity<sup>1</sup> and solidarity<sup>2</sup> of the nation.

### Qualifications

A person shall be eligible for election of the President if he/she fulfil the following qualifications:

- (i) He/she should be a citizen of India.
- (ii) He/she should have completed 35 years of age.
- (iii) He/she should be qualified for election as a member of the Lok Sabha.
- (iv) He/she should not hold any office of profit under the Union Government or any state Government or any local authority or any other public authority.

### Election

The manner and procedure of election of the President of India is mentioned in Article 55 of the Indian Constitution. The President's election is held in accordance with the system of proportional representation<sup>3</sup> by means of the single transferable vote and the voting is done by secret ballot. The nomination of a candidate for election to the office of the President must be subscribed by at least 50 electors as proposers<sup>4</sup> and 50 electors as seconders<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Integrity The quality of being honest and fair.

<sup>2</sup> Solidarity A feeling of unity between people who have the same interests, goals, etc.

<sup>3</sup> Proportional representation It is an electoral system in which parties gain seats in proportion to the number of votes cast for them.

<sup>4</sup> Proposer A person who suggest someone for a position or as a member of an organisation.

<sup>5</sup> Seconder A person who back a politician or a team, etc.

Every candidate has to make a security deposit of ₹ 15000 in the Reserve Bank of India. The security deposit is liable to be **forfeited<sup>6</sup>** in case the candidate fails to secure one-sixth (1/6th) of the votes polled.

### Composition of the Electoral College

The President is elected not directly by the people, but indirectly by members of **electoral college<sup>7</sup>**. It includes:

- (i) The elected members of both the Houses of the Parliament.
- (ii) The elected members of the Legislative Assemblies of the states.
- (iii) The elected members of the Legislative Assemblies of Union Territories of Delhi and Puducherry.

### Manner of Election

The Constitution provides that there shall be uniformity in the scale of representation of different states as well as **parity** between the states as a whole and the union at the election of the President.

The election of the President shall be determined in the following manners:

- (i) The formula for value of vote of an MLA  

$$= \frac{\text{Total Population of State}}{\text{Total number of elected members in the State Legislative Assembly}} \times \frac{1}{1000}$$
- (ii) The formula for value of the vote of an MP  

$$= \frac{\text{Total value of votes of all MLAs of all states}}{\text{Total number of elected MPs}}$$
- (iii) A candidate, in order to be declared as elected to the office of President, must secure a fixed quota of votes. The quota of votes is determined by dividing the total number of valid votes polled by the number of candidates to be elected plus one and adding one to the quotient. The formula can be expressed as:  

$$\text{Electoral quota} = \frac{\text{Total number of valid votes polled}}{1 + 1} + 1$$

$$1 + 1 = (2)$$

### Single Transferable Vote (STV)

It is an electoral system of proportional representation in which a person's vote can be transferred to a second or further competing candidate (according to the voter's stated order of preference), if the candidate of first choice is eliminated during a succession of counts or has more votes than are needed for election.

### Reasons for Indirect Election

The framers of the constitution choose the method of indirect election to the office of the President due to the following reasons:

- (i) If elected directly, he could become a rival centre of power to the Council of Ministers.

- (ii) An indirect election protects the President to become a nominee of the Ruling Party at the centre.
- (iii) The inclusion of members of State Legislative Assembly in the Electoral College makes the President the elected representative of the whole nation. A clear voice would be given to the states as well by this process.

### Oath of Office

Before entering upon the office, the President has to take an oath in the presence of the Chief Justice of India or in his/her absence, the senior-most judge of the Supreme Court.

In his/her oath, the President swears:

- (i) To faithfully execute functions of the office.
- (ii) To preserve, protect and defend the constitution and the law.
- (iii) To devote himself to the service and well-being of the people of India.

### Term of Office

The President's term of office is 5 years from the date on which he/she enters upon the office. The President's term can be terminated earlier by the following ways:

- (i) The resignation in writing addressed to the Vice-President of India.
- (ii) The removal for violation of the constitution, by the process of impeachment.
- (iii) Due to his/her death.
- (iv) When he/she becomes disqualified to hold office or when his/her election is declared void.

### Procedure for Impeachment

The President can be removed from office by a process of impeachment for violation of the Constitution of India. Following is the impeachment procedure of the President:

- (i) To start the proceedings, a 14 days notice signed by not less than 1/4th of the total number of members of the house preferring charges should be given.
- (ii) Then a resolution containing the charges has to be passed by a majority of not less than 2/3rd of the total membership of the House.
- (iii) Either House of Parliament may prefer the charge of violation of the constitution before the other House which shall then investigate the charges.

<sup>6</sup> **Forfeited** It means the loss of security deposit of ₹ 15,000 if the candidate fails to secure 1/6 th of the votes polled.

<sup>7</sup> **Electoral College** A body of electors, who elect the President and Vice-President of India.

<sup>8</sup> **Parity** The state or condition of being equal.

- (iv) During the investigation, the President shall have the right to defend himself/herself.
- (v) After investigating the charges by other house, it has to pass a resolution by 2/3rd majority that the charges have been proved.

### Election Dispute of Presidential Post

The Constitution stipulates that all doubts and disputes arising out of or in connection with the election of a President shall be inquired into and decided by the Supreme Court whose decision shall be final

#### CHECK POINT 01

- 1 "The election to the office of the President is held indirectly by the electoral college." Who are the members of this college?
- 2 To whom does the President send his resignation?
- 3 In which situation does the office of the President fall vacant?

### Powers and Functions of the President

The powers and functions enjoyed and performed by the President of India can be understood under the following heads:

#### Executive Powers

The executive powers and functions of the President are as follows:

**Head of the Union** As the Head of the Union, the President performs and enjoys the following powers:

- All executive actions of the Government of India are formally taken in his/her name.
- He/she can make rules specifying the manner in which the orders and other instruments made and executed in his/her name shall be authenticated.
- He/she can seek any information relating to the administration of affairs of the Union and proposal for legislation from the Prime Minister.

**Appointment of Officials of the Union** The President of India appoints some important officials of the government. These include:

- The Prime Minister and other ministers.
- The Attorney General of India.
- The Comptroller and Auditor General of India, the Chief Election Commissioners, the Chairman and members of the Union Public Service Commission, the

Governor of States, the Chairman and members of Finance Commission, the Election Commission of India and so on.

- The commissions to investigate into the conditions of SCs, STs and OBCs.

**Control over States** The President has the power of direction, co-ordination and control of certain functions relating to state governments. These include:

- He is empowered to send directives to Governors in some executive matters.
- He can direct any Governor to ensure that the state government complies with the laws made by the union government.
- The President is also directly responsible for the administration of Union Territories like Delhi and Andaman, etc.

#### Administrator of Union Territories and Scheduled Areas

The President also performs the following powers:

- The President directly administers the Union Territories through administrators appointed by him/her.
- He/she can declare any area as scheduled area and has powers with respect to the administration of scheduled and tribal areas.

#### Legislative Powers

The President is an essential part of the Parliament of India, so he/she enjoys the following legislative powers:

**Summon or Prorogue<sup>9</sup> of the Parliament** The President can summon or prorogue the Parliament and dissolve the Lok Sabha. He/she can also summon a joint sitting of both the Houses of the Parliament.

**Address to the Parliament** The President can address both Houses of the Parliament at the commencement of the first session after each general election and the first session of each year, i.e. the budget session.

**Send Message to the Houses** The President can send messages to the Houses of the Parliament, whether with respect to a bill pending in the Parliament or otherwise.

**Nomination of Members** The President nominates 12 members having special knowledge or practical experience in respect of such matters as art, literature, science and social service to the Rajya Sabha and two members to the Lok Sabha from the Anglo-Indian community.

**Prior Recommendation** The President's prior recommendation or permission is needed to introduce certain types of bills in the Parliament.

<sup>9</sup> Prorogue discontinue a session without dissolving it.

**Power Related to Bills** When a bill is passed by the Parliament, then it is sent to the President for his/her assent. When a bill is passed by a State Legislature and is presented to the Governor, he/she may pass it, withhold the assent, reject it or may reserve it for the consideration of the President.

The President then can:

- give his/her assent to the bill, or
- withhold his/her assent to the bill, or
- direct the Governor to return the bill (if it is not a money bill) for reconsideration of the State Legislature.

**Bill passed by a State Legislature** A bill passed by a State Legislature may also be reserved for the consideration of the President by the Governor of that state. The President enjoys this right in relation to a bill passed by a State Legislature only in such cases where those are referred to him by the government of a state under Article 200.

**Promulgate (ordered) Ordinance** When the Parliament is not in session, the President can promulgate ordinance. The ordinance must be approved by the Parliament within 6 weeks from its reassembly. The President can also withdraw an ordinance at any time.

**Formation of New States** A bill for the formation of new states or alteration of areas of the existing states cannot be introduced except on the recommendation of the President.

### Financial Powers

Some financial powers of the President are as follows:

- It is the responsibility of the President to introduce the annual budget every year in the Parliament.
- Under constitutional provision, it is the duty of the President to appoint a finance commission after every five years to recommend the revenues sharing between the centre and the states.
- He/she is authorised to withdraw money from Contingency Fund of India to meet certain emergency requirement.
- A money bill can only be introduced after the President's recommendation.
- No demand for grant, can be made except on his recommendation.

### Judicial Powers

The judicial powers and functions of the President are as follows:

- He/she appoints the Chief Justice and the Judges of Supreme Court and High Courts.
- No criminal suit can be initiated against him during his tenure of office. The President is not answerable before any court of law for the exercise of the powers and duties of his office.
- He/she can grant pardon, **reprieve<sup>10</sup>**, **respite<sup>11</sup>** and remission of punishment or **commute**, the sentence of any person convicted of any offence. These are as follows:
  - (i) In all cases where the punishment or sentence is by a court martial.
  - (ii) In all cases where the punishment or sentence is for an offence against union law.
  - (iii) In all cases where the sentence is a sentence of death.

### Diplomatic Powers

The diplomatic powers of the President are as follows:

- The President of India represents India in international conferences, sends and receives ambassadors.
- All international treaties and agreements are concluded on behalf of the President, however, they are subject to satisfaction of the Parliament. The President has the power of appointing Indian ambassadors to other countries.

### Military Powers

The President is the Supreme Commander of the Indian Armed Forces. So, he/she uphold following powers:

- He/she can declare war or conclude peace, it is subjected to the approval of the Parliament.
- He/she appoints the Chiefs of the Army, the Navy and the Air Force.

### Discretionary Powers

Though the President has no constitutional discretion, he/she has some situational discretion. These are as follows:

- Appointing the Prime Minister when no party has a clear majority in the Lok Sabha or when the Prime Minister in the office dies suddenly and there is no obvious successor.
- Dismissal of the Council of Ministers when it cannot prove the confidence of the Lok Sabha.

<sup>10</sup> Reprieve A cancellation or postponement of a punishment.

<sup>11</sup> Respite to grant a temporary period of relief in prison sentence.

- Dissolution of the Lok Sabha if the Council of Ministers has lost its majority. Appointment of the Prime Minister in case of sudden death, where the ruling legislature party is unable to immediately elect a leader.

### CHECK POINT 02

- Mention any one power of the President.
- Who summons the sessions of the Parliament?
- What are the options with the President if a bill is sent to him? State any one.
- How does the President avail his/her military powers?

### Emergency Powers

In addition to the normal powers mentioned above, the President has certain extraordinary powers to deal with Emergency. It is of three types, which are as follows:

- National Emergency (Article 352)
- President's Rules (Articles 356 and 365)
- Financial Emergency (Article 360)

#### (i) National Emergency

The President has the power to make a 'Proclamation of Emergency' on the ground of threat to the security of India or any part thereof by war, **external aggression**<sup>12</sup> or **armed rebellion**<sup>13</sup>. The President can declare such an emergency only on the basis of a written request by the Cabinet of Ministers headed by the Prime Minister.

#### Duration

Every such proclamation must be laid before both the Houses of the Parliament and approved by them within 1 month from the date of its issue, otherwise the proclamation ceases to be operative. Every such resolution must be passed by a special majority (i.e. not less than 2/3rd of the members present and voting). It will terminate at the end of 6 months from the date of the resolution unless Parliament passes a fresh resolution for its continuation. The duration of an Emergency can be extended by 6 months at a time.

#### Effects

A proclamation has effects on the executive, legislative and financial fields, besides Fundamental Rights. The effects of the National Emergency are as follows:

- The centre shall acquire the power to give directions to states on any matter.

- During this period, the distribution of legislative powers between the union and the state gets suspended.
- Parliament by law may extend the normal life of the Lok Sabha for 1 year at a time and not extending it beyond a period of 6 months after the Emergency has ceased to operate.
- The President can modify the constitutional distribution of revenues between the union and the states.
- Article 19 of the Fundamental Rights will automatically get suspended on the ground of war or external aggression. The President can also suspend other rights by order (except the rights included under Articles 20 and 21). Article 20 says that "no person shall be punished for the same offence more than once". Article 21 states that "no person shall be deprived of his life or personal liberty except according to the procedure established by law".

#### (ii) President's Rule (Articles 356 and 365)

Article 356 of the Constitution authorise the President to make a proclamation of Emergency in the following two situations:

- If he/she is satisfied that the government of a state cannot be carried on in accordance with the provisions of the constitution.
- If the State fails to comply with or give effect to any of the directions given by the centre in the exercise of its executive power. It is also called State Emergency or Constitutional Emergency.

#### Duration and Parliament's Approval

On receipt of a report from the Governor, if the President is satisfied that there is a breakdown of constitutional machinery in the state, he may declare an Emergency in the state assuming all or any functions of the state, to himself. Once proclaimed, it must be ratified from the Parliament within 2 months, after which, it remains operational for 6 months.

To extend it beyond a year, it must fulfil two conditions:

- If the proclamation of National Emergency is in operation in the nation or in any part of the country.
- The Election Commission must certifies that holding elections to the Legislative Assembly of the state (concerned) is difficult.

<sup>12</sup> External Aggression An act of war against the republic of India.

<sup>13</sup> Armed Rebellion An effort by many people with supported by arms, armour etc to change the government or leader of a country.

### Effects

Effects of such State Emergencies include:

- State administration is directly placed under the President with the Governor acting in accordance with the instructions issued by the Union Government.
- The President may either dissolve the Vidhan Sabha and dismiss the Council of Ministers or keep them in suspended animation.
- The President may authorise expenditure from the State Consolidated Fund, when the Lok Sabha is not in session. He may also suspend the provision of the Constitution relating to the authority of the state.

### (iii) Financial Emergency

Article 360 of the Constitution of India deals with Financial Emergency. The President can declare this Emergency if he/she:

- is satisfied that a situation has arisen whereby the financial stability of the country is threatened.
- is satisfied that credit of India or of any part of its territory is threatened.

### Duration

Such Emergency shall ordinarily remain in force for a period of 2 months, unless before the expiry of that period, it is approved by resolutions of Parliament. If approved, it operates for 6 months and can be extended by 6 months at a time. It can remain in operation for a maximum period of 3 years.

### Effects

During Financial Emergency, the Union Executive can give directions to any state to observe such **canon<sup>14</sup>** of financial **propriety<sup>15</sup>** as may be specified in the directions. Any such directions may include the following:

- The President may appoint a finance commission to suggest suitable measures to get out of the financial crisis and restore financial stability.
- The President can ask the states to reserve all money bills passed by the State Legislature for his/her consideration.
- The President can issue directions for the reduction of salaries and allowances of all or any class of persons serving in connection with the affairs of the Union, including the Judges of the Supreme Court and the High Court. It is noted here that no proclamation of this type of Emergency has been made so far.
- The President may issue certain directions to the states in regard to the utilisation of funds in the manner he thinks it as reliable.

### Veto Power of the President

A bill passed by the Parliament can become an act only if it receives the assent of the President. The objectives behind conferring this power to the President are as follows:

- To prevent hasty and ill-considered legislation by the Parliament.
- To prevent a legislation which may be unconstitutional.

The Veto power enjoyed by the President of India are of three categories. These are as follows:

- (i) **Pocket Veto** In this case, the President neither ratifies nor reject or return the bill, but simply keeps the bill pending for an indefinite period.
- (ii) **Absolute Veto** It refers to the power of the President to withhold his/her assent to a bill passed by the Parliament. The bill then ends does not become an act.
- (iii) **Suspensive Veto** The President exercise this veto when he/she returns a bill for reconsideration of the Parliament. However, if the bill is passed again with or without amendments and again presented to the President, it is obligatory to give assent to the bill.

### Limitation of the President

The President exercises his powers on the advice of the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers. According to the 42nd Constitutional Amendment, it is necessary for the President to exercise his/her functions in accordance with the advice of the Council of Ministers, which is headed by the Prime Minister.

### CHECK POINT 03

- 1 Mention the circumstance when the President can declare a National Emergency.
- 2 What is the duration of Constitutional Emergency?
- 3 State one limitation imposed on the powers of the President.

### The Vice-President

According to the Article 63 of Indian Constitution, there should be a Vice-President for India, who occupies the second highest office in the country.

### Qualifications

To be eligible for election as Vice-President, a person should fulfil the following qualifications:

- He/she should be a citizen of India.
- He/she should have completed 35 years of age.
- He/she should be qualified for the election as a member of the Rajya Sabha.
- He/she should not hold any office of profit under the Union Government or any State Government or any local authority or any other public authority.

<sup>14</sup> Canon A general law, rule, principle or criterion by which something is judged.

<sup>15</sup> Propriety Conformity to conventionally accepted standards of behaviour or morals.

- He/she should not be a member of either House of the Parliament or a House of the State Legislature. If any such person is elected Vice-President, he/she is deemed to have vacated his/her seat in that House on the date on which he/she enters upon his/her office as Vice-President.

## Election

The nomination of a candidate for election to the office of Vice-President must be subscribed by at least 20 electors as proposers and 20 electors as seconds. Every candidate has to make a security deposit of ₹ 15000 in the Reserve Bank of India. The Vice-President of the Indian Union is elected jointly by both the Houses of the Parliament. The procedure for his election consists of a secret ballot, proportional representation and single transferable vote. An absolute majority of the votes polled is also required for the election of the Vice-President.

## Composition of the Electoral College

Like the President, Vice-President is also elected indirectly by an electoral college in accordance with the system of proportional representation by means of single transferable vote. This electoral college consists of both elected and nominated members of the Parliament but it does not include the members of the State Legislative Assemblies.

## Term of the Office

The term of the office of the Vice-President can be understood through following points:

- The term of the office of the Vice-President is 5 years. It may terminate earlier by resignation (addressed to the President) or removal.
- He/she may be removed by a resolution of Rajya Sabha passed by a majority of its members and agreed to by the Lok Sabha.
- The Vice-President can hold office beyond his/her term until his/her successor assumes the charge.
- He/she may be elected for any number of terms. Notably, no ground has been mentioned in the constitution for the removal of the Vice-President.

## Oath or Affirmation

Before entering upon his/her office, the oath to the office of the Vice-President is administered by the President or some person appointed on the behalf of him/her. The Vice-President swears:

- To bear true faith and allegiance to the Constitution of India.
- To faithfully discharge the duties of his/her office.

## Powers and Functions

The powers and functions of the Vice-President are of two types:

### (i) As an Ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha

The Vice-President acts as an ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha. In this capacity, his/her powers and functions are similar to those of the Speaker of the Lok Sabha.

### (ii) Vice-President as President

The Vice-President acts as the President when a vacancy occurs in the office of the President due to his/her removal or his/her death or otherwise.

He/she can act as the President only for a maximum period of 6 months. When the sitting President is unable to discharge his/her functions, the Vice-President acts as the President until the President resumes his/her office.

It only happens due to absence or illness or any other cause.

While acting as the President or discharging the functions of the President, he/she does not perform the duties of the office of the Chairman of Rajya Sabha. During this period, those duties are performed by the Deputy Chairman of the Rajya Sabha.

### CHECK POINT 04

- 1 What qualifications are required for the office of the Vice-President? Mention any one of them.
- 2 How is the Vice-President removed from the office?
- 3 Under what circumstances can the Vice-President take over the office of the President?
- 4 How long can the Vice-President officiate as President?

## SUMMARY

- The President of India is the Head of the Union. He/she is the first citizen of India and acts as the symbol of **Unity, integrity** and **solidarity** of the nation.
- The President's election is held in accordance with the system of proportional representation by means of the **single transferable vote** and the voting is by **secret ballot**.
- The President is elected by the members of the **electoral college**.
- The President takes an oath in the presence of the Chief Justice of India or in his/her absence, in the presence of the senior-most Judge of the Supreme Court.
- The term of the President's office is 5 years from the date on which he/she enters upon the office. The term of the office of the President may terminate earlier also like he can be removed from the office by the process of **impeachment** for violation of the constitution.
- The constitution stipulates that all doubts arising out of or in connection with the election of a President shall be inquired into and decided by the Supreme Court of India.
- The President can seek any information relating to the administration of affairs of the union and proposals for legislation from the Prime Minister.
- The President appoints important officers of the Government, such as: Prime Minister, Attorney General of India, Chief Election Commissioners, members of Finance Commission, etc.
- The President can promulgate ordinance, when the Parliament is not in session. Such ordinance must be approved by the Parliament within 6 weeks from its re-assembly. President can also withdraw an ordinance at any time.
- The budget is laid before the Parliament in the name of the President. A **money bill** is introduced only on his/her recommendation.
- In addition to normal power, the President has certain extraordinary powers to deal with **Emergency**. It is of three types i.e. National Emergency, President's Rule and Financial Emergency.
- The **National Emergency** is imposed due to war, external aggression or armed rebellion. It implies that the security of India or any part of it is threatened by war or external aggression or armed rebellion.
- When government of a state cannot be carried on in accordance with the provisions of the constitution, either on the report of the Governor or otherwise, then the President proclaims Emergency. It is called **President's Rule or Constitutional Emergency**.
- If a state fails to comply with or give effect to any directions given by the union in the exercise of its executive power, then President's rule can be proclaimed.
- The President can declare **Financial Emergency** if he/she is satisfied that a situation has arisen whereby the financial stability or credit of India or of any part of its territory is threatened,
- The **44th Constitutional Amendment Act of 1978** authorised the President to require the Council of Ministers to reconsider such advice either general or otherwise.
- The Constitution of India provides for the office of Vice-President of India. He occupies the second highest office in the country. Like the President, Vice-President is also elected indirectly by an electoral college.
- Election disputes are decided by the Supreme Court and same principles apply in case of the Vice president as in the case of the President.
- Notably, no ground has been mentioned in the Constitution for the removal of the Vice-President.
- The oath of the office to the Vice-President is administered by the President or some person appointed on the behalf of him/her.
- The Vice-President acts as the ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha. In this capacity his/her powers and functions are similar to those of the Speaker of the Lok Sabha.
- The Vice-President acts as the President when a vacancy occurs in the office of the President, only for a maximum period of 6 months.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a) Very Short Questions

[1 Mark each]

1. In whom the executive power of the Union is implicit?

**Ans.** The Constitution implicit the executive power of the Union in the President of India. He/she exercises the power either directly or indirectly through officer's subordinate to him/her.

2. Who acts as the symbol of unity, integrity and solidarity of the nation?

**Ans.** The President of India acts as the symbol of unity, integrity and solidarity of the nation. He/she is the Head of the India and he/she is the first citizen of India.

3. State any one qualification necessary for the election of the President of India. *(2015)*

**Ans.** One qualification necessary for election of the President is that the President should not hold any office of profit under the Union Government or any State Government or any local/public authority.

4. How does the President get elected?

**Ans.** The President's election is held in accordance with the system of proportional representation by means of the single transferable vote and the voting is done by secret ballot.

5. How many proposers and seconders are required for the nomination of the President's office?

**Ans.** For the nomination to the President's office there must be at least 50 electors as proposers and 50 electors as seconders.

6. What do you mean by security deposit for the post of the President?

**Ans.** Every candidate has to make a security deposit of ₹ 15000 in the Reserve Bank of India. The security deposit is liable to be forfeited in case the candidate fails to secure one-sixth (1/6th) of the votes polled.

7. State the composition of the Electoral College in the election of the President of India. *(2014)*

**Ans.** Following are the composition of the Electoral college for the election of the President of India:

- The elected members of both the Houses of the Parliament.
- Members of the Legislative Assemblies of the states.
- The elected members of the Legislative Assemblies of Union Territories of Delhi and Puducherry.

8. What is the formula for determining the value of votes of an MLA?

**Ans.** The formula for determining the value of votes of an MLA (Member of Legislative Assembly) is as follows:

$$= \frac{\text{Total Population of State}}{\text{Total number of elected members in the State Legislative Assembly}} \times \frac{1}{1000}$$

9. What is the formula for determining the value of votes of an MP?

**Ans.** The formula for determining the value of votes of an MP (Member of the Parliament) is as follows:

$$= \frac{\text{Total value of votes of all MLAs of all States}}{\text{Total number of elected MPs}}$$

10. What do you understand by the 'quota'?

**Ans.** The quota of votes is determined by dividing the total number of valid votes polled by the number of candidates to be elected plus one and adding one to the quotient.

It can be understood by the following formula:  
Electoral Quota

$$= \frac{\text{Total number of valid votes polled}}{1+1=(2)} + 1$$

11. What do you understand by Single Transferable Vote?

**Ans.** The Single Transferable Vote (STV) is an electoral system of proportional representation in which a person's vote can be transferred to the second or further competing candidate.

12. State any one reason, for why the President is elected indirectly. *(2018, 2013)*

**Ans.** The framers of the Constitution choose the method of indirect election to the office of the President because if elected directly, he could become a rival centre of power to the Council of Ministers.

13. The President is to take oath in the presence of whom?

**Ans.** The President is to take oath in the presence of the Chief Justice of India or in his/her absence the senior-most Judge of the Supreme Court.

**14.** Before entering upon the office of the President, what oath does the President takes?

**Ans.** Before entering upon the office, the President swears in his/her oath to preserve, protect and defend the Constitution and the law of land.

**15.** What is the term of office of the President?

**Ans.** The term of President's office is 5 years from the date on which he/she enters upon the office.

**16.** When and how can the President of India be removed from the office? [2006]

*Or* Name the official procedure by which the President can be removed. [2016]

**Ans.** The official procedure of removing President is the process of impeachment which can be initiated by either House of the Parliament for violation of the Constitution.

**17.** How can the President's term be terminated earlier?

**Ans.** The term of the President's office can be terminated earlier, through following points:

- By the resignation in writing addressed to the Vice-President of India.
- By the removal for violation of the Constitution, by the process of impeachment.

**18.** Who settles the disputes arising in connection with the election of the President of India? [2012]

**Ans.** The Supreme Court of India settles all the disputes arising in connection with the election of the President of India.

**19.** Which Amendment Act has taken away the Supreme Court's power to settle disputes in connection with the election of the President of India?

**Ans.** The 39th Constitutional Amendment Act has taken away the power of Supreme Court to settle disputes in connection with the election of the President of India.

**20.** As the Head of the Union, the President of India, avails the executive powers. Mention any one of them.

**Ans.** As the Head of the Union, the President of India can make rules for more convenient transaction of the business of the Union Government and for allocation of the said business among the ministers.

**21.** The Finance Commission of India is appointed by whom?

**Ans.** The President of India appoints the Finance Commission of India.

**22.** As the administrator of scheduled area, the President performs how many functions? Mention.

**Ans.** The President performs one function i.e. the President can declare any area as scheduled area and has powers with respect to the administration of Scheduled and tribal areas.

**23.** Mention any one legislative power of the President.

**Ans.** He/she can address the Parliament at the commencement of the first session after general election and the first session of each year.

**24.** Mention any one important occasion when the President addresses a joint session of the Parliament. [2016]

**Ans.** The President can address a joint session of both the Houses of the Parliament at the commencement of the first session after each general elections and at the first session of the each year i.e. The Budget Session.

**25.** When does the President appoints the Presiding officer of the Houses?

**Ans.** The President can appoint any member of both the Houses of the Parliament, as the Presiding officers when the Presiding officers of the Houses fall vacant.

**26.** What happens, when the bill is again passed by the State Legislature and is then presented to the Governor for his/her assent?

**Ans.** If the bill is passed again with or without amendments, by the State Legislature, the Governor must give his assent to it.

**27.** What is an Ordinance? When can it be passed? [2014]

*Or* What is an Ordinance? [2018, 2007]

**Ans.** Ordinances are short-term laws that are promulgated by the President of India on the recommendation of the Union Cabinet when the parliament is not in session.

**28.** Who has the power to promulgate an ordinance at the centre ? When can it be promulgated? [2015]

**Ans.** An Ordinance is promulgated by the President when the Parliament is not in session. These ordinance must be approved by the Parliament within 6 weeks from the date of its reassembly. (The President can also withdraw an ordinance at any time).

**29.** State any two financial powers of the President.

**Ans.** The two financial powers of the President are as follows:

- (i) The budget is laid before the Parliament in the name of the President.
- (ii) A Money Bill is introduced only on the recommendation of the President.

**30.** Mention any one diplomatic power of the President.

**Ans.** The one diplomatic power of the President is that all international treaties and agreements are concluded on behalf of the President. They are subjected to be ratified by the Parliament.

**31.** Mention two military powers of the President of India. (2007)

**Ans.** The President is the Supreme Commander of the defence forces of India. So, he/she upholds the following powers:

- (i) He/she can declare war or conclude peace, it is subject to the approval of the Parliament.
- (ii) He/she appoints the Chiefs of the Army, the Navy and the Air Force.

**32.** Mention any one discretionary power of the President. (2015)

*Or* Mention one circumstance when the President can appoint the Prime Minister using his discretionary power. (2011)

*Or* When can the President use his discretionary power to appoint the Prime Minister? (2017)

**Ans.** One circumstance when the President can appoint the Prime Minister using his discretionary power is that when no party has a clear majority in the Lok Sabha and there is a hung Parliament or when the Prime Minister in the office dies suddenly.

**33.** What is the impact of National Emergency over the State Legislature?

**Ans.** When National Emergency is proclaimed, then the State Legislature will not be suspended, but the distribution of legislative powers between Union and State gets suspended.

**34.** What is the effect of National Emergency over the Fundamental Rights?

**Ans.** During the National Emergency, Article 19 of the Fundamental Rights will automatically get suspended on the grounds of war or external aggression.

**35.** Under what circumstance does the President's rule be continued beyond the period of 1 year?

**Ans.** The continuance of the President's rule beyond 1 year is possible only if the proclamation of Emergency under Article 352 is in operation.

**36.** Mention the circumstance when the President can declare Financial Emergency.

**Ans.** If the President is satisfied that the situation has arisen whereby the financial stability of the country is threatened. He can declare Financial Emergency.

**37.** What is Veto Power?

**Ans.** Veto power is enjoyed by the President over bills passed by the Parliament. It means he/she can withhold his/her assent to the bills.

**38.** Mention any one Veto Power.

**Ans.** **Pocket Veto** In this case, President neither ratifies nor rejects or return the bills, but simply keeps the bill pending for an indefinite period.

**39.** Through which amendment, the President is bounded by the advice of Council of Ministers?

**Ans.** The 42nd Constitutional Amendment Act of 1976, made the President bounded by the advice of Council of Ministers headed by the Prime Minister.

**40.** State the reason why the President cannot dissolve the Rajya Sabha.

**Ans.** The President cannot dissolve the Rajya Sabha because it is a permanent House of the Parliament.

**41.** Who is the Vice-President?

**Ans.** The Constitution of India, under Article 63, provides that there should be a Vice-President. The Vice-President occupies second highest office in the country. Venkaiah Naidu is our current Vice-President.

**42.** What are the condition of the office of the Vice-President?

**Ans.** The Constitution of India lays down the certain conditions of the Vice-President's office. Two of them are as follows:

(i) He/she should be qualified for the election as a member of Rajya Sabha.

(ii) He/she should not hold any office of profit.

**43.** Mr Konar was not found eligible for the election as the Vice-President of India even though he had the qualifications of being a citizen of India and not being a member of the Parliament and the State Legislature. On what grounds was he disqualified? Give one reason. (2009)

**Ans.** He holds the office of profit under the Union Government or any State Government or any local public authority. On the basis of this ground he was disqualified.

**44.** For the nomination of a candidate for the election of the Vice-President, how many seconders and proposers are required?

**Ans.** The nomination of a candidate for election to the office of the Vice-President must be subscribed by atleast 20 electors as proposers and 20 electors as seconders.

**45.** Who are the members of electoral college of the Vice-President?

**Ans.** The member of an electoral college to the election of the Vice-President are as follows:

- It consists of both the elected as well as the nominated members of the Parliament.
- It does not include the members of the State Legislative Assemblies.

**46.** Who decides the election disputes of the Vice-President?

**Ans.** Election disputes related to the office of the Vice-President and the President, are decided by the Supreme Court of India.

**47.** Who administers the oath to the office of the Vice-President?

**Ans.** The oath to the office of the Vice-President is administered by the President or some person appointed on this behalf by him/her.

**48.** What oath does the Vice-President take before entering upon the office?

**Ans.** Before entering upon his/her office, the Vice-President has to make and subscribe to an oath or affirmation. The Vice-President swears:
 

- to bear true faith and allegiance to the Constitution of India.
- to faithfully discharge his duties.

**49.** When can the Vice-President cast his/her vote in the Rajya Sabha? [2013]

**Ans.** Generally, the Vice-President, acts as the ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha, cannot cast a vote. But when there is a tie then he/she can caste a vote to clear the majority.

**50.** Mention any one difference between the election of the President and the Vice-President of India.

**Ans.** One difference between the election of the President and the Vice-President of India is that for the election to the office of the President, the members of the State Legislature Assemblies participate, but it does not happens for the election of the Vice-President.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

**1.** The President is the Executive Head of the Union of India. In this regard, answer the following questions:

- (i) Mention any three qualifications for the election of the President. [3]

(ii) Explain the impeachment procedure of the President. [3]

(iii) What is the manner of the election of the President? [2]

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 190.

(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 191 and 192.

(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 191.

**2.** The President of India is elected indirectly, despite it, he is the Head of the Union. With reference to this, answer the following questions:

(i) What is meant by proportional representation? [3]

- (ii) • What are the conditions required for getting nominal to the post of the President? [3]
- Who is the Constitutional Head of the Union Government? [2015]

(iii) Why does the framers of the Constitution choose the method of the indirect election to the post of the President? [4]

**Ans.** (i) Proportional representation is a concept in which the number of seats won by a party or a group of candidates are proportionate to the number of votes received.

- (ii) • The nomination of a candidate for the election to the office of the President must be subscribed by at least 50 electors as proposers and 50 electors as seconders.
- The President is the Constitutional Head of the Union Government.

(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 191.

**3.** The President of India is the Constitutional head of the Indian Republic. In this context, answer the following questions: [2016]

(i) How is the President elected? [3]

(ii) Mention three types of Emergencies that the President is empowered to proclaim. [3]

(iii) Explain briefly any four 'Executive Powers' of the President. [4]

**Ans.** (i) The President of India is elected indirectly by the member of an electoral college consisting of the elected members of both houses of Parliament and the elected members of the Legislative Assemblies of all states including Union Territories of Delhi and Puducherry.

(ii) Three types of Emergencies that the President is empowered to proclaim are as follows:

- **National Emergency** (Article 352) The President, if satisfied that the security of the nation is threatened by war or external aggression or armed rebellion, he can proclaim this emergency.

**• State Emergency or President's Rule**

(Article 356) on receipt of a report from the Governor, if the President is satisfied that there is a breakdown of constitutional machinery in the state, he can proclaim this emergency.

**• Financial Emergency** (Article 360) If a

situation has arisen whereby the financial stability or credit of the nation is threatened, the President can proclaim this emergency.

(iii) The four Executive Powers of the President are as follows:

- As a head of the Union Administration, all executive orders are issued in the name of the President.
- He makes appointments to key posts to run the government's administration such as the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers, the Chief Justice and judges of Supreme Court and the High Courts etc.
- The administration of the Union Territories and the border areas is the responsibility of the President.
- He makes rules for more convenient transaction of business of the Union Government.

**4.** The President of India proclaims the Emergency powers with respect to it, answer the following questions:

- (i) Mention any three effects of the National Emergency. [3]
- (ii) What is the duration of President's rule and what are its effects? [3]
- (iii) Mention any four effects of the Financial Emergency. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page 194.

(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 194 and 195.

(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 195.

**5.** With respect to the President of India, as the executive head, answer the following questions:

- (i) State the oath or affirmation to the office of the President. [3]
- (ii) Mention any three appointment powers of the President. [3]
- (iii) With respect to the bills, what is the veto power of the President. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 191.

(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 192.

(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 195.

**6.** The President of India is the Head of the Indian Republic. In this context, answer the following questions:

[2012]

- (i) Besides being a citizen of India, state three other qualifications required for a person to be eligible to the President of India. [3]
- (ii) Mention three Legislative Powers. [3]
- (iii) Under what circumstances can the President of India declare an Emergency in the country? [4]

**Ans.** (i) Other qualifications required to be eligible to be the President of India are as follows

- He/she must have completed the age of 35 years.
- He/she should be qualified for election as a member of the Lok Sabha.
- He/she should not hold any office of profit under the Government of India or Government of any State or under any local authority.

(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 192 and 193.

(iii) Under following circumstances the President can declare an Emergency in the country:

- When the President is satisfied of an imminent danger of such external aggression or armed rebellion.
- When the President is satisfied that the Government of a State cannot be carried on in accordance with the provisions of the Constitution.
- When a State fails to comply with or give effect to any of the directions given by the Union in the exercise of its executive power.
- When the President is satisfied that a situation has arisen whereby the financial stability or credit of India or of any part of its territory is threatened.

**7.** The President of India is a nominal and constitutional head of the nation. In this context, answer the following questions:

[2010]

- (i) Why is the President of India referred as a nominal head of the state? State two examples of his legislative powers that suggest his nominal status. [3]
- (ii) Mention the circumstances when the President can declare a National Emergency. [3]
- (iii) Explain two discretionary powers of the President. [4]

**Ans.** (i) According to constitutional provisions, the President exercises his powers on the advice of the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers.

Two legislative powers of the President are:

- The ordinance power of the President is subjected to ratification by the Parliament. If not ratified, the ordinance ceases.

- The nomination of members in Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha is also done by the President on the advice of Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers. So he has a sort of a nominal status.
- (ii) The circumstances, when the President can declare a National Emergency are as follows:
- The President may make such proclamation if he/she is satisfied of an imminent danger of war.
  - If President satisfies there is armed rebellion in the Indian Union.
- (iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 193 and 194.**
- 8.** The President and the Vice-President are part of the Union Executive. In this context, answer the following questions. *[2018]*
- (i) State any three qualifications required for a candidate to be elected as the Vice-President of India. *(3)*
  - (ii) State the three functions of the Vice-President. *(3)*
  - (iii) Explain briefly any two legislative and any two executive powers of the President. *(4)*
- Ans.**
- (i) Three qualifications required for a candidate to be elected as the Vice-President of India are following:
    - He/she must be a citizen of India.
    - He/she should have completed 35 years of age.
    - He/she should be qualified for the election as a member of the Rajya Sabha.
  - (ii) Three functions of the Vice-President are following:
    - The Vice-President acts as an ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha.
    - The Vice-President acts as the President when a vacancy occurs in the office of the President due to his/her removal or his/her death or otherwise.
    - When the sitting President is unable to discharge his/her functions, the Vice-President acts as the President until the President resumes his/her office.
  - (iii) Two legislative powers of the President are following:
    - The President can summon or prorogue the Parliament and dissolve the Lok Sabha. He/she can also summon a joint sitting of both the Houses of Parliament.
    - The President can address both the Houses of the Parliament at the commencement of the first session after each general election and the first session of each year, i.e. the Budget Session.
- Two executive powers of the President are following:
- All executive actions of the Government of India are formally taken in his/her name.
- He/she can make rules specifying the manner in which the orders and other instruments made and executed in his/her name shall be authenticated.
- 9.** The office of the Vice-President is the second highest office of our country. In this regard, answer the following questions:
- (i) Mention any three qualifications for the office of the Vice-President. *[3]*
  - (ii) When does the Vice-President act as the President? *[3]*
  - (iii) Discuss the term of the office of the Vice-President. *[4]*
- Ans.**
- (i) To be eligible for election as the Vice-President, a person should fulfil certain qualifications. Three of them are as follows:
    - He/she should be a citizen of India.
    - He/she should have completed 35 years of age.
    - He/she should be qualified for the election as a member of the Rajya Sabha.
  - (ii) The Vice-President acts as the President under the following circumstances:
    - When a vacancy occurs in the office of the President due to his/her removal, or death or otherwise.
    - He/she can act as President only for a maximum period of 6 months.
    - When the sitting President is unable to discharge his/her functions, the Vice-President acts as the President until the President resumes his/her office. It only happens in case of absence or illness or any other cause.
  - (iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 196.**
- 10.** According to Article 63 of our Constitution “There shall be a Vice-President of India”. In this context, state
- (i) Composition of Electoral college. *[3]*
  - (ii) Affirmation *[3]*
  - (iii) Functions *[4]*
- Ans.**
- (i) Like the President, the Vice-President of India is elected indirectly by an Electoral college, through the system of Proportional Representation by means of Single Transferable Vote. This Electoral college consists of
    - Both the elected as well as the nominated members of the Parliament.
    - It does not include the members of the State Legislative Assemblies.
  - (ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 196.**
  - (iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 196.**

# **CHAPTER TEST**

## **Very Short Questions**

**[1 Mark each]**

- 1.** Who elects the President of India?
- 2.** To whom does the President send his resignation?
- 3.** Who administers the Union Territory?
- 4.** What options are open to the President when an Ordinary Bill is sent to him/her for his/her assent?
- 5.** What are the circumstances for the National Emergency?
- 6.** Put any one effect of the President's Rule.
- 7.** Mention any one reason, why the President election is indirect?
- 8.** Mention any one process, for the impeachment of the President.
- 9.** Mention two important functions of the Vice-President.
- 10.** Who is the ex-officio Chairperson of the Rajya sabha?

## **Structured Questions**

**[10 Marks each]**

- 1.** The President is the Executive Head of the State or Union. With reference to it, answer the following questions:
  - (i) Write any three powers of the President.
  - (ii) What all Veto powers are enjoyed by the President?
  - (iii) When can the President proclaim the Financial Emergency? What are the limitations of the President?
- 2.** The second Head of the Union is the Vice-President of India. With reference to it, answer the following questions:
  - (i) What is the manner for the election of the Vice-President?
  - (ii) Mention any two of the Vice-President's powers.
  - (iii) What are the qualifications for the office of the Vice-President?

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

- 1.** What is an Ordinance?
- 2.** The President and the Vice-President are part of the Union Executive. In this context, answer the following questions.
  - (i) State any three qualifications required for a candidate to be elected as the Vice-President of India.
  - (ii) State the three functions of the Vice-President.
  - (iii) Explain briefly any two legislative and any two executive powers of the President.

## 2017

- 3.** When can the President use his Discretionary power to appoint the Prime Minister?

## 2016

- 4.** Name the official procedure by which the President can be removed.
- 5.** Mention any one important occasion when the President addresses a joint session of the Parliament.
- 6.** The President of India is the Constitutional head of the Indian Republic. In this context, answer the following questions:
  - (i) How is the President elected?
  - (ii) Mention three types of emergencies that the President is empowered to proclaim.
  - (iii) Explain briefly any four 'Executive Powers' of the President.

## 2015

- 7.** Mention any one discretionary power of the President.
- 8.** State any one qualification necessary for the election of the President of India.
- 9.** Who has the power to promulgate an ordinance at the centre? When can it be promulgated?

## 2014

- 10.** State the composition of the Electoral college in the election of the President of India.

## 2013

- 11.** When can the Vice-President cast his/her vote in the Rajya Sabha?
- 12.** State any one reason for which the President is elected indirectly.

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

# The Prime Minister and Council of Ministers

## The Prime Minister

Article 74 of the Constitution of India facilitates that “there shall be a Council of Ministers, with the Prime Minister at the head, to aid and advise the President, who shall, in the exercise of his/her functions, act in accordance with such advice.” In parliamentary form of government, the President is the nominal executive authority (*de jure executive*) and Prime Minister is the real executive authority (*de facto executive*). In other words, the President is the Head of the Union, but the Prime Minister is the Head of the Government.

### Appointment

The Prime Minister (PM) is appointed by the President, who according to **convention**<sup>1</sup>, invites the leader of the majority party or group in the Lok Sabha to form the government. The members of the majority group/party elect their leader in the Lok Sabha to be appointed as the Prime Minister. The President may use his discretionary power to appoint the Prime Minister, when no single party or group secures the majority in the House but has to appoint the person who can prove his majority in the House with the support of some smaller groups or parties.

### Oath

Before entering upon the office of Prime Minister, the President administers the oath of office and secrecy to the Prime Minister which are as follows:

- To bear true faith and **allegiance**<sup>2</sup> to the Constitution of India.
- To uphold the sovereignty and integrity of India.
- To faithfully and honestly discharge the duties of his/her office.
- To do right to all manner of people in accordance with the constitution and the law, without the fear or favour, affection or ill-will.

<sup>1</sup> Convention A way in which something is done.

<sup>2</sup> Allegiance Loyalty or commitment

## Term

The Prime Minister holds the office till the pleasure of the President. But the President can dismiss the Prime Minister only when the Prime Minister fails to enjoy the majority support of the Lok Sabha.

## Powers and Functions

The powers and functions of the Prime Minister can be understood under the following heads:

### In Relation to the Council of Ministers

The Prime Minister enjoys the following powers as the head of the Union Council of Ministers:

- The President appoints only those persons as ministers who are recommended<sup>3</sup> by the Prime Minister.
- The Prime Minister allocates<sup>4</sup> and reshuffles<sup>5</sup> various portfolios among the ministers.
- The Prime Minister can advise the President to dismiss a minister in case of difference of opinion.
- The Prime Minister presided the meeting of Council of Ministers and influences its decisions.
- The Prime Minister brings about the collapse of the Council of Ministers by resigning from the office.
- The Prime Minister is the Chief Coordinator between various ministers on policy issues.

### In Relation to the President

The Prime Minister possesses the following powers in relation to the President:

- The Prime Minister is the principal advisor to the President. The Prime minister chooses the ministers and on his advice the President appoints them. He acts as a link between the President and the Council of Ministers.
- The Prime Minister furnishes<sup>6</sup> all the administrative affairs of the union, when the President may call for.
- The Prime Minister advises the President with regard to the appointment of important officials, such as CAG, members of UPSC, ECs, etc.

### In Relation to the Parliament

As the leader of the Lok Sabha, Prime Minister enjoys the following powers:

- The Prime Minister advises the President with regard to summoning and proroguing (discontinuing) the sessions of the Parliament.
- The Prime Minister can recommend dissolution<sup>7</sup> of the Lok Sabha to the President at any time.
- Prime Minister announces government policies on the floor of the House.
- The Prime Minister is the leader of the Lower House in the Parliament and the Chief Spokesperson of the government in the Parliament.
- Whenever an unwanted situation arises in the Parliament, the matter generally ends with the intervention of the Prime Minister.

### Prime Minister as the Leader of the Nation

- The Prime Minister represents the nation.
- He decides the kind of relation India would have with other countries.
- He tries to protect the interest of the country in international forums.
- He is the ex-officio Chairman of the NITI Aayog or National Institution for Transforming India Aayog that replaces Planning Commission of India.
- He is also the Chairman of Atomic Energy Commission.

### CHECK POINT 01

**1** What does Article 74 of the constitution relate to?

**2** In relation to the President, state any one power enjoyed by the Prime Minister.

**3** How is the Prime Minister a link between the cabinet and the President?

## The Union Council of Ministers

The Union Council of Ministers exercises executive authority in the Republic of India. It consists of senior ministers, called 'Cabinet Ministers', Junior Ministers, called 'Ministers of State' and 'Deputy Ministers.'

**3** Recommend Put forward with approval which is being suitable for particular purpose or role.

**4** Allocate Distribute for a particular purpose .

**5** Reshuffle Interchange the positions of government ministers.

**6** Furnish To provide something necessary or desire.

**7** Dissolution The action of formally ending or dismissing an assembly.

It is led by the Prime Minister. A smaller executive body, called the Union Cabinet is the supreme decision-making body in India. Only the Prime Minister and ministers of the rank of 'Cabinet Ministers' are members of Union Cabinet as per Article 352.

## Formation

The Constitution originally does not specify the number of the Council of Ministers. However, the constitution (91st Amendment Act, 2003) put a ceiling on the size of the Council of Ministers to 15% of the strength of the Lok Sabha or the State Legislatures. The constitution does not classify the members of the Council of Ministers into different ranks. The Council of Ministers is also called **the Cabinet**.

## Composition

The Council of Ministers consists of three categories of ministers, namely:

- (i) **Cabinet Ministers** They head the important ministers of the government such as Home, Defence, Finance, etc. They attend all the meetings and also play an important role in deciding the policies.
- (ii) **The Ministers of State** They are the second category of Ministers. They may either be given independent charge of ministries or departments or may be attached to the Cabinet Ministers. They do not participate in the cabinet meetings, but they are sometimes invited to the cabinet meetings to discuss matters related to their departments. In case of independent charge, they perform the same functions and exercise the same powers in relation to their ministries or departments as Cabinet Ministers perform.
- (iii) **Deputy Ministers** The third category of ministers are the Deputy Ministers who are responsible to assist the Cabinet Ministers and the Council of Ministers in performing their administrative, political and parliamentary duties. They are not the members of cabinet and they never take part in cabinet deliberations.

## Appointment

The Prime Minister is appointed by the President and other ministers are also appointed by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister.

Generally, the Members of Parliament (either the Lok Sabha or the Rajya Sabha) are appointed as ministers. A person who is not a member of either Houses can also be appointed as a minister. But he/she must become a member (either through election or nomination) of either House of the Parliament, within 6 months, otherwise, he/she ceases to be a minister.

## Oath

Before entering upon the office, the President administers the oath and secrecy of office to the minister. A minister swears in the same manner as that of the Prime Minister.

## Tenure

- The ministry shall hold the office so long as they continue to enjoy the confidence of the majority in the Lok Sabha, or so long the Prime Minister does not resign.
- The Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to the Lok Sabha.
- The Prime Minister can, at any time demand a resignation from any minister and recommend to the President to do so.
- Thus, the tenure of the ministry or a minister is not fixed. Generally, the maximum term for which a ministry can remain in office is 5 years i.e. one full term of the Lok Sabha.

## CHECK POINT 02

- 1 How does the President appoint a minister?
- 2 The Council of Ministers consists of different categories of ministers. Which type of ministers play more important role?
- 3 How long can a minister stay in office?

## Powers and Functions

Powers and functions of the Council of Ministers can be studied under the following heads:

### Executive Powers

Following are the executive powers of the Council of Ministers:

**Formulation of Policy** The Council of Ministers is mainly a policy formulating body. It formulates both external and domestic policies of the government on important matters such as defence, economic policy, security needs and important reforms, etc.

**Implementation of Policies** When the policy decision on any subject is taken by the cabinet, then, the Minister of State and the Deputy Minister of the concerned ministry <sup>8</sup>scrutinise the policies properly and forward it to the civil servants to implement the decision.

<sup>8</sup> Scrutinise Examine or inspect closely and thoroughly.

### Co-ordinate the Activities of the Various Departments

The cabinet has the power to co-ordinate the activities of various departments of the Central Government as these departments are involved in fulfilling the purposes of the government policies.

**Appointments** All major appointments are made by the President with the advise of the Council of Ministers, such as appointment of Judges of Supreme Court and High Courts, Governor of States, Chief Election Commissioner and other dignitaries.

### Legislative Powers

The second kind of powers and functions of the Cabinet are:

**Power of Initiating Bills** Almost 95% of the bills initiated in the legislature are done by the cabinet. These are called official bills. These bills are given priority and preference over Private Bills.

Important bills are introduced by the Cabinet and are piloted through the various stages of legislation and get passed by the Parliament with party support.

**President's Address** The President addresses the Parliament after every general election and at the beginning of each session of the Parliament. But the President only reads out the address which is drafted by the cabinet.

**Amendment to the Constitution** Without the approval of the cabinet, the amendment of the constitution is not possible.

**Issuing of Ordinance** The Council of Ministers advises the President to issue an ordinance when the Parliament is not in session.

**Summoning the Parliament** Generally, the President summons the Parliament, but it is initiated by the Ministry of Parliamentary Affairs.

**Source of Information** The ministers alongwith the secretaries of the concerned departments answer the questions put to them by the members of the Lok Sabha.

### Financial Powers

The Council of Ministers have an absolute control over the nation's finances.

The financial powers of them are as follows:

**Budget** The annual budget is prepared at the instance of the cabinet. The proposals for taxes and expenditures are made by the cabinet. It is the duty of the Finance Minister to present the budget in the Parliament and expected it to be passed.

**Introduction of Money Bills** The money bills can only be introduced in the Lok Sabha. The Finance Ministry proposes the imposition of taxes or suggest reduction or abolition of taxes.

### Emergency Power

The President can declare a proclamation of National Emergency under Article 352. However after 44th Amendment Act, such proclamation can only be made after the written recommendation of the Council of Ministers.

### Salaries and Allowances

The salaries and allowances of ministers are determined by Parliament from time-to-time. A minister gets the salaries and allowances that are payable to a Member of Parliament. Additionally, a minister gets a sumptuary allowance, free accommodation, travelling allowances, medical facilities, etc.

### Responsibility of the Cabinet

There are mainly two types of responsibilities. These are studied under the following heads:

(i) **Collective Responsibility** Article 75 of the constitution clearly state that the Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to the Lok Sabha. This means that all the ministers are jointly responsible to the Lok Sabha for all their acts of omission and commission. They work as a team and swim and sink together.

When the Lok Sabha passes a no-confidence motion against the Council of Ministers, all the ministers have to resign including those ministers who are from the Rajya Sabha. The Council of Ministers can also advise the President to dissolve the Lok Sabha on the ground that the House does not represent the views of electorate faithfully and call for fresh elections.

(ii) **Individual Responsibility** Article 75 of the Constitution also contains the principle of individual responsibility. It states that the ministers holds the office during the pleasure of the President, which means that the President can remove a minister even at a time when the Council of Ministers enjoys the confidence of the Lok Sabha. However, the President removes a minister only on the advice of the Prime Minister.

## Distinction Between the Council of Ministers and the Cabinet

Some distinguished features of the Council of Ministers and the cabinet are as follows:

	Council of Ministers	Cabinet
Members	It includes all three categories of ministers i.e. Cabinet Ministers, Ministers of State and Deputy Ministers.	It includes only Cabinet Ministers.
Collective Function	It has no collective function, so that it does not meet as a body to transact government business.	It has collective function so that it meets as a body to transact government business.
Supremacy of the Cabinet	Its functions are determined by the cabinet.	It directs the Council of Ministers by taking policy decisions which are binding on all ministers.
Implementation	It implements the decisions taken by the cabinet.	It supervises the implementation of its decisions by the Council of Ministers.
Responsibility	It is collectively responsible to the Lower House (Lok Sabha) of the Parliament.	It enforces the collective responsibility of the Council of Ministers to the Lok Sabha.

### CHECK POINT 03

- 1 What type of executive powers the Council of Ministers plays as the head of the government? Mention any one.
- 2 How does the Council of Ministers control the financial stability?
- 3 What role does the Council of Ministers play with regard to Emergency? State any one.
- 4 Under what circumstances does a Minister own individual responsibility?

## SUMMARY

- The Constitution of India facilitates that there shall be a Council of Ministers with the Prime Minister at the head, to aid and advise the President, who shall in the exercise of his/her functions, act in accordance with such advice.
- Article 75 says that the Prime Minister shall be appointed by the President of India.
- The President has to appoint the leader of majority party in the Lok Sabha as the Prime Minister.
- When no party has a clear majority in the Lok Sabha, then the President may appoint the Prime Minister.
- The term of the Prime Minister is not fixed and he/she holds office as the pleasure of the President.
- The President appoints only those persons as ministers who are recommended by the Prime Minister.
- Prime Minister can advise the President to dismiss a minister in case of difference of opinion.
- Prime Minister brings about the collapse of the Council of Ministers by resigning from the office.
- Prime Minister communicates to the President with respect to the administration of affairs of the Union and proposals for legislation.
- Prime Minister can recommend dissolution of the Lok Sabha to the President at any time.
- Generally, the Members of Parliament are appointed as Ministers. A person who is not a member of either Houses can be appointed as a minister, but he/she must become a member within 6 months.
- The Council of Ministers consists of three categories of Ministers namely; Cabinet Ministers, the Ministers of State and Deputy Ministers.
- The **Cabinet Ministers** head the important ministries of the government such as Home, Defence, Finance, External Affairs and so on.
- The **Ministers of State** may either be given independent charge of ministries or departments or may be attached to Cabinet Ministers.
- The **Deputy Ministers** are not the members of cabinet and do not attend cabinet meetings.
- The cabinet formulates the legislative programme for each sessions of the Parliament through its power of initiating bills.
- Article 75 of the Constitution clearly states that the Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to the Lok Sabha.
- The Council of Ministers work as a team and swim or sink together.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a Very Short Questions

[1 Mark each]

1. Which article of the Constitution facilitates that there shall be a Council of Ministers with the Prime Minister at the head?

**Ans.** Article 74 of the Constitution facilitates that there shall be a Council of Ministers with the Prime Minister at the head.

2. Who is the real executive of the government?

**Ans.** In the Parliamentary System of the Government, the President is the nominal executive and Prime Minister is the real executive of the government.

3. Does our Constitution contain any specific procedure for the appointment of the Prime Minister?

**Ans.** No, the Constitution does not contain any specific procedure for the selection and appointment of the Prime Minister. But Article 75 says that the Prime Minister shall be appointed by the President of India.

4. Mention any one swear of the Prime Minister's oath.

**Ans.** In the Oath of the Prime Minister, he/she swears to uphold the sovereignty and integrity of India.

5. What is the term of the office of the Prime Minister? [2006]

**Ans.** The term of the office of a Prime Minister is 5 years. However, the President may dismiss him before, if the Prime Minister loses the majority support of the Lok Sabha.

6. Mention any one way by which the authority of the Prime Minister can be checked. [2014]

**Ans.** The authority of Prime Minister can be checked by the members of opposition party in the Parliament.

7. In relation to the Council of Ministers, mention any one power of prime Minister.

*Or* Mention any one important function of the Prime Minister in relation to the Council of Ministers.

**Ans.** The Prime Minister enjoys the power as the head of the Union Council of Ministers, i.e. the President appoints only those persons as ministers who are recommended by the Prime Minister.

8. In relation to the President, mention only one power of the Prime Minister.

**Ans.** The Prime Minister enjoys certain powers in relation to the President i.e. the Prime Minister advises the President with regard to the appointment of major officials, such as CAG, ECs etc.

9. Mention any one power of the Prime Minister in relation to the Parliament.

**Ans.** The Prime Minister can recommend the dissolution of the Lok Sabha to the President at any time. This is one of the power of the Prime Minister in relation to the Parliament.

10. The Prime Minister is Chairman of which organisations?

**Ans.** The Prime Minister is the Chairman of NITI Aayog, National Development Council, National Integration Council, Inter-State Council and National Water Resources Council.

11. State any one administrative function of the Cabinet. [2018]

**Ans.** Cabinet takes decisions on important matters such as defence, finances, foreign affairs, etc. It also formulates and decides the domestic and international policies of the Government.

12. Which articles of the Constitution deals with the Council of Ministers?

**Ans.** Article 74 of the Constitution deals with the status of the Council of Ministers, but Article 75 deals with the appointments, tenure, responsibility, qualification, oath, salary and allowances of the ministers.

13. Mention the different categories of ministers in the Union Council of Ministers. [2013]

**Ans.** The different categories of ministers in the Union Council of Ministers are as follows:

- Cabinet Ministers
- The Ministers of State
- The Deputy Ministers

14. Who are the Cabinet Ministers of the Council of Ministers?

**Ans.** The Cabinet Ministers of the Council of Ministers are those who heads the important ministries of the government, such as, Home, Defence, Finance, External Affairs and so forth.

**15.** What do you mean by the Ministers of State?

**Ans.** The Ministers of State may either be given independent charge of ministries or departments or may be attached to the Cabinet Ministers.

**16.** Who are the Deputy Ministers?

**Ans.** The Deputy Ministers are not given independent charge of ministries/departments. They are attached to the Cabinet or Ministers of State to assist them in their administrative, political and parliamentary duties.

**17.** How are the ministers appointed?

*Or* By whom and on whose advice are the Council of Ministers appointed? *[2016]*

**Ans.** The Council of Ministers are appointed by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister.

**18.** Under what condition can a non-member of Parliament be made a minister? *[2017]*

**Ans.** If a person who is not a member of Parliament appointed as a minister, he /she must become a member (either through election or nomination) of either House of Parliament, within 6 months, otherwise, he/she ceases to be a Minister.

**19.** What is the oath of secrecy of a minister?

**Ans.** In the Minister's oath of secrecy, he/she swears that he/she will not directly or indirectly communicate or reveal to any person(s), any matter that is brought under his/her consideration or becomes known to him/her as a Union Minister.

**20.** Who administers the oath of office to the Council of Ministers? *[2018]*

**Ans.** The President of India administers the oath of office to the Council of Ministers.

**21.** Which body formulates the foreign policy of India? *[2012]*

**Ans.** The cabinet formulates the foreign policy of India, but the Prime Minister plays an important role in shaping the foreign policy of the country.

**22.** Mention any one executive power of the Council of Ministers.

**Ans.** The Council of Ministers is mainly a policy formulating body. It makes the domestic and foreign policies of the Government of India. This is one of the important executive powers of the Council of Ministers.

**23.** Mention any one legislative power of the cabinet.

**Ans.** The one legislative power of the cabinet is that without the approval of the cabinet, the amendment to the constitution is not possible. Cabinet plans and moves the amendment procedures to the Constitution.

**24.** When does the President address the Parliament?

He is assisted by whom?

**Ans.** The President addresses the Parliament when the session is going to start and also addresses the Parliament after every General Election. The draft of the address is prepared by the Council of Ministers.

**25.** Mention any one financial power of the Cabinet.

**Ans.** The money bills can only be introduced in the Lok Sabha. The Finance Ministry proposes the imposition of taxes or suggests reduction or abolition of taxes. It is one of the important financial powers of the cabinet.

**26.** Which article of the Constitution deals with the word Cabinet?

**Ans.** Article 352 of the Constitution deals with the word Cabinet. It was inserted by the 44th Constitutional Amendment Act, 1978.

**27.** Explain the term collective responsibility. *[2013]*

*Or*

What is meant by 'collective responsibility' of the cabinet?

*[2017]*

**Ans.** Article 75 of the constitution clearly states that the Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to the Lok Sabha. This means that all the ministers own collective responsibility to the Lok Sabha for all their acts of omission and commission. They work as a team and swim or sink together.

**28.** What happens if a vote of no-confidence is passed against a minister in the Lok Sabha? *[2015]*

**Ans.** When the Lok Sabha passes a No-confidence motion against the Council of Ministers, then all ministers have to resign including those ministers who are from the Rajya Sabha.

**29.** What is understood by the term 'individual responsibility' in a parliamentary democracy? *[2014]*

**Ans.** The term 'individual responsibility' implies that each Minister is responsible for personal lapses, breach of oath of Secrecy, departure from the official policy or for the failures of his department.

**30.** State one point of difference between the cabinet and the Council of Ministers with reference to their responsibility to the government. *[2010]*

**Ans.** The cabinet supervises the implementation of decisions by the Council of Ministers whereas the Council of Ministers implements the decisions taken by the cabinet.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

1. In the parliamentary form of government, the President is the nominal executive head and Prime Minister is the real executive head. In respect to this, answer the following questions.
  - (i) What are the conventions regarding the appointment of the Prime Minister? [3]
  - (ii) Mention any three oaths of the oath to the office of the Prime Minister. [3]
  - (iii) Discuss about the financial powers of Council of Ministers. [4]

**Ans.** (i) In accordance with the conventions of the Parliamentary form of Government are:

- The President has to appoint a leader of the majority party in the Lok Sabha as the Prime Minister.
- When no political party has a clear majority in the Lok Sabha, then the President may exercise his/her personal discretion in the selection of the Prime Minister.

(ii) Before entering upon the office of the Prime Minister, the President administers the oath of the office and secrecy to the Prime Minister. The Prime Minister swears:

- (a) To bear true faith and allegiance to the Constitution of India.
- (b) To uphold the sovereignty and integrity of India.
- (c) To faithfully and honestly discharge the duties of his/her office.

(iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 209.**

2. As the head of the Council of Ministers in the country is the Prime Minister, who is the real executive head of the Government. In this context explain the following questions. [2013]
  - (i) The appointment of the Prime Minister. [3]
  - (ii) His relationship with the Council of Ministers. [3]
  - (iii) Explain Prime Minister's relations with the President. [4]

**Ans.** (i) The Prime Minister is appointed by the President. According to the convention, the President invites the leader of the majority party or group in the Lok Sabha to form the Government. The members of the majority party elect their leader to be appointed as the Prime Minister.

(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 207.**

(iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 207.**

3. The Union Executive which consists of the President, Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers is a powerful body in a Parliamentary Democracy. In this context answer the following questions. [2017]
  - (i) State the Position of the Prime Minister and state any two of his powers in relation to the President. [3]
  - (ii) Mention the three categories of Ministers in order of their rank and status. [3]
  - (iii) Mention any four legislative powers of the Cabinet. [4]

**Ans.** (i) The Prime Minister with the backing of the majority party or groups in the Parliament is the real executive head of the nation. Two of his powers in relation to the President are:

- (a) The President summons and prorogues the Parliament on the advice of the Prime Minister.
- (b) The President appoints the Council of Ministers on the advice of the Prime Minister.

(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 208.**

(iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 209.**

4. The makers of our constitution adopted the Parliamentary and the cabinet form of government. With reference to this, answer the following questions. [2015]
  - (i) (a) Who is the Head of the Union Council of Ministers? [Modified] [3]
  - (b) What is meant by the collective and individual responsibility of the members of the cabinet?
  - (ii) Explain briefly the position and powers of the Prime Minister in relation to the Cabinet. [3]
  - (iii) Distinguish between the Cabinet and the Council of Ministers. [4]

**Ans.** (i) (a) The Prime Minister is the Head of the Union Council of Ministers.

(b) **Collective Responsibility** Article 75 of the Constitution clearly states that the Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to the Lok Sabha. This means that all the ministers own joint responsibility to the Lok Sabha for all their acts of omission and commission. They work as a team and swim or sink together.

**Individual Responsibility** Article 75 of the Constitution also contains the principle of individual responsibility. It states that the Ministers hold office during the pleasure of the President, which means, the President can remove a minister even at a time when the Council of Ministers enjoys the confidence of the Lok Sabha.

(ii) The Prime Minister is the head of the cabinet. He has the real power to recommend persons who can be appointed as a minister by the President. Prime Minister allocates and reshuffles various portfolios among the minister.

(iii) Some of the distinguishing features of the Council of Ministers and the Cabinet are as follows:

- Council of Ministers is a wider body (consists of 60-70 Ministers) whereas cabinet is a smaller body (consists of 15-20 Ministers).
- Council of Ministers include all three categories of Ministers, whereas cabinet includes only Cabinet Ministers.
- Council of Ministers have no collective functions (it does not meet as a body) whereas cabinet meets as a body, as it performs collective functions.

- Council of Minister's functions are determined by the Cabinet whereas cabinet directs the Council of Ministers by taking policy decisions.
- Cabinet takes the decisions and Council of Ministers implements its decisions.
- Council of Ministers are collectively responsible to the Lok Sabha whereas the Cabinet enforces the collective responsibility of the Council of Ministers.
- Council of Ministers is a constitutional body (deals with details under Articles 74 and 75) whereas the Cabinet was inserted in Article 352, by the 44th Constitutional Amendment Act.

5. The Cabinet holds a pivotal position in the working of the Indian Parliamentary Government. In this context, discuss the following questions.

- (i) The formation of the Cabinet. [3]
- (ii) Emergency power of the Cabinet. [3]
- (iii) Any four Executive Powers of the Cabinet. [4]

**Ans.** (i) The formation of the Cabinet are as follows:

- It consists of 15 to 20 ministers, hence it is a smaller body.
- It has collective functions so that it meets as a body to transact the government business.
- The Cabinet consists of the most experienced and senior leaders of the ruling party.

- (ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 209.
- (iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 208 and 209.

# **CHAPTER TEST**

## **Very Short Questions**

**[1 Mark each]**

- 1.** Who is the chief spokesperson of the Union Government?
- 2.** What is the term of the office of the Council of Ministers?
- 3.** Who administers the oath to the Prime Minister? Mention any one of his swear.
- 4.** Who appoints the Ministers?
- 5.** Under what circumstances, can the President use his discretionary power in appointing Prime Minister?
- 6.** Whom does the President call upon to form the government after the election of the Lok Sabha?
- 7.** What happens if the Prime Minister loses the confidence of the Parliament?
- 8.** By whom and on whose advice is the Union Council of Ministers appointed?
- 9.** What is the principle of collective responsibility?
- 10.** Mention any two ways in which the Constitution ensures the pre-eminent position of the Prime Minister in relationship to the Council of Ministers.

## **Structured Questions**

**[10 Marks each]**

- 11.** The Prime Minister is the head of the government and also the head of the Council of Ministers. In relation to this, answer the following questions.
  - (i) What are the powers and functions of the Prime Minister in relation to the Parliament?
  - (ii) What are the financial and emergency powers of the Council of Ministers?
  - (iii) What are the other powers of the Prime Minister, except in relation to the President, Council of Ministers and the Parliament?
- 12.** In relation to the powers and functions of the Council of Ministers, answer the following questions in terms of.
  - (i) Power of initiating bills
  - (ii) Appointments
  - (iii) (a) Budget  
(b) Introduction of money bills

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

1. State any one administrative function of the Cabinet.
2. Who administers the oath of office to the Council of Ministers?

## 2017

4. Under what conditions can a non-member of Parliament be made a Minister?
5. What is meant by 'Collective Responsibility' of the Cabinet?
6. The Union Executive which consists of the President, Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers is a powerful body in a Parliamentary democracy. In this context answer the following questions:
  - (i) State the position of the Prime Minister and state any two of his powers in relation to the President.
  - (ii) Mention the three categories of ministers in order of their rank and status.
  - (iii) Mention any four Legislative powers of the Cabinet.

## 2016

7. By whom and on whose advice are the Council of Ministers appointed?

## 2015

8. What happens if a vote of No-Confidence is passed against a minister in the Lok Sabha?
9. The makers of our Constitution adopted the parliamentary and the cabinet form of government. With reference to this, answer the following questions:
  - (i) (a) Who is the constitutional head of the Union Government?
  - (b) What is meant by the collective and individual responsibility of the members of the Cabinet?
  - (ii) Explain briefly the position and powers of the Prime Minister in relation to the Cabinet.
  - (iii) Distinguish between the Cabinet and the Council of Ministers.

## 2014

10. What is understood by the term 'Individual Responsibility' in a parliamentary democracy?
11. Mention one way by which the authority of the Prime Minister can be checked.

## 2013

12. Mention the different categories of ministers in the Union Council of Ministers.
13. Explain the term 'Collective responsibility'.
14. As the head of the Council of Ministers in the country is the Prime Minister, who is the real executive head of the Government. In this context explain the following questions:
  - (i) The appointment of the Prime Minister.
  - (ii) His relationship with the Council of Ministers.
  - (iii) Explain Prime Minister's relations with the President.

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

# The Supreme Court

## The Judiciary

It is the system of courts that interprets and applies the law in the name of the state. The Judiciary also provides a mechanism for the resolution of disputes. It plays a crucial role in the functioning of India's democracy. The Indian Constitution provides a **Single Integrated Judicial System<sup>1</sup>** of courts for the union and the states. The Supreme Court is placed at the apex (top) of the entire judicial system in India. The single integrated system means that:

- At the head of the entire judicial system is the Supreme Court which not only supervises, but also exercises control over the functioning of other courts.
- There is no distinct set of laws and a single civil and criminal judicial system operates throughout the country.
- All the cases from the subordinate courts come for hearing to the High Courts first and then finally to the Supreme Court.

## Need for a Single Independent Judiciary

India has opted for single integrated judicial system which is independent of the remaining two organs of the Government i.e., of the Executive and Legislature. The need for an independent judiciary is as follows:

- In a representative democracy, administration of justice assumes special significance in view of rights of people. The independence of judiciary is essential to protect any violation of the rights of people.
- In a federal set-up, there is a constitutional division of powers between the executive, legislature and judiciary. An independent and impartial judiciary is essential for a federal governance.
- It is an essential requisite for ensuring human rights and protecting democracy.

---

<sup>1</sup> Single Integrated Judicial system It means Supreme Court is the apex court. Below it, there are High Courts in each state and below High Courts are Sub-ordinate District Courts.

## The Supreme Court

The Supreme Court is the highest court in India. This single system of court was adopted in 1935, for enforcement of both central laws as well as state laws. It was **inaugurated**<sup>2</sup> on 28th January, 1950 and succeeded the Federal Court of India which was established under the Government of India Act, 1935.

### Composition

At present, the Supreme Court consists of 31 judges in which there is 1 Chief Justice and 30 other judges. Originally the strength was fixed to 8 (1 Chief Justice and 7 other judges).

### Qualifications of Judges

A person to be appointed as a judge of the Supreme Court should have the following qualifications:

- He/she should be a citizen of India.
- He/she should have been the judge of a High Court or of two or more such courts in succession for at least five years,
- He/she should have been an advocate of a High Court or of two or more such courts in succession for at least ten years
- He/she should be a distinguished jurist in the opinion of the President.

### Appointment of Judges

The President of India appoints the judges of the Supreme Court through the following procedure<sup>3</sup>:

- When the President appoints the Chief Justice he/she may consult with judges of the Supreme Court and the High Court.
- When the President appoints other judges of the Supreme Court, he/she consults with the Chief Justice of India. Usually, the seniormost judge of the Supreme Court is appointed as the Chief Justice of India.

### Appointment of Acting Chief Justice and Ad Hoc Judge

The President can appoint a judge of the Supreme Court as an acting Chief Justice of India when:

- The office of Chief Justice is vacant.
- The Chief Justice is temporarily absent.

- The Chief Justice is unable to perform the duties of his/her office.

The Chief Justice of India appoints a judge as an ad hoc (emergency) judge when there is a lack of quorum of the permanent judges to hold or continue any session of the Supreme Court.

### Term of Office

The Constitution of India has not provided the fixed term for the judges of the Supreme Court. However, it makes the following provisions in this respect:

- (i) He/she holds office until the age of 65 years.
- (ii) He/she can resign from his/her office by writing to the President.
- (iii) He/she can be removed from the office by the President on the recommendation of the Parliament.

### Impeachment of a Judge

The only grounds, upon which such removal may take place are 'proved misbehaviour and incapacity' [Article 124(4)]. A judge may be removed from office in the following manner which is commonly known as impeachment:

- A motion addressed to the President signed by atleast 100 members of the Lok Sabha or 50 members of the Rajya Sabha is delivered to the Speaker or the Chairman.
- The motion is to be investigated by a committee of three i.e. two judges of the Supreme Court and a distinguished jurist.
- If the committee finds the judge guilty of misbehaviour or that he suffers incapacity, the motion together with the report of the committed is taken up for consideration in the House where the motion is pending.
- If the motion is passed in each house by majority of the total membership of that House and by a majority of not less than two-thirds of the House present and voting the motion is presented to the President.
- The judge will be removed after the President gives his order of removal on the said address.

In 1993, Justice V Rama Swami became the first judge of the Supreme Court against whom an impeachment motion was passed.

<sup>2</sup> Inaugurated An inauguration is a formal ceremony to mark the beginning of a major public leader's team of office.

<sup>3</sup> Procedure An established or official way of doing something.

## Independence of Judiciary from the Control of Executive and Legislature

The Constitution of India has made some provisions to safeguard and ensure the independent and impartial functioning of the Supreme Court which are as follows:

**Appointment of Judges** The judges of the Supreme Court are appointed by the President after consulting the other judges of the Supreme Court and the High Court. Thus, it curtails the interference of executive and political considerations.

**Security of Tenure** The judges of the Supreme Court are removed by the President only in the manner and on the grounds mentioned in the constitution.

**Removal of Judges** The judges cannot be removed from office by any authority through a simple procedure. A judge can be removed by the President only for proved misbehaviour and incapacity.

**Fixed Service Conditions** The salaries and other emoluments of the judges cannot be changed to their disadvantage during their term of office, except in case of financial emergency.

**Judges' Expenses are Charged on Consolidated Fund of India.** The salaries, allowances and pensions are charged on the Consolidated Fund of India. Thus, they are non-votable by the Parliament.

**Conduct of Judges cannot be Discussed** The Constitution of India provides that the conduct of the judges of the Supreme Court is not subject to discussion in the Parliament or in the State Legislature.

**Ban on Practice after Retirement** After retirement, a judge of the Supreme Court shall not plead or act in any court or before any authority within the territory of India.

**Power to Punish for its Contempt** The Supreme Court can punish for the contempt of court if a person/authority makes an attempt to lower its authority and dignity.

**Freedom to Recruit its Staff** The Chief Justice of India can recruit officers and servants of the Supreme Court without any interference from the executive.

**Freedom to Announce Decisions and Decrees** The Judges have complete freedom to announce their decisions and discuss in the court chambers.

**Full Control over its Procedure of Work** The Court is free to decide its own procedure of work. The

constitution declares Delhi as the seat of the Supreme Court. But, it also authorised the Chief Justice of India to appoint other place or places as seat of the Supreme Court.

### CHECK POINT 01

- 1 What system of courts is provided by the Indian Constitution?
- 2 Name the highest court of India.
- 3 In which year did the federal court of India establish?

## Jurisdiction and Powers of the Supreme Court

The Constitution has conferred very extensive jurisdiction and vast powers on the Supreme Court. The jurisdiction and powers of the Supreme Court can be classified as follows:

### Original Jurisdiction

It means the power to hear and determine a dispute in the first instance. It happens in those cases, which cannot be moved in any court other than the Supreme Court.

These include:

- Interpretation of the constitution in case of a dispute between the Union Government and one or more states.
- Interpretation of the constitution in case of dispute between two or more states, interests, relating to some justiciable right.
- The Supreme Court has the exclusive jurisdiction to determine the constitutional validity of the union laws. Such cases are debated by a majority of the full Constitutional Bench of 7 judges.
- The Supreme Court has a special jurisdiction and responsibility for the enforcement of Fundamental Rights.

### Writ Jurisdiction/Enforcement of Fundamental Rights

The constitution has constituted the Supreme Court as the guarantor and defender of the Fundamental Rights of the citizens. The Supreme Court is empowered to issue writs for the enforcement of the Fundamental Rights of an aggrieved citizen. Under Article 226, High Courts also enjoy the right to issue writs to protect the Fundamental Rights and for other purposes.

## Wrts

**Habeas Corpus** A writ, of habeas corpus which literally means you shall have the body is a court order to a person or agency holding someone in custody (such as a warden) to deliver the imprisoned individual to the court issuing the order and to show a valid reason for that person's detention.

**Mandamus** It means we command. It is a command issued by the court to a public official asking any public body, an inferior court, a tribunal, etc to perform its official duties.

**Prohibition** It means to forbid. It is issued by the higher court to a lower court or tribunal to prevent the later from exceeding its jurisdiction.

**Certiorari** It means to be certified or to be informed. It is issued by a higher court to a lower court or tribunal either to transfer a case to itself or to squash the order.

**Quo-Warranto** It means by what authority or warrant. It is issued by the court to enquire into legality of claim of a person to a public office.

## Appellate Jurisdiction

The appellate jurisdiction of the Supreme Court extends to constitutional, civil and criminal cases. Any matter that involves important points of law and needs interpretation of the constitution can be brought before the Supreme Court. Few types of cases can be appealed in the Supreme Court which are as follows:

**Constitutional Matter** In the Constitutional cases, an appeal can be made to the Supreme Court against the judgement of the High Court if the High Court certifies that the case involves a substantial questions of law that requires the interpretation of the constitution. Based on the certificate, the party in the case can appeal to the Supreme Court on the ground that the question has been wrongly decided.

**Civil Matter** In this case, an appeal lies to the Supreme Court if the High Court certifies:

- that the case involves a substantial question of law of general importance.
- that the question needs to be decided by the Supreme Court.

**Criminal Matter** The Supreme Court hear appeals against the judgement in a criminal proceedings of a High Court, if the High Court:

- has an appeal reversed an order of **acquittal<sup>4</sup>** of an accused person and sentenced him/her to death.
- has taken before itself any case from any subordinate court and convicted the accused person and sentenced him/her to death.

- satisfies that the case is a fit one for appeal to the Supreme Court.

**Appeal by Special Leave** The Supreme Court is authorised to grant in its discretion special leave to appeal from any judgement in any matter passed by any court or tribunal in the country (except military tribunal and court martial). This provision contains the four aspects as under

- (i) It is a discretionary power and hence, cannot be claimed as a matter of right.
- (ii) It can be granted in any judgement whether final or interlocutory meeting.
- (iii) It may be related to any matter-constitutional, civil, criminal, income tax, labour, revenue advocates, etc.
- (iv) It can be granted against any court or tribunal and not necessarily against a High Court (except a military court).

## Advisory Jurisdiction

Under Article 143, the Constitution of India authorises the President to seek the opinion of the Supreme Court on two categories of matters. These are:

- (i) On any question of law or fact of public importance which has arisen or which is likely to arise. The advice is not binding on the President who may or may not accept it.
- (ii) On any dispute arising out of any pre-constitution treaty, agreement, (contract), engagement, sanad or other similar instruments.

## Revisory Jurisdiction

The Supreme Court has power to review its own judgement or order with a view to remove any mistake or error that might have crept (occur) in the judgement or orders. But it is not bound by its previous decisions.

## Judicial Review

The Supreme Court is the sole interpreter of the constitution. It has the power to review any laws passed by the Union or State Legislature. If any law passed by the legislature is against spirit of the constitution or contravenes any provision of the constitution, the Supreme Court can declare such law as null and void.

A legislative enactment or an executive order can be challenged in the Supreme Court on the following three grounds:

- It **infringes<sup>5</sup>** the Fundamental Rights.

<sup>4</sup> Acquittal The judgement of a court that a person charged with a crime is not guilty.

<sup>5</sup> Infringe Actively break the terms of a law, agreement, etc.

- It is outside the competent authority which has framed it.
- It is repugnant (against) to the constitutional provisions. If some legislative enactments and executive orders are found to be violative of the constitution, then these can be declared as illegal, unconstitutional and invalid (null and void) by the Supreme Court.

Judicial review is necessary for the following reasons:

- The constitution is a written constitution. So, whenever the question of interpretation arises, the Supreme Court helps to sort it out.
- To uphold the principle of supremacy of the constitution.
- To maintain federal **equilibrium**<sup>6</sup> between the centre and the state.
- To protect the Fundamental Rights of citizens.
- The legislature may not possess the wisdom experience and impartiality, which are needed to explain meaning of the law. This function can be best performed by the Supreme Court.

## A Court of Record

As a court of record, the Supreme Court has two important powers. These are as follows:

- (i) The judgements, proceedings and acts of the Supreme Court are recorded for perpetual memory and testimony. These records cannot be questioned

when produced before any court. The judgements are in nature of precedents i.e., the High Courts and other courts are bound to give a similar decision in a similar case.

- (ii) It has power to punish for the **contempt**<sup>7</sup> of court (which are of two types i.e. civil contempt and criminal contempt) either with simple imprisonment for a term of 6 months or fine upto ₹ 2000 or with both.

## Administrative and Supervisory Functions

The administrative and supervisory functions of Supreme Court are as follows:

- Appointment of officers and staff of the Supreme Court is made by the Chief Justice of India.
- The court makes rules regarding the conduct of advocates and other persons appearing before it.
- The recommendation of the Chief Justice of India to transfer judges of the High Courts are binding on the government, if it was made after consulting at least 4 seniormost judges of the Supreme Court.

### CHECK POINT 02

- 1 What is the meaning of mandamus?
- 2 Who is considered as a sole interpreter of the constitution?
- 3 Who appoints officers and staff of the Supreme Court?

6 Equilibrium A balance between the centre and the states.

7 Contempt An act of deliberate disobeitance or disregard for the laws, regulation or decorum of a public authority, such as a court or legislative body.

## SUMMARY

- The Indian Constitution has provided for a single integrated system of courts for the Union and the State.
- The Supreme Court is placed at the apex of the entire judicial system in India that was inaugurated on 28th January, 1950.
- At present, the Supreme Court consists of 31 judges in which 1 is Chief Justice and are other judges.
- The President of India appoints the judges of the Supreme Court and the Chief Justice of India with the consultation of the cabinet.
- The President can also appoint a judge of the Supreme Court as an acting Chief Justice of India.
- When there is a lack of quorum of the permanent judge to hold or continue any session of the Supreme Court, the Chief Justice of India can appoint a judge of a High Court as an ad hoc judge of the Supreme Court.
- The Constitution of India has not provided for the fix term of the judge.
- The judges of the Supreme Court can be removed from the office by an order of the President.
- The salaries, allowances and pensions of the judges of the Supreme Court are charged on the Consolidated Fund of India.
- After retirement a judge of the Supreme Court, he/she shall not plead or act in any court or before any authority within the territory of India.
- The Parliament has no authority to curtail the jurisdiction and powers of the Supreme Court.
- Under its original jurisdiction, Supreme Court decides the disputes between the centre and the states.
- The Supreme Court acts as the guarantor and defender of the Fundamental Rights of the citizens through its power to issue writs. These writs are Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, Certiorari, Prohibition and Quo-warranto.
- The Supreme Court enjoys the appellate jurisdiction in matter of constitutional, civil, criminal and appeal by special leave.
- The Constitution of India authorises the President to seek the opinion of the Supreme Court.
- Supreme Court has power to punish for contempt of court.
- Judicial review power of the Supreme Court is to examine the constitutionality of legislative enactments and executive orders of both the centre and the states.
- If the legislative enactments and executive orders of both the centre and the state governments are found to be violative of the constitution, then these can be declared as null and void by the Supreme Court.
- The Supreme Court has power to review his own judgement and order.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a Very Short Questions

[1 Mark each]

1. What is meant by a single integrated judicial system, as provided in the Indian Constitution?  
*[2014]*

**Ans.** A single integrated judicial system means the Supreme Court is the apex court and entire judicial system is below it.

2. What do you mean by, “there is no distinct set of laws”?

**Ans.** There is no distinct set of laws means that the Indian Constitution provides single integrated judicial system, which means there is only one court that has both civil and criminal jurisdiction throughout the India.

3. Which body is the head of the entire court system in India?

**Ans.** The head of the entire court system in India is the Supreme Court and it not only supervises, but also exercises control over the functioning of other courts.

4. When was the Supreme Court inaugurated?

**Ans.** The Supreme Court was inaugurated on 28th January, 1950.

5. By which act the Supreme Court was set-up?

**Ans.** The Government of India Act, 1935 facilitated the succession of the Federal Court as the Supreme Court of India.

6. What is the composition of the Supreme Court?

**Ans.** The Supreme Court originally consists of a Chief Justice and 7 other judges. But at present, the Supreme Court consists of 31 judges in which 1 is the Chief Justice and 30 other judges.

7. Mention any one qualification to be the judge of the Supreme Court, other than being citizen of India.

**Ans.** The qualification to be the judge of the Supreme Court is that, a person should have been a judge of a High Court for five years.

8. Who appoints the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court?  
*[2009]*

**Ans.** The President of India appoints the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court and he/she may consult to the judges of Supreme Court and High Courts.

9. When does an ad hoc judge get appointed?

**Ans.** When, there is a lack of quorum of the permanent judges to hold or continue any session of the Supreme Court.

10. What is the tenure of a judge of the Supreme Court?  
*[2012]*

**Ans.** The Constitution of India has not provided for a fix term of the judges. However, they hold the office until the age of 65 years.

11. When can the President issue the removal order of the judges of the Supreme Court?

**Ans.** The President can issue the removal order only after an address by the Parliament has been presented to him/her in the same session.

12. Mention any one condition, that leads to the independence of judiciary from the control of the executive and legislature.

**Ans.** The salaries, allowances and pensions of judges are charged on the Consolidated Fund of India. Thus, they are non-votable by the Parliament.

13. What do you mean by “freedom to recruit its staff”?

**Ans.** The Constitution of India authorises that the Chief Justice of India can recruit officers and servants of the Supreme Court without any interference of the executive.

14. What ensures that the judges of the Supreme Court does not favour anyone in future?

**Ans.** After retirement, a judge of the Supreme Court shall not plead in any court or before any authority within the territory of India. This, ensures that the judges of the Supreme Court do not favour anyone in the future.

15. Who has power to punish for the contempt of Supreme Court?

**Ans.** The Supreme Court has the power to punish any person for its contempt. Thus, its actions and decisions cannot be criticised and opposed by anybody.

16. Who can increase the number of judges of the Supreme Court?  
*[2011]*

**Ans.** The Parliament can increase the number of judges of the Supreme Court.

**17.** Under what circumstances can the salaries and allowances of the judges of the Supreme Court be reduced? [2008]

**Ans.** Under the Financial Emergency, the salaries and allowances of the judges of the Supreme Court can be reduced.

**18.** Which body has the final authority to interpret the Constitution of India? [2006]

**Ans.** The Supreme Court has the final authority to interpret the Constitution of India.

**19.** What is the original jurisdiction of the Supreme Court of India?

**Ans.** The original jurisdiction of the Supreme Court of India is to decide the dispute between the Centre and one or more States.

**20.** Mention any one matter which is outside the original jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.

**Ans.** One matter which does not extend to the original jurisdiction. The disputes arising out of a treaty or agreement which is in operation.

**21.** Which body is the guarantor and defender of the Fundamental Rights of the citizens?

**Ans.** The Supreme Court acts as the guarantor and defender of the Fundamental Rights of the citizens.

**22.** Name the courts that are empowered to issue writs for the enforcement of fundamental Rights. [2013]

**Ans.** The Supreme Court and the High Courts are empowered to issue writs for the enforcement of the fundamental Rights.

**23.** Which jurisdiction is enforced, when the Fundamental Rights of the citizens are infringed?

**Ans.** Writ jurisdiction is enforced when the Fundamental Rights of a citizen are infringed.

**24.** What is writ of Habeas Corpus? When is it issued?

**Ans.** Habeas Corpus means 'to have the body'. It is an order issued by the court to a person who has detained another person to produce the body of the latter before it.

**25.** By whom the writ of certiorari is issued?

**Ans.** Certiorari means to be certified or to be informed. It is issued by a higher court to a lower court or tribunal either to transfer a case pending with latter to itself or to squash the order of the latter in a case.

**26.** What do you mean by Quo-Warranto?

**Ans.** Quo-Warranto means by what authority or warrant it is issued by the court to enquire into legality of claim of a person to a public office.

**27.** Why is the Supreme Court said to be the guardian of the constitution? [2010]

**Ans.** The Supreme Court is said to be the guardian of the Constitution because if any Fundamental Right of any citizen is violated then he/she can see the protection of the Supreme Court.

**28.** What is the appellate jurisdiction of the Supreme Court in the constitutional matters?

**Ans.** In the constitutional matters, an appeal can be made against the judgement of a High Court if the High Court certifies that the case involves substantial question of law that requires regarding the interpretation of the Constitution.

**29.** What is the appellate jurisdiction of the Supreme Court in the criminal matter? Mention any one proceeding.

**Ans.** The Supreme Court hears appeals against the judgement in a criminal proceeding of a High Court. If the High Court satisfies that the case is a fit one for appeal to the Supreme Court.

**30.** The Supreme Court has power to appeal by special leave. Mention any one aspect of it.

**Ans.** The one aspect of this provision is that it is a discretionary power and hence, cannot be claimed as a matter of right.

**31.** If the President of India considers that a question of law may be referred to the Supreme Court, under which jurisdiction will the Supreme Court express its opinion on the matter? [2007]

**Ans.** If the President of India considers that a question of law may be referred to the Supreme Court, it will come under the advisory jurisdiction and under it the Supreme Court expresses its opinion on the matter.

**32.** What is meant by the term judicial review? [2010]

**Ans.** Judicial review means, the Supreme Court examines the constitutionality of legislative enactments and executive orders of both the Central and the State government.

**33.** Name any two writs issued by the Supreme Court. [2018]

**Ans.** Two writs issued by the Supreme Court are Certiorari and Quo-warranto.

**34.** Contempt of the Supreme Court may be of two types. Mention any one.

**Ans.** The criminal contempt means the publication of any matter or doing an act which scandalises or lowers the authority of the court and interferes with the due course of a judicial proceeding.

**35.** Who has the power to enlarge the jurisdiction and powers of the Supreme Court in respect to the Union List and other matters?

**Ans.** The Parliament has power to enlarge the jurisdiction and power of the Supreme Court in respect to the matters in the Union List and in other matters by a special agreement of the Centre and the States.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

**1.** The country's judicial system has the Supreme Court at its apex. In this context, discuss the following. *[2013]*

- (i) Explain the manner of appointment of judges. *[3]*
- (ii) Explain the term of office and removal of judges. *[3]*
- (iii) Its power of judicial review. *[4]*

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 218.

(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 218.

(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 220 and 221.

**2.** The Supreme Court is the apex court of India. In relation to this, answer the following questions.

- (i) Explain the Supreme Court in short. *[3]*
- (ii) What is meant by the writ jurisdiction of the Supreme Court? *[3]*
- (iii) Mention the Administrative and Supervisory functions. *[4]*

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 218.

(ii) The Constitution has constituted the Supreme Court as the guarantor and defender of the fundamental right's of the citizens. The Supreme Court is empowered to issue writs for the enforcement of the fundamental rights of aggrieved citizens. These writs are of five types:

- Habeas corpus
- Mandamus
- Prohibition
- Quo-Warranto
- Certiorari

(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 221.

**3.** The Supreme Court is the apex court of our country. In this context, explain the following. *[2011]*

- (i) The composition of the Supreme Court of India. *[3]*

(ii) The meaning of independent judiciary and the need to do so. *[3]*

(iii) The manner in which the Constitution seeks to maintain the independence of the judiciary. *[4]*

**Ans.** (i) The following points explain the composition of the supreme court of India:

- Originally, the strength of the Supreme Court was fixed at 8 (1 Chief Justice and 7 other judges).
- The Parliament has increased the number of other judges progressively to 10 in 1956 to 13 in 1960, to 17 in 1977 and 25 in 1986.
- In February 2009, 25 judges are increased to 31 including one Chief Justice of India. At present 31 judges sit in the Supreme Court.

(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 217.

(iii) Independence of Judiciary is ensured by the following devices:

- Every Judge of the Supreme Court is appointed by the President after consulting judges of the Supreme Court and the High Court.
- A judge can remain in the office till he/she attains the age of 65 years.
- The salaries and allowances of the judges cannot be altered to their disadvantage during their term in office.
- The judges are free to announce their decisions and discuss in the court chambers.
- The court can punish any authority or person for its contempt.
- No decision of the court can be discussed in the legislature.
- The judges are prohibited to practice after their retirement.

**4.** The Supreme Court is the apex court in the entire judicial set-up in India. In this context, answer the following questions. *[2010]*

(i) What is meant by the term single integrated system? *[3]*

(ii) Explain the impeachment procedure for the removal of the judges of the Supreme Court. *[3]*

(iii) In the extensive jurisdiction of the Supreme Court states the difference between the original jurisdiction and appellate jurisdiction. Mention two functions that come under original jurisdiction. *[4]*

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 217.

(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 218.

(iii) The difference between the original jurisdiction and appellate jurisdiction is as follows:

Original jurisdiction means the power to hear and determine the dispute between the Union and the State or more States. Whereas, appellate jurisdiction means anyone can appeal for hearing the case of the High Court.

The appellate jurisdiction are of four types; constitutional matters, civil matters, criminal matters and appeal by special leave.

Functions that comes under the original jurisdiction are as follows:

(a) As the original Federal Court, the Supreme Court decides the dispute between:

- the Centre and one or more States.
- two or more States.
- the Government of India and any state or states on one side and one or more states on the other side.

(b) The Supreme Court has also the exclusive and original jurisdiction to inquire into and decides all doubts and disputes in connection with the election of the President and the Vice-President of India.

**5.** With reference to the powers and functions of the Supreme Court, answer the following questions. *[2007]*

- (i) What is meant by judicial review and original jurisdiction? *[3]*
- (ii) What is appellate jurisdiction? Mention any two types of cases over which the Supreme Court has appellate jurisdiction. *[3]*
- (iii) (a) Why is the judiciary kept independent from the control of the executive and legislature? *[2015] [4]*
- (b) What is the procedure for the removal of the Supreme Court judge?

**Ans.** (i) The judicial review means that the Supreme court upholds the principle of supremacy of the constitution. It also maintains federal equilibrium between Centre and State.

The original jurisdiction means the authority of the Constitution in a dispute between the Union Government and one or more state comes under Original Jurisdiction.

(ii) Appellate jurisdiction means the power of granting special leave to appeal against the judgement delivered by a High Court. The Supreme Court enjoys a wide appellate jurisdiction which can be

understood through the following two cases over which the Supreme Court has appellate jurisdiction

- **Constitutional Matters** In these cases an appeal can be made to the Supreme Court against the judgement of a High Court. If the High Court certifies that the case involves a substantial question of law regarding interpretation of the Constitution.
- **Civil Matters** In this case, an appeal lies to the Supreme Court from any judgement of the High Court, if the High Court certifies that the case involves a substantial question of law of general importance.

(iii) (a) Judiciary kept independent of the control of the Executive and the Legislature. India opted for a Federal System of administration. To protect the constitutional division of powers, an independent judiciary is an essential requirement. It is an essential requisite for ensuring human rights and protecting democracy. In a representative democracy, administration of justice assumes special significance in view of the rights of individuals, which needs protection against executive or legislative interference.

(b) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 218.**

**6.** With reference to the Supreme Court, explain its functions stated below *[2014]*

- |   |            |
|---|------------|
| (i) Original jurisdiction                 | <i>[3]</i> |
| (ii) Advisory jurisdiction                | <i>[3]</i> |
| (iii) As a guardian of Fundamental Rights | <i>[4]</i> |

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 219.**

(ii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 220.**

(iii) Any citizen whose Fundamental Rights are violated may move to the Supreme Court for the enforcement of the rights. The Constitution provides the Supreme Court with a power to issue writs or orders in the nature of habeas corpus, mandamus, writ of prohibition, quo- warranto and writ of certiorari for the enforcement of any of the Fundamental Rights.

Any such law which takes away or abridges the Fundamental Rights of the people, shall be declared null and void by the Supreme Court.

**7.** With reference to the judiciary, answer the following questions.

- (i) How does the President appoint an acting Chief Justice and ad hoc judge of the Supreme Court?

*[3]*

- (ii) The Constitution has made various provisions to safeguard and ensure the independent and impartial functioning of the Supreme Court.  
Mention any three. [3]
- (iii) State the four aspects of the appeal by special leave power of the Supreme Court. [4]

**Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no 218.**

- (ii) The three provisions to safeguard and ensure the independency of the Supreme Court are as follows:
- **Ban on Practice after Retirement** After retirement, a judge of the Supreme Court shall not plead or act in any court or before any authority within the territory of India. This ensures that they do not favour any one in the future.
  - **Freedom to Recruit its Staff** The Chief Justice of India can recruit officers and servants of the Supreme Court without any interference from the executive.
  - **Power to Punish for its Contempt** The Supreme Court has right to punish any person for its contempt. Its actions and decisions cannot be criticised and opposed by anybody.
- (iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 220.**

- 8.** Our Judicial system has a Supreme Court at its Apex, followed by the High Court and other subordinate Courts. In the light of this statement, explain the following. [2018]
- (i) Any three types of cases in which the Supreme Court exercises its Original Jurisdiction. (3)
- (ii) Any three ways by which the Constitution ensures the Independence of the Judiciary. (3)
- (iii) 'Advisory' and 'Revisory' Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court. (4)

**Ans.** (i) The Supreme Court exercises its Original Jurisdiction in following three cases:

- Interpretation of the Constitution in case of a dispute between the Union Government and one or more states.

- Interpretation of the Constitution in case of dispute between two or more states interests, relating to some justiciable rights.
  - The Supreme Court has the exclusive jurisdiction to determine the constitutional validity of the Union laws.
- (ii) Three ways by which the Constitution ensures the independence of the judiciary are following:
- Clear division of powers among legislature, executive and judiciary.
  - The jurisdiction of courts at different level is clearly mentioned.
  - The Judges of the Supreme Court and High Courts have fixed tenure.
- (iii) **Advisory Jurisdiction** Under Article 143, the President can seek advice from the Supreme Court on any question of law or fact of public importance which has arisen or which is likely to arise. The advice is not binding on the President who may or may not accept it.
- Revisory Jurisdiction** The Supreme Court has a power to review its own judgement or order to remove any mistake or error that might have crept (occur) in the judgement or orders. But it is not bound by its previous decisions.
- 9.** The Supreme Court has an extensive jurisdiction. In the light of this statement answer the following questions. [2016]
- (i) What are the qualifications of the judges of the Supreme Court? [3]
- (ii) (a) Explain the composition of the Supreme Court.  
(b) How are the Judges of the Supreme Court appointed? [3]
- (iii) Explain the cases in which the Supreme Court enjoys Original Jurisdiction. [4]
- Ans.** (i) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 218.**
- (ii) (a) **Refer to structured question no. 3 (i).**  
(b) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 218.**
- (iii) **Refer to chapter theory page no. 219.**

# **CHAPTER TEST**

## **Very Short Questions**

**[1 Mark each]**

1. After how many years of practice as an advocate in the High Court, a person will be qualified to be a judge of the Supreme Court?
2. Who appoints an ad hoc judge of the Supreme Court?
3. What is the term of office of a judge of the Supreme Court?
4. What do you mean by ‘prohibition of practice’ after retirement of a judge?
5. What do you mean by the freedom to announce decisions and decrees of a judge?
6. What are the civil cases in the Appellate Jurisdiction?
7. What is the ‘Revisory Jurisdiction’ of the Supreme Court?
8. The court of record is one of the powers of the Supreme Court. Mention its implications.

## **Structured Questions**

**[10 Marks each]**

9. Under our Constitution the judiciary is a single integrated system of courts for the Union and the States with the Supreme Court at the apex. In this context, answer the following questions.
  - (i) Why has India opted for Single Integrated Judicial set-up?
  - (ii) Mention the appointment procedures of judges including Chief Justice of India and Ad Hoc judges.
  - (iii) Mention any four provisions of the independence of judiciary.
10. Jurisdiction is the power that a court of law exercises to carry out judgements and enforce laws. In this context, answer the following questions.
  - (i) What is the original jurisdiction of the Supreme Court?
  - (ii) What is the Appellate Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court? Mention the extention of criminal cases.
  - (iii) What is Judicial Review? Why there is need for Judicial Review?
11. Supreme Court plays a vital role in the Judicial System of India. In this regard, answer the following questions.
  - (i) Under which jurisdiction, the Supreme Court enforces Fundamental Rights? Mention any three.
  - (ii) Which principles are laid down in the power of appeal by special leave of the Supreme Court?
  - (iii) What is the power of the Supreme Court as a Court of Record?

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

1. Name any two writs issued by the Supreme Court.
2. Our Judicial system has a Supreme Court at its Apex, followed by the High Court and other subordinate Courts. In the light of this statement, explain the following.
  - (i) Any three types of cases in which the Supreme Court exercises its Original Jurisdiction.
  - (ii) Any three ways by which the Constitution ensures the Independence of the Judiciary.
  - (iii) 'Advisory' and 'Revisory' Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.

## 2016

3. The Supreme Court has an extensive jurisdiction. In the light of this statement, answer the following questions.
  - (i) What are the qualifications of the judges of the Supreme Court?
  - (ii) (a) Explain the composition of the Supreme Court.  
(b) How are the judges of the Supreme Court appointed?
  - (iii) Explain the cases in which the Supreme Court enjoys Original Jurisdiction.

## 2015

4. Why is the judiciary kept independent from the control of the executive and legislature?

## 2014

5. What is meant by a 'Single Integrated Judicial System' as provided in the Indian Constitution?
6. With reference to the Supreme Court, explain its functions stated below.
  - (i) Original Jurisdiction
  - (ii) Advisory Jurisdiction
  - (iii) As a guardian of Fundamental Rights

## 2013

7. Name the Courts that are empowered to issue writs for the enforcement of Fundamental Rights.
8. The country's judicial system has a Supreme Court at its apex. In this context, discuss the following
  - (i) Explain the manner of appointment of judges.
  - (ii) Explain the term of office and removal of judges.
  - (iii) Its power of judicial review.

## 2012

9. What is the tenure of a Judge of the Supreme Court?

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.

# The High Courts and Subordinate Courts

## The High Courts

The Constitution of India states that there should be High Court for each state, but the 7th Constitutional Amendment Act, 1956 authorised the Parliament to establish a common High Court for two or more states and Union Territory. At present, there are 24 High Courts in India, including those having jurisdiction of more than one state. Delhi is the only Union Territory that has High Court of its own. The other Union Territories fall under the jurisdiction of different state High Courts.

### Composition

Every High Court consists of a Chief Justice and such other judges who are appointed by the President of India time-to-time. The constitution does not specify the strength of a High Court so that, the President of India determines the strength of High Courts which is depended upon the workload of these courts.

### Qualifications of Judges

According to the constitution, a person shall be qualified for appointment as a judge of a High Court under the following conditions:

- He/she should be a citizen of India.
- He/she should have held a judicial office in the territory of India for 10 years.
- He/she should have been an advocate of a High Court for 10 years.
- He/she should not be over 62 years.

It is noted here that, the constitution does not describe the minimum age for appointment as a judge of a High Court.

## Appointment of Judges

The judges of the High Court are appointed by the President. The Chief Justice of a High Court is appointed by the President after consultation with Chief Justice of India and the Governor of that state.

For appointment of other judges, the Chief Justice of concerned High Court is also consulted. In case of a concerned High Court for two or more states, the Governors of all the concerned states are consulted by the President. The President can appoint any judge of the High Court as the acting Chief Justice of the High Court, when the Chief Justice is unable to perform his duties.

## Oath

The Governor of a state administers the following oath of office to the High Court Judges:

- To bear true faith and allegiance to the Constitution of India.
- To perform the duty without fear, or favour, affection or ill-will.
- To uphold the constitution and the law of the land.

## Conditions of the Service

It means, all the judges of the High Courts are independent in carrying out their work from the government side. The conditions of services could be studied under following heads

## Removal of Judges

A judge enjoys the security of the tenure and can remain in office till he has attained the age of 62 years and only be removed from his/her office by an order of the President. The President can issue the removal order only after an address by the Parliament has been presented to him/her in the same session for such removal. The address must be supported by a special majority of each House of the Parliament and by a two-third majority of these present and voting in both the houses. It is the presented to the President. Finally, the President passes an order for removing the Judge. This procedure is called the impeachment of a judge. It is noted here that the removal procedure of a judge of the High Court by the process of impeachment is same as the Supreme Court.

Justice Soumitra Sen of the Calcutta High Court became the first Judge of High Court in India's history against whom an impeachment motion was passed in the Rajya Sabha in August 2011.

## Transfer of Judges

The President can transfer a judge from one court to another after consulting to the Chief Justice of India. The President can transfer a judge of the High Court after the fulfilment of the following conditions :

- Orders can be issued only after consulting the Chief Justice of India.
- The Chief Justice of India must make recommendation only after consulting 4 seniormost judges of the Supreme Court, the Chief Justice of the 2 High Courts (1 from which the judge is being transferred and the other receiving him).
- When a judge has been transferred, he/she shall be entitled to compensatory allowance in addition to his/her salary.

## Salaries and Allowances of Judges

The salaries, allowances, privileges, leaves and pensions of a judge of a High Court are determined from time-to-time by the Parliament. The judges of High Courts cannot be varied to their disadvantage after their appointment except during a financial emergency. Judges of High Courts are also paid sumptuary<sup>1</sup> allowance and provided with free accommodations<sup>2</sup> and other facilities such as medical, car, telephone, etc.

## Ban on Practice after Retirement

The retired permanent judges of a High Court are prohibited from pleading or acting in any court or before any authority in India except the Supreme Court and the other High Courts where he has not served as a judge.

### CHECK POINT 01

- 1 By whom the judges of a High Court are appointed?
- 2 What is the maximum age of retirement of a High Court judge?
- 3 Who decides the salaries and allowances of High Court judge?

## Powers and Jurisdiction of High Courts

High Court has extensive and effective powers like Supreme Court. It is the highest court of appeal in the state. It is the protector of the Fundamental Rights of the citizens as well as the interpreter of the constitution.

<sup>1</sup> Sumptuary Relating to or denoting laws that limit private expenditure on food and personal items.

<sup>2</sup> Accommodation A convenient arrangement or a settlement or compromise.

### Original Jurisdiction

High Court has original jurisdiction which means that it has power to hear disputes in the first instance, not by way of appeal. Its power extends to the following:

- Disputes relating to the election of members of the Parliament and State Legislatures.
- Regarding **revenue<sup>3</sup>** matter or an act ordered or done regarding revenue collection.
- Enforcement of Fundamental Rights of citizens.
- Cases ordered to be transferred from a Subordinate Court, involving the **interpretation<sup>4</sup>** of the Constitution to its own file.
- Matter of admiralty, will, marriage, divorce, company laws and contempt of court.

### Appellate Jurisdiction

The appellate jurisdiction of a High Court is wider than its original jurisdiction. It means that a High Court has power to hear appeals against the judgments of Subordinate Courts functioning in its territorial jurisdiction. It has appellate jurisdiction in both **civil** and **criminal matters**.

#### Civil Matter

Only those civil matters which are decided by the District Courts, Additional District Courts and other Subordinate Courts under the jurisdiction of the High Court concerned, can be brought to the High Court by an appeal.

Appeals that can be brought to High Courts are as follows:

- In matters concerning land revenue.
- Where blatant injustice has been committed by any tribunal.

#### Criminal Matter

The criminal appellate jurisdiction of a High Court is given below:

- A session Judge or an additional session Judge, where the sentence is of imprisonment exceeding 7 years.
- Appeals against the death sentence awarded by a Session Court or an Additional Session Court should be confirmed by the High Court before it can be executed, whether there is an appeal by the convicted person or not.
- Appeals from the judgements of the Assistant Sessions Judge, Metropolitan Magistrate or other Magistrates lie to the High Court. Where the sentence of imprisonment exceeds 4 years. Against the State, when the order of acquittal is passed by a session judge.

### Supervisory Jurisdiction

A High Court has the power of superintendence over all the courts and tribunals functioning in its territorial jurisdiction (except military courts or tribunals). Thus, it may:

- call for returns from them.
- make an issue, general rules and prescribe forms for regulating the practice and proceedings of them.
- prescribe forms in which books, entries and accounts are to be kept by them.
- settle the fees payable to the sheriff, clerks, officers and legal practitioners of them.

### Control Over Subordinate Courts

A High Court has an administrative control over the Subordinate Courts. These powers are as follows:

- High Court is consulted by the Governor in the matters of appointment, posting and promotion of District Judges and in the appointments of persons to the judicial service of the state.
- It deals with the matters of posting, promotion, grant leave, transfer and discipline of the members of the judicial service of the state.
- Its law is binding on all subordinated courts, functioning within its territorial jurisdiction.

### Advisory Jurisdiction

The High Courts can advise the Governor in any case related to governmental department and legislature if he/she seeks the advice of the High Court on constitutional as well as on other matters of law. But its advice is not binding on the agency seeking such advice.

### Revisory Jurisdiction

A High Court can call for the record of a case which has been decided by a Subordinate Court. Therefore, a High Court can review the case and take appropriate action on it.

The Revisory Jurisdiction is applicable in the following cases:

- Injustice or an error of law apparent on the face of the record.
- Violation of the principles of natural justice.
- **Arbitrary<sup>5</sup>** authority leading to wrong judgements.
- **Flagrant<sup>6</sup>** error in procedure.

<sup>3</sup> Revenue A State's annual income from which public expenses are met.

<sup>4</sup> Interpretation The action of explaining the meaning of something.

<sup>5</sup> Arbitrary Based on random choice or personal whim, rather than any reason or system.

<sup>6</sup> Flagrant An action considered as wrong or immoral.

### As a Court of Record

The High Court has following two powers as a Court of Record. These are as follows:

- (i) The judgements, proceedings and acts of the High Courts are recorded for **perpetual<sup>7</sup>** memory and testimony.
- (ii) A High Court has power to punish for contempt of court, either with simple imprisonment or with fine or both.

### Power of Judicial Review

The High Court examines the constitutionality of legislative enactment and executive orders of both the Centre and the State Governments. If the enactments and orders are found to be violative of the constitution, they can be declared as illegal, unconstitutional and invalid (null and void) by the High Court.

The enactments and executive orders can be challenged in a High Court on the following three grounds:

- (i) It infringes the Fundamental Rights.
- (ii) It is outside the competence of the authority which has framed it.
- (iii) It is repugnant to the constitutional provisions.

### Enforcement of Fundamental Rights / Writ Jurisdiction

The Constitution of India empowers High Court under Article 226 to issue writs including Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, Certiorari, Prohibition and Quo-Warranto for the enforcement of the Fundamental Rights of the citizens and for any other purposes means enforcement of an ordinary legal right. The power of writ jurisdiction can be exercised by a High Court not only within its territory, but also outside its jurisdiction, if causes of action arises within its territorial jurisdiction.

However, the power of writ jurisdiction of a High Court is wider than that of the Supreme Court. This is because, the Supreme Court issues writs only for the enforcement of Fundamental Rights and not for the case where the breach of an ordinary legal right is alleged.

### CHECK POINT 02

- 1 The powers of High Courts are similar to which other Court of India?
- 2 Who is the protector of the Fundamental Rights of the citizens of a state?
- 3 Which jurisdiction is wider than original jurisdiction of High Court?

### Subordinate Courts

In every state, besides the High Court there are number of judicial courts to administer justice. These courts function under the complete control and supervision of the High Court.

### Structure and Composition

In India, the organisation and structure of the subordinate courts is generally uniform. For judicial administration purpose, every state is divided into a number of districts, each under the jurisdiction of a District Judge.

### Qualifications of District Judge

A person to be appointed as a District Judge should have the following qualifications:

- He/she should not already be in the service of the Central or the State government.
- He/she should have been an advocate or a pleader for 7 years.
- He/she should be recommended by the High Court for appointment.

### Appointment

The District Judges are appointed by the Governor in consultation with the judges of the High Court of the concerned state. All other judges are appointed through competitive examinations held by State Public Service Commission. The District Judges exercise administrative control over all Civil Courts in the district.

### Types of Courts

Every district has Civil Courts, Criminal Courts and Courts of Revenue.

### Civil Courts

The cases related to land, property and money transactions, arbitration, guardianship, marriage, divorce and cases involving a will, etc are exercised under jurisdiction of Civil Courts.

These Courts are graded in the following manner:

**Court of District Judge** This court decides both civil and criminal cases and is the highest court of the District. When a judge decides civil cases, he is called as **District Judge** and when he decides criminal cases, he is called **Session Judge**.

<sup>7</sup> Perpetual Never ending or changing.

The District Judge exercises both judicial and administrative powers. He also has supervisory district powers over all the Subordinate Courts in the district.

**Court of Civil Judge** This court comes next to the District Court. It deals with the cases involving ₹ 5000.

**Munsiff's Court** This court hears cases involving amount less than ₹ 2000. Appeal against his decisions lie with the Civil Judge.

**Small Court** This court deals with cases of nominal money value. The juniormost judges head these courts. There is no appeal against their decisions.

### Criminal Courts

It exercises jurisdiction in cases related to murder, robbery, theft, assault, etc. Criminal Courts are broadly classified as follows:

**Session Court** It is the highest Criminal Court of the district. It deals with cases concerning robbery, dacoity and murder. It can award sentence up to life imprisonment or death sentence. But it is mandatory, that a death sentence must be confirmed by the High Court before its execution irrespective of whether an appeal is made to the High Court or not.

**Court of Chief Metropolitan Magistrate** It deals with less serious offences and can award fine authorised by law and sentence up to 7 years imprisonment.

**Court of First Class Magistrate** It can award sentence up to 3 years imprisonment or fine of ₹ 5000 or both.

**Court of Second Class Magistrate** It can award sentence not more than 1 year or impose a fine of ₹ 5000 or both.

**Court of Third Class Magistrate** It can award sentence up to 1 month of simple imprisonment or a fine up to ₹ 50 or both. It deals with criminal cases involving simple individual quarrels or rioting.

### Difference between Court of the District Judge and Session Judge

Court of the District Judge	Court of the Session Judge
It is the highest Civil Court of the district.	It is the highest Criminal Court of the district.
It is presided by a District Judge.	It is presided by a Session Judge.
The District Judge and the additional District Judges are appointed by the Governor in consultation with the Chief Justice of the High Court of the concerned state.	The Session Judge and the Additional Session Judges are appointed by the Governor in consultation with Chief Justice of concerned High Court.

Civil Cases related to land, property, money, transactions, arbitration, guardianship, marriage, divorce and will are decided by the District Judge.

The cases such as murders, theft, dacoity, pick-pocketing, etc are decided by the Session Judges.

### Courts of Revenue

These courts deal with cases relating to the maintenance of land records and assessment and collection of land revenue. Some revenues are as follows:

**The Board of Revenue** This is the highest revenue court in the district. Under this, the Courts of Commissioners, Collectors, Tehsildars and Assistant Tehsildars (Naib) are included. The Board of Revenue hears the final appeal against all the lower revenue courts under it.

**Commissioner's Court** This court deals with assessment and collection of revenues of all districts in particular division.

**Collector's Court** This court also deals with the assessment and collection of revenues of the district. It also hears first appeals against the decision of the Tehsildar.

**Tehsildar's Court** It deals with the collection of the revenue and property taxes as assessed by the Naib Tehsildars.

**Naib Tehsildar's Court** This is the lowest court. It hears cases of farmers relating to the assessment of the land revenue and property taxes from the farmers.

### Lok Adalats

It is a system of alternative dispute resolution developed in India. It roughly means 'People's Court'. The idea of Lok Adalat was mainly advocated by Justice PN Bhagwati (Former CJI). The first Lok Adalat was held at Junagarh, in Gujarat, on 14th March, 1982. The Lok Adalat accept the cases pending in the regular courts within their jurisdiction which could be settled by conciliation and compromise. The Lok Adalat is presided over by a sitting or retired judicial officer as the Chairman, with two other members, usually a lawyer and a social worker.

### Functions of Lok Adalats

- The Lok Adalat resolves disputes related to matters which are not very complicated in nature.
- The judges of these courts are actually counsellors. These adalats are assisted by Legal Aid Committee and Social Action Group, which advise the people about legal matters and help them to solve the cases by mutual participation.

- However, a dispute as referred to the Lok Adalat only when both the parties to the dispute are agreed to get their dispute resolved through the Lok Adalat.
- The Lok Adalats, generally deal with the disputes related to compensation claims, cases regarding property/land distribution, claim against the Insurance Corporation, labour disputes, civil cases, compoundable criminal cases and matrimonial disputes, etc.

## Advantages of Lok Adalats

The Lok Adalats have following advantages:

- It delivers fast and inexpensive justice.
- It reduces the workload of other courts enabling them to deal with more serious matters. It promotes social justice by providing legal aid to weaker sections of the society.
- It works in the spirit of compromise and understanding where both the parties feel satisfied.

## Scope of Lok Adalats

The government departments have began to hold Lok Adalats for solving hundreds of cases in a single day. It is the need of the hour that Lok Adalats are organised more frequently and their jurisdiction must expand. The Lok Adalats can play important role in the settlement of family feuds, disputes between the neighbours and minor cases of assault and injury.

## Family Court

The Family Court, 1984, aims at promoting conciliation in and securing speedy settlement of disputes relating to marriage and family affairs. The act provides for setting up of family courts in cities having population over 10 lakh.

### CHECK POINT 03

- 1 Who appoints District Judge?
- 2 What sentence can be awarded by a court of first class Magistrate?
- 3 Name any one type of Revenue Court.
- 4 What is the other name of Lok Adalat?

## SUMMARY

- The Constitution of India provides for a High Court for each State, but the 7th Constitutional Amendment Act, authorised the Parliament to establish a common High Court for two or more States and a Union Territory . At present, there are 24 High Courts in India. Delhi is the only Union Territory that has High Court of its own.
- Every High Court consists of a Chief Justice and such other judges who are appointed by the President of India . The Constitution of India does not describe the minimum age for the appointment of a Judge of the High Court.
- For the appointment of judges of a common High Court for two or more states, the Governors of all the states concerned are consulted by the President.
- The constitution has not fixed the tenure of a judge of the High Court. A judge of the High Court can be removed from his/her office by an order of the President. The High Court has original jurisdiction, it means that it has power to hear disputes in the first instance, not by way of appeal.
- The appellate jurisdiction means that a High Court has power to hear appeals against the judgements of Subordinate Courts functioning in its jurisdictions.
- A High Court has the power of superintendence over all the courts and tribunals functioning in its territorial jurisdiction (except military courts or tribunals).
- A High Court can advice Governor, any government department and legislature, if they seek its advice on any matter of law.
- A High Court examines the constitutionality of legislative enactments and executive orders of both the Centre and the State Governments.
- The Constitution of India empowers High Court in Article 226 to issue writs including Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, Certiorari, Prohibitions and Quo-warranto for enforcement of the Fundamental Rights of the citizens and for any other purpose.
- The state judiciary consists of a High Court and a hierarchy of Subordinate Courts also known as lower courts. Every district has a Civil Court , Criminal Court and Revenue Court.
- The District Judge is the highest judicial authority in the district. The Lok Adalat is a system of alternative dispute resolution developed in India. It roughly means People's Court.
- The Lok Adalats settle family feuds, disputes between the neighbours and minor cases of assault and injury by setting the disputes through compromise.

# EXAM PRACTICE

## a) Very Short Questions

[1 Mark each]

1. By which Constitutional Amendment Act the Parliament has the authority to establish a common High Court?

**Ans.** The 7th Constitutional Amendment Act, 1956, authorised the Parliament to establish a Common High Court for two or more States and Union Territory.

2. How many High Courts are there in our country?

**Ans.** At present, there are 24 High Courts in our country including those having jurisdiction of more than one State.

3. Who determines the strength of the High Court?

**Ans.** The President determines the strength of the High Court which depends upon the workload of the High Court.

4. Mention any one qualification, other than that to be a citizen of India for being the Judge of the High Court.

*Or* State one other qualification required to become a Judge of the High Court, apart from Indian citizenship. *(2017)*

**Ans.** A Judge of the High Court should have held a judicial office in the territory of India for 10 years.

5. The President is consulted by whom for appointing the Chief Justice of High Courts?

**Ans.** The Chief Justice of High Court is appointed by the President after consultation with the Chief Justice of India and the Governor of that State.

6. Who administers the oath of office to the High Court judges? *(2011)*

**Ans.** The Governor of a state administers the oath of office to the High Court judges.

7. Mention the process of removal of a Judge of the High Court.

**Ans.** A judge of the High Court can be removed from his/her office by the President on the recommendation made by the Parliament.

8. Mention any one Original Jurisdiction of the High Court.

**Ans.** Dispute relating to the election of members of the State Legislature, is one of the important Original Jurisdiction of the High Court.

9. What is the 'Appellate Jurisdiction' of the High Court? *(2014)*

**Ans.** The Appellate Jurisdiction of the High Court refers that the High Court has power to hear appeals against the judgements of subordinate courts functioning in its territorial jurisdiction.

10. Mention any one civil matter of Appellate Jurisdiction.

**Ans.** Appeals can be brought to the High Court in case where a Serious injustice has been committed by any tribunal. In such cases, the High Court may quash the order of the tribunals.

11. Mention any one Criminal Appellate Jurisdiction of the High Court.

**Ans.** Appeals from the judgements of sessions courts and additional session courts lie to the High Court, if the sentence is one of imprisonment for more than 7 years.

12. What is 'Supervisory Jurisdiction' of the High Court?

**Ans.** The 'Supervisory Jurisdiction' refers that the High Court has a power of superintendence over all the courts and tribunals functioning in its territorial jurisdiction except military courts or tribunals.

13. Mention any one Supervisory Jurisdiction of the High Court.

**Ans.** The High Court may prescribe forms in which books, entries and accounts are to be kept by them. It is one of the Supervisory Jurisdiction of the High Court.

14. What is the power of the High Court to exercise control over Subordinate Courts?

**Ans.** The High Court has the power to exercise control over Subordinate Courts that means the law of High Court are binding on all Subordinate Courts, functioning within its territorial jurisdiction.

- 15.** What is understood by the Revisory Jurisdiction of the High Court? [2009]

**Ans.** The Revisory Jurisdiction of the High Court refers that the High Court can call for the record of a case which has been decided by a Subordinate Court. Thus, the High Court can review the case and take appropriate action on it.

- 16.** What is meant by every High Court is a 'Court of Record'? [2007]

**Ans.** A 'Court of Record' refers that the High Court has power to record its judgements, proceedings and acts for perpetual memory and testimony.

- 17.** What is meant by the term 'Judicial Review' of the High Court? [2016]

**Ans.** Judicial Review is the power of the High Court to examine the constitutionality of legislative enactments and executive orders of both the Central and State Government.

- 18.** Mention any one ground of Judicial Review power where the enactments and executive orders can be challenged.

**Ans.** The enactments and executive order can be challenged in a High Court on the ground of infringing the Fundamental Rights.

- 19.** Which article of the Constitution empowers the High Court to issue rights?

**Ans.** Article 226 of the Constitution empowers the High Court to issue rights.

- 20.** What do you mean by writ jurisdiction of a High Court?

**Ans.** The power of writ jurisdiction can be issued by a High Court, to any person, authority and government not only within its territory, but also outside its jurisdiction, if cause of action arises within its territorial jurisdiction.

- 21.** Name the courts that are empowered to issue writs for the enforcement of Fundamental Rights. [2013]

**Ans.** The Supreme Court and the High Court are empowered to issue writ for the enforcement of Fundamental Rights.

- 22.** How does the High Court protect the Fundamental Rights of individuals?

**Ans.** The High Court protects the Fundamental Rights of individuals by issuing writ including habeas corpus, mandamus, certiorari, prohibitions and quo-warranto.

- 23.** Name the writ issued by the High Court which provides a remedy to the person who has been unlawfully detained in prison. [2008]

**Ans.** The writ of Habeas Corpus is issued to by the High Court which provides a remedy to the person who has been unlawfully detained in prison.

- 24.** What do you understand by the Subordinate Court?

**Ans.** The Subordinate Courts are so called because of their subordination to the State High Court. They function below and under the High Court at district and lower levels.

- 25.** Which body is the highest judicial authority in both civil as well as criminal matters at the district level?

**Ans.** The District Judge is the highest judicial authority in the district. He/She possesses original and appellate jurisdiction in both civil as well as criminal matters.

- 26.** Mention any one qualification for the appointment of a District Judge.

**Ans.** A person should have been an advocate or a pleader for 7 years is one qualification for appointment of a District Judge.

- 27.** What are the powers of the District Judge?

**Ans.** The District Judge exercises both judicial and administrative powers. He/She also has supervisory powers over all the Subordinate Courts in the district.

- 28.** Mention the three types of courts that a district usually have. [2010]

**Ans.** The three types of courts that a district usually have are as follows:

- (i) Civil Courts
- (ii) Criminal Courts
- (iii) Courts of Revenue

- 29.** Name the highest court dealing with civil cases at the District level.

**Or** Name the highest Civil Court in a District. [2016]

**Ans.** The Court of District Judge deals with the civil cases is the highest court at the District level.

- 30.** Which is the highest Criminal Court in a district? [2013]

**Or** Which is the highest Court dealing with the Criminal cases at the District level? [2009]

**Or** Name the highest criminal court in a district? [2018]

**Ans.** The Sessions Court is the highest Criminal Court in a district, which deals with criminal cases at the District level.

**31.** Mention any one power of the Sessions Judge.

**Ans.** The Sessions Judge has the power to impose any sentence including life imprisonment and capital punishment. However, a capital punishment passed by him is subject to confirmation by the High Court.

**32.** At the lowest level of a State, who are the head of the judicial system.

**Ans.** At the lowest level, on the civil side the Court of Munsiff and on the criminal side the Court of Judicial Magistrate are at the head of the judicial system.

**33.** State one point of distinction between the District Judge and the Session Judge. *[2014]*

**Ans.** Refer to chapter theory page no. 234.

**34.** What is meant by Lok Adalat? *[2018, 2016, 06]*

**Ans.** Lok Adalat is the people's court to provide aid and justice to those, who are not in a position to engage lawyers or bear expenses of legal proceedings.

**35.** What is the composition of Lok Adalat?

**Ans.** The Lok Adalat is presided over by a sitting or retired judicial officer as the Chairman, with two other members, usually a lawyer and a social worker.

**36.** Which kind of cases are dealt by the Lok Adalat?

**Ans.** The Lok Adalat can deal with all civil cases, matrimonial disputes, land disputes, partition disputes, labour disputes and compoundable criminal cases.

**37.** State one advantage of a Lok Adalat. *[2015]*

Or Mention one reason to state that the Lok Adalat has its own advantage. *[2017]*

**Ans.** One advantage of the Lok Adalat is that it encourages the settlement of disputes through compromise between two parties.

**38.** Mention one reason why the system of Lok Adalat has become popular. *[2011]*

**Ans.** The Lok Adalat system has become so popular that various government department have began to hold Lok Adalat for solving hundreds of cases in a single day.

## b Structured Questions

[10 Marks each]

**1.** With reference to the judiciary.

(i) Discuss the qualifications needed for a person to be appointed as a Chief Justice of a High Court. *[Modified] [3]*

(ii) State the term of office of the Judges of the High Court. Explain when and how the judges can be removed from office? *[2006] [3]*

(iii) Name the three types of courts at the District level. Explain the different categories of cases that fall under the jurisdiction of each. *[2006] [4]*

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 230.

(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 231.

(iii) The three types of courts at the District level are as follows:

(a) **The Civil Courts** The Civil Courts hear cases of land, property, money transactions, marriage, divorce, will and guardianship.

(b) **The Criminal Courts** The highest Criminal Court of the district is the court of the Sessions Courts. Usually, it is preside over by the District Judge. In the Sessions Court serious cases of murder, robbery and dacoities are tried.

(c) **Court of Revenue** These courts deal with cases relating to the maintenance of land records and assessment and collection of land revenue.

**2.** With the reference to the power of the High Court. Answer the following questions.

(i) What is the criminal appellate jurisdiction of the High Courts? *[4]*

(ii) Mention the supervisory jurisdiction. *[3]*

(iii) What are the powers related to the exercises of the Subordinate Courts? *[3]*

**Ans.** (i) The appellate jurisdiction refers that a High Court has power to hear appeals against the judgement of subordinate courts functioning in its territorial jurisdiction. It has appellate jurisdiction in both civil and criminal matters.

Criminal Appellate Jurisdiction of High Court is given below

- Appeals from the judgements of Session Courts and Additional Session Courts lie to the High Court, if the sentence is one of imprisonment for more than 7 years.

- Appeals against the death sentence awarded by a Session Court or an Additional Session Court should be confirmed by the High Court before it can be executed, whether there is an appeal by the committed person or not.

- Appeals from the judgements of the Assistant Session Judge, Metropolitan Magistrate or other Magistrates lie to the High Court.

(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 232.

(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 232.

- 3.** The High Court has various functions and jurisdiction, like that of the Supreme Court. With reference to this, answer the following questions.
- What is Revisory Jurisdiction of a High Court? In which cases it is applicable? [3]
  - What is the Writ Jurisdiction of a High Court? How is it wider than that of the Supreme Court? [3]
  - What do you mean by the original jurisdiction of the High Court? [4]

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 232 and 233.  
(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 233.  
(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 232.

- 4.** With reference to our judiciary, discuss the following questions.
- Norms governing the transfer of a Judge. [Modified] [3]
  - What do we mean when we refer to the Supreme Court and the High Court as a ‘Court of Record’? [2015] [3]
  - Name the writs that the High Courts are empowered to issue. What is meant by the advisory jurisdiction of the High Court? [2015] [4]

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 231.  
(ii) The Supreme Court acts as a Court of Record, which means that the judgements, proceedings and acts of the Supreme Court has recorded for perpetual memory and testimony. These records are admitted to be of evidentiary value and cannot be questioned when produced before any court. The Supreme Court has the power to punish for the contempt not only of itself but also of High Courts, Subordinate Courts and tribunals. The High Court being a Court of Record means its judgments are kept as a record and are used as precedents and legal references. If a person commits the contempt of High Court, it has the authority to punish him.  
(iii) **Writs** The Constitution of India empowers in Article 226 that, a High Court can issue writs including Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, Certiorari, Prohibition and Quo-Warranto. These writs are issued for enforcement of the Fundamental Rights of the citizens and advisory for any other purpose.  
**Advisory Jurisdiction** The High Court can advise the Governor in any cases related to the governmental departments and legislature if he/she seeks the advice of High Court on constitutional as

well as on other matters of law. But its advice is not binding on the agency seeking such advice.

- 5.** With reference to the powers and functions of the High Court, explain briefly the meaning and scope of the following. [2017]
- Its appellate jurisdiction [3]
  - The High Court as a court of record [3]
  - Judicial Review [4]

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no 232.  
(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no 233.  
(iii) Refer chapter theory page no 233.

- 6.** The Subordinate Courts are so called because of their subordination to the High Court. With reference to this answer the following questions.
- Mention the qualifications needed for a person to be appointed as a District Judge. [3]
  - Who administers the appointment of District Judge? What role does he play? [3]
  - Difference between Court of the District Judge and Sessions Judge. [4]

**Ans.** (i) Refer to chapter theory page no. 233.  
(ii) The appointment of District Judge in a State is made by Governor of the State in consultation with the Chief Justice of the concerned High Court of the State.

The District Judge is the highest authority in the district. He/She posses original as well as appellate jurisdiction in both civil as well as criminal matters. In addition to this, District Judge exercises both the judicial and administrative powers.

- (iii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 234.

- 7.** Lok Adalat roughly means ‘People’s Court’. In this context, answer the following questions.
- (a) What is meaning of the Lok Adalat?  
(b) Briefly explain the scope of Lok Adalat?
  - State any three advantages of the Lok Adalat. [2012] [3]

- (iii) What are the functions of Lok Adalat? Mention any four. [4]

**Ans.** (i) (a) Refer to chapter theory page no. 234.  
(b) Refer to chapter theory page no. 235.  
(ii) Refer to chapter theory page no. 235.  
(iii) Refer to chapter theory page no 234 and 235.

# **CHAPTER TEST**

## **Very Short Questions**

**[1 Mark each]**

- 1.** What is the composition of High Court?
- 2.** What is the maximum tenure of a High Court Judge?
- 3.** To whom does the High Court Judge address his / her resignation?
- 4.** What is the role of the Chief Justice of India in transfer of the High Court Judge?
- 5.** Mention one difference between Mandamus and Prohibition writs.
- 6.** Name one case in which Revisory Jurisdiction is applicable.
- 7.** What is the criterion to reappoint a retired judge for a temporary period in a High Court?
- 8.** Who appoints and gives promotion to District judges?
- 9.** Name one measure in which the independence of High Court is ensured.
- 10.** By which act Lok Adalat was setup?

## **Structured Questions**

**[10 Marks each]**

- 1.** With reference to the functions of High Court, explain briefly the following questions.
  - (i) High courts power of superintendence.
  - (ii) High court's power of issuing writs.
  - (iii) Extent of matter of High Courts control over Lower Courts.
- 2.** With reference to the subordinate courts, briefly describe the following questions.
  - (i) The court of a District judge
  - (ii) Munsiff's Courts
  - (iii) Courts of Session Judge
- 3.** With reference to the lower courts under the jurisdiction of the High Court, answer the following questions.
  - (i) At the level of a district, which courts hear the civil and criminal matters?
  - (ii) What are the differences between the Districts Court and Sessions Court?
  - (iii) Briefly explain
    - (a) Board of Revenue
    - (b) Commissioner's Court

# ARCHIVES\*

*Collection of Questions Asked in Previous Years' ICSE Class 10th Examinations*

## 2018

- 1.** Name the highest criminal court in a district?

## 2017

- 2.** State one other qualification required to become a judge of the High Court, apart from Indian citizenship.
- 3.** Mention one reason to state that the Lok Adalat has its own advantage.
- 4.** With reference to the powers and functions of the High Court. Explain briefly the meaning and scope of the following
  - (i) Its appellate jurisdiction
  - (ii) The High Court as a court of record
  - (iii) Judicial Review

## 2016

- 5.** Name the highest Civil Court in a District.
- 6.** What is meant by 'Lok Adalat'?
- 7.** What is meant by the term 'Judicial Review' of the High Court?

## 2015

- 8.** State one advantage of a Lok Adalat.
- 9.** What do we mean when we refer to the Supreme Court and the High Court as a 'Court of Record'?
- 10.** Name the writs that the High Courts are empowered to issue. What is meant by advisory jurisdiction of the High Court?

## 2014

- 11.** What is the 'Appellate Jurisdiction' of the High Court?
- 12.** State one point of distinction between the District Judge and the Sessions Judge.

## 2013

- 13.** Name the courts that are empowered to issue writs for the enforcement of Fundamental Rights.
- 14.** Which is the highest Criminal Court in a district?

\* All these questions are covered and explained in chapter exercise 'Exam Practice'.